VIRGINIA LIBRARY

McCORMICK
THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY
CHICAGO
826 Belden Avenue

Bullion's Series of Grammars.

From the Report of the Galway Academy to the Regents of the University, December, 1842.

GALWAY ACADEMY.—During the past year no change was made in the text books, except by the introduction of Bullion's English and Latin Grammars, his Greek Grammar having been adopted years before. We have no hesitation in coinciding with the opinion so generally expressed, that these grammars, as a whole, are decidedly the best in use, either in England or America.

ALEXANDER WATSON, *Principal.*

Cooper's Virgil,

With copious English notes; designed for Schools, Academies, and Colleges. This work has maintained great popularity since its first publication; the notes being regarded as amply sufficient and clear

The Pictorial Spelling Book

Has been prepared with great care. The engravings are all new, embracing a great variety of subjects, and made expressly for this work. It is *printed* and *bound* in a *neat* and *substantial* manner; no expense having been spared to render it well deserving the attention and patronage of those to whom is entrusted the instruction of children. Relying on its *merits* for success, it is submitted to the public, with the hope that it will receive a *thorough* and *impartial* examination; and with a belief that it will have a preference over the spelling books in common use.

From Rev. R. P. Lamb, to the editors of the Pen Yan Democrat.

MESSRS. EDITORS,—Having formerly been engaged in the instruction of the young, and having some practical knowledge of the merits of various elementary works, I would, by your permission, through the medium of your paper, express my decided preference for those prepared by Rensselaer Bentley. The Pictorial Primer, and Pictorial Spelling Book, to those who are acquainted with them, need no other recommendation than their own worth. If there be another elementary work of the class fairly entitled to competition with these, I have not learned the fact. They are well adapted to engage the attention of children, and to secure, with a little care, a rapid progress. Many families are so located that the small children cannot attend the public schools. The Pictorial Primer and Spelling Book should be placed in the hands of such children, and with ordinary intellects, they will hardly fail of soon learning to read with facility.

From the Youth's Companion.

This is certainly the most attractive Spelling Book among the dozens which have been published. Its author seems to have had them all before him, and with a skillful hand, to have combined their chief excellencies, adding others of his own.

The School and Family Dictionary,

AND ILLUSTRATIVE DEFINER;

By T. H. Gallaudet and Horace Hooker.

This valuable school book supplies a deficiency in the course of instruction in our schools and academies which the most intelligent teachers have long wished to have supplied. It brings the great subject of learning the meaning of words, and of *studying definitions*, within the grasp of the youthful mind. In doing this, it avoids the common and pernicious error of defining one hard word by *another equally as hard*, and then the latter one by the former. The definitions are simple and clear, and followed by interesting and instructive illustrations, many of which contain historical facts and valuable information—so that while used as a *definer*, the book may also be used (as we have no doubt it will be) as a *reading book* of a peculiar and advantageous kind. School committees and teachers need only read the preface and examine the book, to see that it is destined to occupy a new and very important place in the department of popular education. Teachers and parents who have used the work, express the highest gratification at the advance of their pupils.

From the New York Tribune.

"In this work the authors have endeavored to simplify and make easy the correct appreciation and use of the words comprising the English language. This is done by adherence to the following principles: 1. No attempt is made to define the words tree, horse, table, &c., of which every one who knows any thing must know the meaning. 2. The large class of the abstruse and technical terms appertaining to the sciences, and which do not fall within the range of study and thought of the elementary learner, are also omitted. 3. The large middle class of words, with the meaning of which children are not necessarily acquainted, is inserted, and clearly, fully defined, with examples. By this method, the process of learning is very much shortened and facilitated. The book is elegantly printed

---

Pratt, Woodford & Co.

Offer for sale a large assortment of School, Classical, and Miscellaneous Books, and Stationery, Paper, Blank Books, Quills, Steel Pens, &c., which will be supplied at wholesale, at the lowest prices. They also publish Rollin's Ancient History in 8 vols., Josephus' History of the Jews in 6 vols., Goldsmith's Geographical View of the World, Polyglott Family Bible; and have on hand a large and elegant assortment of Bibles of every description, and books suitable for Family Libraries.

MALTE BRUN.
MURRAY
PACIFIC
N. AMERICA
ATLANTIC
EUROPEAN
ASIATIC
AFRICAN
AMERICAN.

A

PRACTICAL SYSTEM

OF

MODERN GEOGRAPHY;

OR A

VIEW OF THE PRESENT STATE OF THE

WORLD.

SIMPLIFIED AND ADAPTED TO THE CAPACITY OF YOUTH.

CONTAINING NUMEROUS TABLES, EXHIBITING THE
DIVISIONS, SETTLEMENT, POPULATION, EXTENT, LAKES, CANALS,
AND THE VARIOUS
INSTITUTIONS OF THE UNITED STATES AND EUROPE,
THE DIFFERENT FORMS OF GOVERNMENT AND PREVAILING RELIGIONS

EMBELLISHED WITH NUMEROUS ENGRAVINGS OF

MANNERS, CUSTOMS, &c.

McCORMICK THEOLOGICAL SEMINARY
LIBRARY
Theological Seminary

REVISED AND ILLUSTRATED

NEW AND ENLARGED ATLAS.

BY [illegible] Y, A. M.

FIFTY-FIFTH EDITION.

NEW YORK.

PUBLISHED BY PRATT, WOODFORD & CO.

Sold by all the principal Booksellers in the United States

1847.

ADVERTISEMENT.

The publishers of this work, grateful for the immense patronage it has received, now present to the public a new edition, which has been thoroughly revised. During the past ten years, great changes have occurred upon the earth's surface. By the enterprise of individuals, either from motives of curiosity, or for the purposes of commerce, and by the efforts of enlightened governments, the most distant parts of the world have been explored and laid open to view, and their natural productions, climate and soil, made known. The manners and customs of savage nations have become well understood; and the boundaries and extent of the various portions of land and water which compose the face of the earth, have been accurately defined. It has become necessary, therefore, to make some changes in the book, that it may conform to the improved state of geographical science, but the outline and general plan of the work remain the same, so that teachers will still find it familiar, and the author has taken scrupulous care to have the facts agree with the best authorities, and to make it correct in all particulars. The *Atlas* has been entirely redrawn by Mr. Smith, an eminent geographer in New York, and newly engraved in the best manner on steel. Several important divisions of the world are given upon an enlarged scale; the United States have been more conveniently classified so as to present each state entire. Maps of the West Indies, New Brunswick and Nova Scotia, the British Isles, Central Europe, Michigan, and the newly settled portions of our own country, have, among others, been *added*, making it more full than any other School Atlas, and the whole has been done without regard to expense. The utmost care has been taken to make the Atlas *progressive and clear*, so that it shall lead on the minds of young persons without confusion; by means of appropriate symbols and numerals, the extent of the various countries in square miles; the Population, Government, Religion, and the State of Society, are exhibited on the different maps; and on the Map of the World, the animals peculiar to any portion of the earth's surface. It is confidently believed, that it will be found to surpass every other School Atlas hitherto published. The price of the work is low, and every thing which experience and care could do, has been done to merit the continued confidence of the great body of teachers who have always preferred it for its simplicity and adaptation to the school room, and to recommend it to the favor of all persons who desire to promote good education.

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1844, by D. F. Robinson, in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Connecticut.

CASE TIFFANY & CO.—PRINTERS,
PEARL STREET, HARTFORD.

G
125
.05/
14704

PREFACE.

THE introduction of Geography into common schools, as a regular branch of education, has of late years become nearly universal. Formerly this science was taught only to the higher classes, it being thought by most teachers that the pupil must be well advanced in other branches before he could study this with advantage. Experience has however taught, that children can learn Geography at a very early age, and hence its introduction into the younger classes at the present time.

But among the books which have been published on this subject, although many of them are works of great merit, there are none suited to the capacities of young beginners. Most of them begin with definitions, which, to be understood, require a degree of knowledge on the subject, never possessed by the new beginner. Children, instead of being made to commit definitions to memory, should, as much as possible, at the beginning, be taught by means of the eye; and hence the use of maps, pictures, and diagrams, in teaching infants. The map is to Geography, what orthography is to the art of reading. The scholar must not only understand its use, but must have an intimate knowledge of all its parts, before he can undertake the study of descriptive geography with advantage. When he has acquired a practical and thorough knowledge of the map of a country, he has then laid the ground work for understanding its description, and not before. Suppose a child should learn by heart every thing about the climate, scenery, and productions of Switzerland, for instance, and suppose him to be intimate with the names of all its mountains, lakes, and forests, how much knowledge of the geography of that country would he possess? It is obvious that without knowing also the relative situation of these mountains, lakes, and forests, in respect to each other, together with their distances and bearings, such knowledge never could be applied to any practical use. The map, then, ought to be the first lesson in geography, for by its means, the child can locate his ideas, and can see, at a single glance, the situation of the places, the names of which he learns.

Having been for a number of years occupied in the instruction of youth, and principally in the science of Geography, I have, in common with others, long regretted that no work well adapted to the instruction of youth on this subject could be obtained, and my excuse for offering the present volume to the public is founded on that fact. A *practical* knowledge of geography, instead of requiring years, I am taught by experience to believe, may be obtained in a few months; and I cannot but hope that others will find this opinion well founded.

In preparing this work, I have endeavored to adapt it to the natural progress of the youthful mind. Instead of introducing the beginner at once into Astronomical Geography, and requiring him to spend weeks in learning definitions, and the description of the heavenly bodies, I have commenced with the town in which he lives. From the town, the sphere of his observation is extended to the county, from the county

to the state, &c. This I am confident will be found not only the natural, but the philosophical method of teaching Geography; for on all subjects the learner must make himself master of simple things, before he can understand those which are complex.

In the present instance, the pupil begins with confidence and alacrity, because he not only knows something about his own town, but the subject itself is highly interesting to him. From these simple descriptions, the pupil is gradually led on, by a series of the plainest and most important questions, to a knowledge of the grand divisions of the globe. When he has become familiar with these divisions, and can without hesitation point them out on the map, he is qualified to commence the *Second part*. In this part, after a few general observations on the divisions, he is required to learn on the map, the boundaries, names of rivers, towns, &c., and then he commences with a description of the several countries which it contains. In every department of description, great care has been taken to select what is most important for the pupil to know, and to commit to memory, and to reject whatever is of little use; for experience has taught me that long descriptions, however judiciously arranged, do not fail to tire and discourage the young pupil. Some of the more prominent features of the country are therefore all that should be required of the beginner.

This work will be found to possess some peculiarities. The use of initial letters in particular, I consider of much consequence in enabling the pupil to determine the correct answers; so that it is believed in going through the entire work, he will seldom require any assistance from his teacher.

The *Third part* treats of Latitude and Longitude; and perhaps no part of the work is of more importance than this, and particularly as most books of this kind are deficient in this respect.

The *Fourth part* contains an introduction to Astronomy and Physical Geography, together with problems on the Globes, also, an introduction to the study of Ancient Geography and History.

The numerous tables which the work contains, it is hoped will be found useful and correct. Some of them have been copied with little variation from Morse and Malte Brun, and others have been arranged with much care and considerable labor, expressly for the work.

In giving this little volume to the public, I cannot but entertain the hope that I shall contribute in some degree to our improved method of teaching a science so necessary and popular as that of Geography. But how far I shall have the satisfaction of seeing this hope realized, the public must determine.

J. OLNEY.

HARTFORD, Dec. 1828.

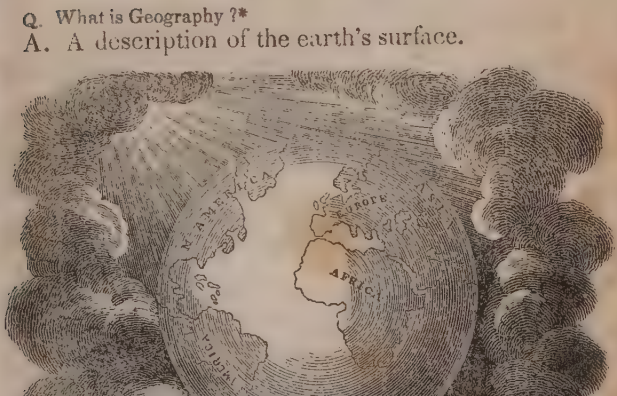
McCormick
LIBRARY
Theological Seminary

PART FIRST.

Geographical Definitions.

Q. What is Geography ?*

A. A description of the earth's surface.



Q. Of what is the surface of the earth composed ?

A. Of land and water.

Questions.—What does the above picture represent ? A. One half of the earth's surface. Which part represents land ? Which part water ? What names do you see in the picture Does this portion of the earth's surface contain more land or water ? From the above picture what should you imagine the shape of the earth to

---

*The word Geography is derived from two Greek words, viz. *Ge*, the earth; and *grapho*, to write about, or describe. Geography is the science which describes the surface of the earth,—the situation, extent, boundaries and divisions of its different countries,—and the manners, customs and political relations of its inhabitants.

be? Can you mention any thing that resembles the earth in shape? The circumference* of the earth is about twenty-five thousand miles; now if a man should travel one thousand miles in a month, how long would it take him to travel round it? The diameter† of the earth is about eight thousand miles; if it were possible to pass through the centre of it, how long would a man be at the above rate in travelling through it? Did you ever hear of a person who had sailed round the earth or world? How much of the earth's surface is covered with water? A. About two thirds. What general name is given to the whole of the water on the surface of the earth? A. The sea or ocean.

* Circumference, distance round the outside of a thing.

† Diameter, distance through a thing.

NATURAL DIVISIONS OF LAND.

Q. How is the Land divided?

A. Into Continents, Islands, Peninsulas, Isthmuses, Capes, Promontories, Mountains, Shores or Coasts, &c.

Q. What is a Continent?

A. It is a vast extent of land as America; the Eastern Continent.

Can you show me America on the map of the World? What is the northern part of it called? What is the southern part called?

Q. What is an Island?

A. It is a portion of land surrounded by water; as Australia,* Borneo, Iceland, Cuba, &c.

Did you ever see an Island?

Q. What is a Peninsula?

A. It is a portion of land almost surrounded by water; as Africa, South America, &c.

Is Africa entirely surrounded by water? What is the narrow neck of land called which connects it with Asia? A. Isthmus of Suez.

Q. What is an isthmus?

A. It is a neck of land which joins a peninsula to a continent, or unites two parts of a continent; as the Isthmus of Suez, Isthmus of Darien, &c.

Can you tell me where the isthmus of Darien is? What does it unite? What body of water is north of the isthmus of Darien? What body of water is south of it?

Q. What is a Cape?

A. It is a point of land extending into a large body of water; as Cape Horn, Cape of Good Hope, &c.

Can you show me a Cape on the map?

Q. What is a Promontory?

A. It is a high point of land extending into a large body of water; as the southern part of South America, Hindostan, &c.

If a mountain extended into the sea, what would you call the end of it? Why?

Q. What is a Mountain?

A. It is a vast elevation of land; as the Andes, Alps, White Mountains.

---

* Australia has, until recently, been called New Holland.

When the land rises to a small height, it is called a Hill. Spaces between mountains, or between hills, are called Valleys. Level portions of land are called Plains. Did you ever see a Mountain? Did you ever see a Hill? Can there be a Valley on the top of a Mountain? Why? Can there be a Plain on the side of a Mountain or Hill?

Q. What is a Volcano?

A. It is a mountain that sends forth fire and smoke from its top; as Mount Etna, Vesuvius, Hecla.

The opening on the top of the mountain is called the crater. When fire and smoke burst forth, it is called an eruption. The melted matter which is thrown out of a volcano is called Lava. What would you call a burning mountain?

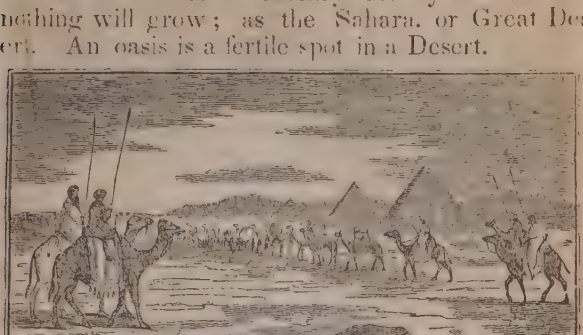
Q. What is a Shore, or a Coast?

A. It is the edge of land bordering on a sea, lake, or river; as the coast of Guinea, &c.

Did you ever see a Shore or Coast?

Q. What is a Desert?

A. It is a tract of country usually level, where nothing will grow; as the Sahara, or Great Desert. An oasis is a fertile spot in a Desert.



A CARAVAN CROSSING A DESERT.

Sometimes the word Desert is applied to an uneven tract of land which has streams of water, and produces a few small trees, but has a soil incapable of being rendered productive by cultivation: as the great American Desert. The Sahara, or Great Desert, contains a number of fertile spots called *oases* with springs of water. Several of these are large, and present beautiful landscapes, with forests of acacia, and groves of the date and lotus, yielding fruits and berries which form the food of whole tribes.

NATURAL DIVISIONS OF WATER.

Q. How is the water divided?

A. Into Oceans, Seas, Archipelagos,* Gulfs or

* Pronounced Ar-ke-pel'-a-goes.

Bays, Lakes, Straits, Channels, Sounds, Rivers, Firths or Friths, Harbors and Roads.

Q. What is an Ocean?

A. It is a vast collection of salt water; as the Atlantic, Pacific, Indian ocean.

Did you ever see the Atlantic ocean? How do people cross an ocean? Can you show me the Atlantic ocean on the map? The Pacific? Indian ocean?

Q. What is a Sea?

A. It is a large collection of salt water, mostly surrounded by land; as the Mediterranean, Black Sea.

Which do you think largest, an Ocean or a Sea?

Q. What is an Archipelago?

A. It is a tract of water nearly filled with islands; as the Grecian Archipelago, east of Greece, Indian Archipelago.

If a Sea contain two or three islands, would you call it an Archipelago? Why not? If you should find a sea nearly full of Islands, what would you call it?

Q. What is a Gulf, or Bay?

A. A part of an ocean, sea, lake or river, extending into the land; as the Gulf of Mexico, Baffin's Bay, &c.

Small bays are called Creeks, Coves, Havens, Harbors, &c. Did you ever see a Bay? Can you show me a Bay or Gulf on the map? Is the water of a Gulf or Bay salt or fresh? Why may it be either?

Q. What is a Lake?

A. It is a collection of fresh water surrounded by land; as Lake Superior, Erie, Ontario, Ladoga.

Salt lakes are called Seas, as the Caspian Sea, Aral Sea. Small lakes are called Ponds. Have you ever seen a Lake? Have you ever seen a Pond? How do the waters of the Caspian Sea differ from those of Lake Superior?

Q. What is a Strait?

A. It is a narrow passage connecting different bodies of water; as the Strait of Gibraltar, Behring's Strait, Davis' Strait, &c.

Can you show me a Strait on the map?

Q. What is a Channel?

A. It is a passage of water wider than a Strait; as the English Channel, St. George's Channel, &c.

What is the difference between a Strait and a Channel?

Q. What is a Sound?

A. It is a strait so shallow that its depth may be

measured with a lead and line; as Long Island Sound, Albemarle Sound, Pamlico Sound.

If Long Island Sound were so deep that its depth could not be measured, or sounded, with a lead and line, what would you call it? Why?

Q. What is a River?

A. It is a large stream of water, formed by numerous branches, flowing from mountains or high land into an ocean, sea, lake, gulf, or bay; as the Connecticut, Hudson, Volga, &c.

The place where a river *rises*, is called its *source* or *head;* the place where it *empties*, its *mouth*. Small streams are called brooks, rivulets, rills, creeks, &c. Did you ever see a River? Is the water of a River *fresh* or *salt?*

Q. What is a Firth or Frith?

A. It is the widening of a river towards its mouth into an arm of the sea; as the Firth of Forth, Murray Firth in Scotland.

Can you show me a Firth or Frith, on the map of Europe? On the map of the United States?

Q. What is a Harbor or Haven?

A. It is a small bay, almost surrounded by land, where ships may lie in safety, as Boston Harbor, New York Harbor, New Haven Harbor, &c.

Are there any Harbors in the middle of the ocean? Why not? What would you call a small Bay, where ships can lie in safety during storms and tempests?

Q. What is a Road?

A. It is a part of the open sea, where ships may lie at anchor, at some distance from the shore; as Hampton Roads at the mouth of James River, in Virginia.

Are our roads *here*, the same as those Roads where ships lie at anchor? Why not? Can you explain the difference?

Q. What is a Canal?

A. It is a channel or ditch dug through a part of a country, and filled with water, to afford an easy and cheap conveyance of goods in boats and vessels, from one place to another; as the Grand Western or Erie Canal, Middlesex Canal, Farmington Canal.

Did you ever see a Canal? Is a Canal the same as a river? What is the difference between a Canal and a River?

EXPLANATIONS NECESSARY TO THE USE OF MAPS.

Q. What names are applied to the earth?

A. The Earth, on which we live, is called the Globe, the World, the Sphere, &c.

The earth is round, or of a globular form, as is represented above. This is proved in various ways. 1st. When a ship goes out to sea, we first lose sight of the hull, or the body of the ship; then of the sails, and lower rigging, and lastly, of the upper part of the masts. If the earth were not round, or spherical, the hull, or largest part, would be last seen. 2d. In an eclipse of the moon, when the moon's surface is darkened by the shadow of the earth, the boundary of the shadow is always circular or round. 3d. Many navigators have sailed entirely round the earth and arrived at the same port from which they commenced their voyage, by an opposite course. These are convincing proofs that the earth is round.

Q. What is a Hemisphere?

A. It is half a globe.

The word *hemisphere* is formed of two words, viz. *hemi* and *sphere*. *Hemi* means *half*, and *sphere* means a *globe* or *ball*; consequently when applied to the earth it means half of it. As the map of the world represents the whole of the earth's surface, what will one half of this map be called? Why will it be called a hemisphere? Of how many hemispheres does the map of the world consist? Why?

When the earth is divided into two equal parts from pole to pole, these parts are called the EASTERN and WESTERN HEMISPHERES, as you

will see by looking on the map of the world. If the earth is divided into *two* equal parts from East to West at the Equator, they are called NORTHERN and SOUTHERN HEMISPHERES, as you will perceive by examining the map of the world, exhibiting the Northern and Southern Hemispheres. Will you show me the map of the world? How many Hemispheres are there on it? What is a Hemisphere? Which is the Eastern Hemisphere? Which is the Western Hemisphere? What do both Hemispheres exhibit a view of? Show me the Northern and Southern Hemispheres. Which is the Northern Hemisphere? Which is the Southern Hemisphere? What do *these* Hemispheres exhibit a view of?

Q. What is the Equator or Equinoctial line?

A. It is an imaginary line or circle drawn round the earth, at an equal distance from each pole.

Can you show me the Equator on the map of the world? How much farther is it from the Equator to the North Pole, than to the South Pole? Why?

This *line* or *circle*, is called the *Equator* or *Equinoctial line*, because when the sun is on it, the days and nights are of equal length to all the inhabitants of the earth.

CIRCLES.

Q. What are the Tropics?

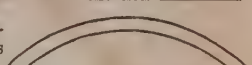
A. They are circles drawn parallel* to the Equator, at the distance of twenty-three and a half degrees north and south of it

The circle north of the Equator is called the Tropic of Cancer; the one south of the Equator, the Tropic of Capricorn.

Can you show me the Tropic of Cancer on the map of the world? The Tropic of Capricorn? Which of the Tropics is nearest to the Equator? Why?

The word Tropic signifies a return, because when the sun is on either of these lines, it appears to stop, and retrace its steps. The Tropics show the sun's limits north and south of the Equator. On the 21st of March, the sun crosses the equator, and arrives at the Tropic of Cancer on the 21st of June, which is called the Summer Solstice. It then returns gradually towards the equator, which it crosses on the 21st of September, and arrives at the Tropic of Ca-

* Parallel, a line which is equally distant from another line throughout its whole length, thus



pricorn on the 21st of December, which is called the Winter Solstice. When the sun crosses the equator on the 21st of March, it is called the *Vernal Equinox;* when it crosses it on the 21st of September, it is called the *Autumnal Equinox.* From the 21st of March to the 21st of September, you will perceive that the sun is north of the equator, and our days are *more* than 12 hours long; and from the 21st of September to the 21st of March, the sun is south of the equator, and our days are *less* than 12 hours long. Is the sun *north* or *south* of the equator *to-day?* Which are the longest *now*, the *days*, or the *nights?*

Q. What are the Polar Circles?

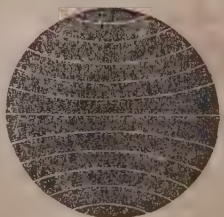
A. They are circles drawn parallel to the tropics, at the distance of twenty-three and a half degrees from the poles.

Can you show me the Arctic Circle on the map of the world? Can you show me the Antarctic Circle? Which of these circles is nearest the equator?

On the 21st of June, when the sun is at the tropic of Cancer, all of that part of the earth north of the Arctic Circle has constant day, and that part south of the Antarctic Circle has constant night. The reverse of this takes place when the sun is at the tropic of Capricorn on the 21st of December.

PARALLELS.

Do the Equator, Tropics, and Polar Circles extend *north* and *south*, or *east* and *west?* Do you see other lines besides *these*, that extend *east* and *west?* These lines are called PARALLELS OF LATITUDE.



Q. What are Parallels of Latitude?

A. They are *circles* or *lines* that pass round the globe parallel to the Equator.

Do you see any lines on the map that extend *north* and *south?* These lines are called Meridians.

MERIDIANS.

Q. What are Meridians?

A. They are circles passing from pole to pole, cutting the equator at right angles.

Meridian is derived from a Latin word, which signifies *mid-day* or *noon.* These lines are called *meridians*, because as the earth turns towards the sun in its *diurnal* or *daily motion*, all places through which the same meridian passes, have *noon* or *mid-*

day at the time the sun is over that meridian. Which has the greatest number of meridians drawn on it, the Eastern or Western Hemisphere?

Q. What is the use of the different Lines or Circles on the Map?

A. To point out the situation of places, and show the effect of the earth's motions.

Q. Why are the Parallels and Meridians curved on the Map?

A. To represent circles on the globe, and thus give as true a picture as possible of a round body on a flat surface of paper.

Did you ever see an artificial globe? In what direction do parallels of latitude extend? Meridians?

LATITUDE AND LONGITUDE.

Q. What is Latitude?

A. It is distance from the equator, either *north* or *south*.

Places that are under the equator have *no latitude*. All places *north* of the equator, are in *north latitude;* all places *south* of the equator are in *south latitude*.

Do *we* live *north*, or *south* of the equator? Are *we* then in *north*, or *south* latitude? Can you point with your hand towards the equator? Can you show a place on the Map of the World that is in *south* latitude? Why is it in *south* latitude? Do we ever say a place is in *east* latitude or *west* latitude? Why not?

Q. What is Longitude?

A. It is distance from any given meridian, either *east* or *west*.

Most nations reckon the longitude from the metropolis of their own country, or from the national observatory near it. Thus, the French reckon from the meridian of Paris,—the English from the observatory of Greenwich near London. In the United States we sometimes reckon from the meridian of Washington, but generally from that of Greenwich, the same as the English.

Places under the first meridian—marked ° on the map—have no longitude, it being there that the Longitude begins. The greatest longitude that a place can have is 180 degrees. Places that lie on the right hand side of any given meridian, or from which the longitude is reckoned, are in east longitude; those that lie on the left hand side, are in west longitude. Or, if the figures on the top and bottom of the map increase from left to right, the longitude is east; if from right to left, the longitude is west. Point to the meridian that passes through Washington, on the Map of the United States, and

tell me how this is marked on the top of the map. Why is it marked 0? A. Because it is the *first* meridian, or the one from which we often reckon our longitude. How is this line or meridian marked on the bottom of the map? Why is it marked 77? A. Because it is 77 degrees west of the meridian of Greenwich from which the English reckon their longitude. Can you show me the meridian of Greenwich, or the one that appears to pass through London? What longitude have places that are on this meridian? Why have they no longitude? In what longitude is Ireland? Why is it in west longitude? In what longitude is Russia? Why is it in east longitude? Do we ever say a place is in North or South longitude? Why not? Is this place in *east* or *west* longitude, reckoning from the meridian of Greenwich? In which is it if we reckon from the meridian of Washington?

Q. How is Latitude and Longitude reckoned?

A. In degrees, minutes, and seconds.

Q. How many miles make a degree?

A. Sixty geographic miles, or sixty-nine and a half English miles.

In geography miles are called minutes. Sixty seconds make one minute, and sixty minutes or miles, make one degree. How many degrees of latitude are there? A. There are 90; because we reckon latitude from the equator to each pole which is one quarter of the distance round the globe, which is 360 degrees in circumference. And as we reckon longitude from one given meridian, both *east* and west half way round the globe, there are but 180 degrees of longitude. If you know the number of degrees between any two places, by multiplying them by sixty-nine and a half, you will have the distance in English miles.

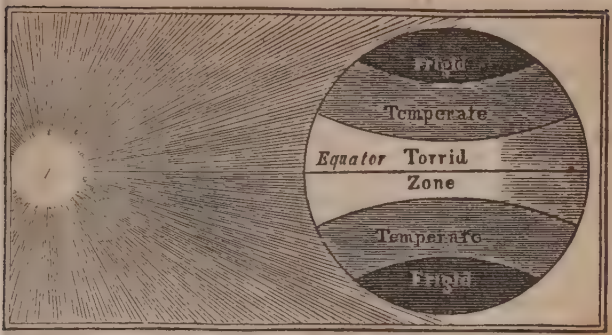
How many degrees is it from the Equator to the first parallel of latitude north of it? If it is *ten degrees*, how many English miles is it? How many geographic miles? How many English miles in two degrees? In four degrees?

At the equator a *degree of longitude* is as long as a *degree of latitude;* but as you go from the equator, either *north* or *south*, the degrees of longitude become shorter and shorter, till at the poles they terminate at a point, as you will see by examining the map of the world. A *degree of latitude* is as long at the poles as at the equator.

ZONES.

Q. What are Zones?

A. They are divisions of the earth's surface, made by the *tropics* and *polar circles*.



The word *zone* signifies a *belt* or *girdle;* and these divisions are called *zones*, because they encompass the earth like a *girdle.*

Q. How many Zones are there?

A. There are five zones—*one torrid,*—*two temperate,*—and *two frigid zones.*

Q. What part of the earth's surface does the Torrid Zone embrace?

A. That part of it which lies between the Tropic of Cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn.

This zone is called *the torrid*, or *burning zone*, because of the great and continued heat of the sun, which passes over it twice during the year.

In the Torrid Zone there are but *two seasons*, the *wet* and *dry*. During the *wet season*, it rains almost constantly for six months;—and during the other six months, it seldom rains. There is no *spring* or *autumn*. The *dry* season is termed *summer*, and the *wet* season *winter*.

The Torrid Zone is distinguished for its productions, both *animal* and *vegetable*. Among the animals found in the Torrid Zone, the most remarkable are the *elephant*, *rhinoceros*, *lion*, *tiger*, *leopard*, *hyena*, *crocodile*, the *camel*, *zebra*, *antelope*, *lama*, &c. *Serpents* and *insects* of enormous size abound in the Torrid Zone, many kinds of which are extremely venomous.

Among the vegetable productions of the Torrid Zone, the most noted are *tea*, *coffee*, *sugar-cane*, *bread-fruit*, *oranges*, *spices*, *gums*, &c.

The forests are clothed with a perpetual green, and many of the trees grow to a larger size than those of any other part of the globe.

The inhabitants of the Torrid Zone are distinguished for the blackness of their skins, and for their feebleness, both of body and mind.

Can you show me the Torrid Zone on the map of the world? Between what two circles or lines does it lie? Can you tell me how many degrees wide the Torrid Zone is? Do you live in the Torrid Zone? Is the Torrid Zone north of us or south of us? In what zone are the countries that lie between the Tropic of Cancer and Tropic of Capricorn?

Q. What part of the earth's surface do the Temperate Zones embrace?

A. Those parts which lie between the Tropics and Polar Circles.

The Zone which lies between the Tropic of Cancer and the Arctic circle is called the NORTH TEMPERATE ZONE; and the one lying between the Tropic of Capricorn and the Antarctic circle, the SOUTH TEMPERATE ZONE. These Zones are called *Temperate*, because they are situated between the two extremes of heat and cold, which renders the air temperate and salubrious.

In the Temperate Zones there are four seasons; viz. *Spring*, *Summer*, *Autumn* and *Winter*.

The *vegetable* productions of the Temperate Zones are not so numerous or luxuriant as those of the Torrid Zone; the principal are *grains*, of different kinds, *cotton*, *apples*, *pears*, *peaches*, *nuts*, *vines*, *grasses*, and a great variety of plants.

The *animals* of the Temperate Zones are less numerous and ferocious than those of the Torrid Zone. The most noted among them are *bears*, *wolves*, *panthers*, *foxes*, *bisons*, *deer*, *elks*, &c. But they abound with animals which are useful for food or labor, as the *horse*, the *ox*, the *cow*, the *sheep*, the *mule*, &c.

The inhabitants of the Temperate Zones have fair complexions, and are distinguished for strength, both of body and mind, and for industry, intelligence and enterprise.

Can you point out the Temperate Zones on the map? How many Temperate Zones are there? In what Zone are *we* now? Is the Northern Temperate Zone north or south of the Equator? Between what two circles is the Northern Temperate Zone? In what Zone are all the countries that lie between the Tropic of Cancer and the Arctic Circle?

Q. What part of the earth's surface do the Frigid Zones embrace?

A. Those parts which lie between the polar circles and the poles.

These are called *Frigid*, or *Frozen Zones*, because the cold is so severe, that nearly the whole of these regions is covered with perpetual snow and ice.

In the Frigid Zones there are but two seasons—a long cold winter, and a short summer.

In the Frigid Zones there are no trees, and but few vegetables of any kind, except moss.

The principal animals are the *white bear* and *reindeer*, the *sable*, and the *ermine*.

The inhabitants of these regions are distinguished for their diminutive size, dark complexions, and for their ignorance and imbecility.

Can you show me the Frigid Zones? What is the Zone called that surrounds the North Pole? Which way from *us* is the North Frigid Zone? Should you like to live in the North Frigid Zone? Why? Do the inhabitants raise corn, wheat, rye, &c. in the North Frigid Zone? Why not?

Questions on the different Zones.—In what Zone do you live? If you were to go to the countries that lie in the Torrid Zone, should you find snow and ice? Which Zone produces the greatest number of animals? Did you ever see an animal that was brought from the Torrid Zone? Did you ever see an animal that was brought from the Frigid Zone? For what are the inhabitants of the Torrid Zone distinguished? For what are the inhabitants of the Temperate Zones distinguished? Of the Frigid Zones? Which Zones produce the greatest number of useful animals? In which zone do you imagine the people are most happy? Why? Which zone do you think produces the greatest abundance of vegetables, suitable for food? Which the greatest number of animals proper for food? Do the people of the torrid zone, probably, eat more vegetable or animal food? How many animals can you mention in the torrid zone, that are proper for food? How many in the temperate zones? In the frigid zones? Do you suppose each zone furnishes such food as is best calculated for the health of its inhabitants?

POINTS OF COMPASS.

Questions.—In what direction from us did the sun rise this morning? In what direction from us did it set last evening? Can you point to the North? To the East? To the South? To the West? What do the initials, or first letters of the words North, East, West, and South spell? NEWS. Can you point to the North-east? South-east? South-west? North-west?

Q. What are these different directions called?

A. Points of compass.

Q. Why are they so called?

A. From the mariner's compass,* an instrument used by seamen to point out their course at sea.

Q. Which are the principal, or cardinal points of the compass?

A. North—East—South—West.

What is represented by the cut? What can you tell me about the mariner's compass? Is the compass used by any except sailors? Did you ever see a compass of any kind? Is there any difference between a compass used by surveyors and that used by sailors?

MAPS.

Q. What is a Map?

A. It is a picture, or representation of a part, or of the whole of the earth's surface.

The top of a Map represents the *north;* the right hand *east;* the bottom *south;* the left hand *west.*

*The Mariner's Compass consists of a circular box, containing a paper card marked with the 32 points of direction fixed on a magnetic needle that always points north and south, except slight variations. The invention of this important instrument is ascribed to Flavius Gioia of Naples, in 1302. We can hardly

A collection of Maps is called an Atlas. Latitude is expressed on maps by figures on the sides, and longitude by figures on the top and bottom. On the Map of the world, however, the degrees of longitude are found at the equator, and those of latitude round the sides of the map.

Questions.—Is a Map of the world a picture of a part, or of the whole of the earth's surface? Is a Map of the United States a picture of a part or of the whole of the earth's surface? Which part of a Map is North? East? South? West? Point to the North-eastern part of a Map. South-eastern. South-western. North-western. If convenient, how should a scholar always hold his map in studying geography, so that it may correspond to the natural situation of the country it is intended to represent? A. The top of the map should lie to the north. As a map is a picture of that portion of the earth's surface it is intended to represent, what would you call a picture of this schoolroom?

Political Geography.

Q. What is a village?

A. A small collection of houses.

Is this place a village?

Q. What is a city?

imagine the influence the Compass has exerted on navigation. It has enabled the mariner to quit his timid course along the shore, and steer boldly across the unknown deep; has opened to him the dominion of the sea, and put him in possession of the terrestrial globe, by enabling him to visit every part of it.

A. A large collection of houses, usually situated on a river, or near the sea.

Is this place a city? How many cities can you mention?

Q. What is a Town?

A. A tract of land generally several miles in extent, and not so thickly inhabited as a village, or a city.

What is the name of this Town? Can you tell me how many churches there are in this Town? How many school-houses? Is there any large brook or river in this Town? Any high hill or mountain? Any pond or lake? What is the principal employment of the people of this town?

Q. Of what does a County consist?

A. Of several towns.

What is the name of this County? How many Towns can you mention in this county? What is the town called in which the courts for the county are held? A. The Shire, or County-town. Which is the shire-town of this county? The Shire-town contains a court house, in which the courts are held, and a jail in which criminals are confined. When there are two towns in a county in which the courts are held, they are called *half-shire* towns. Are the courts in this county held in one town, or in two?

Q. Of what does a State consist?

A. Of several counties* united under one government.

*In South Carolina these divisions are called Districts and in Louisiana Parishes.

What is the name of this State? Of what does the government of a state consist? A. Of a governor, a senate and house of representatives, who are chosen by the people. They assemble usually once or twice a year to make laws, and attend to other business of the state, and when thus assembled they are called the legislature. What is the capital of this state? What is meant by the capital? A. The town or city in which the legislature meets. What is the building called in which they assemble? A. The State House, or capitol.

Can you tell me which is the largest city in this state? Who is the governor of this state? For what length of time does he hold his office? Can you tell me how many counties there are in this state?

Q. Of what do the United States consist?

A. Of several states united under one general government.

Can you tell me how many states there are at the present time that are thus united? What is the capital of the United States? What is the chief ruler of the United States called? Who is the President of the United States at this time? Who is Vice President? By what name are the United States often called? A. The republic of the United States. They are so called because they are under a republican form of government, or a government in which the people choose their own rulers. The divisions that we have noticed above are all found in our own country.* But as we pursue the

* Country, a general term signifying any division, state, kingdom or region, as distinguished from another; as we say the countries of Europe, Asia, Africa, &c.

study, we shall find in distant countries other divisions, as kingdoms, empires, &c.

Q. What is a kingdom?

A. A country ruled by a king.

Can you mention a kingdom?

Q. Of what does an empire consist?

A. Of several countries, ruled by an emperor.

Can you mention an empire?

When we look on a map we see two kinds of divisions marked on its surface. One kind are those formed by the Creator, and consist of land and water, as islands, seas, continents, &c. These are called Natural Divisions. The other kind are those formed by man, and consist of boundaries between nations, states, &c. These are called Political, or Civil Divisions.

Q. What are Political or Civil Divisions?

A. They are portions of the earth's surface which usually contain men of one nation, speaking one language, and subject to the same laws.

Q. Of what then does Political or Civil Geography treat?

A. Of the various governments, institutions, manners, customs, &c. of the different nations of the earth.

Which do you think is the most interesting, Physical Geography, which describes the continents, islands, oceans, seas, rivers, climates, productions, &c. of the earth, or Political Geography, which treats of the various governments and institutions formed by man?

What is Statistical Geography? A. A description of states and kingdoms, with their extent, population and resources. Are Physical, Political and Statistical Geography usually treated of separately, in our systems of geography, or in connection? A. In connection. How many different nations can you mention? Which of these do you think is most happy? What makes a nation happy? If all persons were disposed to do right; or, "do to others as they wish others to do to them," what would be the consequence? Which nation do you think is the most learned? Which the most ignorant? If we could travel among all the different nations, do you suppose we should find much difference in the complexion, dress and manners of the people? Do all nations speak the same language? Are the animals in all countries alike? The trees and other vegetables? Should you like to travel through the different countries of the earth, and see the mountains, rivers, and lakes; the trees, fruits, flowers and grain; the men, the animals and birds, &c.? Can you acquire a knowledge of these without going from home? How?

Introductory Lessons.

What is the name of this Town?
What Town is north of this?
What Town is east of this?
What Town is south of this?
What Town is west of this?
Is this Town level, or hilly?
What is the chief occupation of the people?
How many churches in this Town?
How many public schools?
Have you ever been in any City or Town besides this?

What is the name of this County?
How many Towns in this County?
Which is the Shire Town?*
Is this County level or hilly?
What River in this County?
What manufacturing establishments in this County?
Do vessels sail into this County?
Is there any Canal in this County? Any Rail-Road?
Who is the Chief Judge of this County?
Who is the Sheriff† of this County?
Have you ever been in any County besides this?

What is the name of this State?
How many Counties in this State?
What bounds this State on the north?
What bounds it on the east?
What bounds it on the south?
What bounds it on the west?
What is the capital of this State?
Which is the largest town or city in this State?
What Canals in this State?
Are there any Rail-Roads in this State?
What Colleges in this State?
Who is the Governor of this State?
Have you ever been in any State besides this?

What is the name of this Country?
What is the Capital of the United States?
Who is the President of the United States?
Who is the Vice President of the United States?
In which Grand Division of the globe are the United States?
With what is N. America connected? A. With S. America.

---

* Shire town, the town or city in which the courts are held.
† Sheriff, a man appointed in each county to execute the laws.

What do N. and S. America constitute? A. A continent?
What is a continent?

MAP OF THE WORLD.

How many Continents are there? What are they called?
How is the Eastern Continent divided?
How is the Western Continent divided?
In what part of the Eastern Continent is Europe? N. W.
What sea separates Europe from Africa? M.
What sea separates Africa from Asia*? R.
What ocean lies between Asia and America? P.
What is an Ocean? Did you ever see the Atlantic ocean?
What ocean separates America from Europe and Africa? A.
What ocean south of Asia?
What ocean surrounds the north pole?
What ocean surrounds the south pole?
Which is the largest, the Arctic or Southern Ocean?
Is there more land north or south of the Equator?
Which is the largest, the Eastern or the Western continent? E.

What large Island south-east of Asia? A.†
Between what two oceans is Australia? I. and P.
What islands between North and South America?
A. West India‡ Islands.
What Islands between Asia and Australia?
A. East India islands.
Does the eastern or western continent extend farther south?
Which extends farther north?
Which extends farther south, Europe or Asia? A.
Does Africa or South America extend farther north? A.
Which extends farther south, North America or Europe? N.-A.
What Isthmus connects North and South America?
What Isthmus connects Africa and Asia?

How many Grand Divisions of the Globe are there?
What are they called? E. A. A. N-A. S-A.
Which is the largest Division?
Which is the second in size?
Which is the third?
Which is the fourth?
Which is the smallest?
In which Grand Division of the Globe are *we?*
What Grand Divisions does the Equator cross?
What Grand Divisions are crossed by the Tropic of Cancer?

---

* Asia—pronounced A'-she-a.

† New Holland is now called Australia. The eastern part is named New South Wales, and the western New Holland.

‡ In'-ja.

What by the Tropic of Capricorn? S.-A. A. A.
Through what divisions does the Arctic Circle pass?
On which side of the Equator does most of South America lie?
On which side of the Equator does most of Africa lie?
Is Asia in north or south latitude?
Why in north latitude?
Is Africa in north or south latitude?
Why is it in both north and south latitude?
In what direction from North America is South America? Europe? Africa? Asia? Atlantic ocean?
In what direction from Africa is Asia? Europe? North America? South America? Australia? Greenland?
In what direction from us is Europe? Africa? South America?

What ocean lies between North America and Europe? Between Africa and South America?
What ocean between Africa and Australia?
What ocean east of Asia and west of America?
What ocean south of South America, Africa and Australia?
What ocean north of North America, Europe and Asia?
How many oceans are there?
Which is the largest ocean? Pacific.
Which is the second in size? Atlantic.
Which is the third? Indian. (In'-je-an.)
Which is the fourth? Southern or Antarctic.
Which is the smallest ocean? Northern or Arctic.

How many degrees from the equator to each pole?
How many degrees from one pole to the other?
How many degrees is it round the globe?
How many geographic miles make a degree?
How many English miles make a degree?

MAP OF NORTH AMERICA.

In which hemisphere is North America?
Does North America lie in north or south latitude?
Why in north latitude?
What ocean bounds it on the north?
What ocean lies east of it?
What gulf on the south?
What ocean bounds it on the west?

How is North America divided?
In what part is British America? Northern part.
In what part are the United States? Middle.
Where is Mexico? South-western part.

In what part is *Guatimala? Southern part.
Where are the †Russian possessions? N.W.

What is the capital of British America? M.
What is the capital of the United States? W.
What is the capital of Mexico? M.
What is the capital of Guatimala? St.-S.

In what direction from us is Greenland?
To whom does it belong? A. To Denmark.
What Bay and Straits separate Greenland from North America?
What Gulf south of the United States? M.
What Gulf in the western part of Mexico? C.
What Gulf east of Lower Canada? St. L.
What is a Gulf or Bay?

What Bay west of Greenland?
What Bay in the northern part of British America? H.
What Bay south of Hudson's Bay? J.
What Bay north of Guatimala? H.
What Bay west of Yucatan? C.

What is a Mountain? What Mountains extend from Mexico to the Arctic Ocean? R. In what direction do they run?
What Mountains extend through the eastern part of the United States? A. What is their course?

What is a Cape?
What Cape south of Greenland? F.
What Cape south of Nova Scotia? S.
What Cape west of Cuba? S.-A.
What Cape south of California? St. L.
What Cape east of Bhering's Straits? P.-W.
What is the most southern Cape of the United States? S.

What Island east of Greenland? I.
To whom does it belong? A. To Denmark.
What large island east of the gulf of St. Lawrence? N.
What islands between North and South America? W.-I.
Which is the largest of the West India islands? C.
Which is the second in size? H.
Which is the third? J. Which is the fourth? P.-R.
What cluster of isles east of the United States? B.

---

* Gwah-te-mah'-la. † Roo'-shan.

What is a Lake? What is a Pond?

What six Lakes lie between the United States and British America? W. S. H. C. E. O. Which is the most eastern? O. Which is the most western? W.

Which of these Lakes is the smallest? St. C. Which is the largest? S.

What large Lake lies N. W. of Lake Superior? W.

What three Lakes N. W. of Lake Winnipeg? A. G-S. G-B.

What Lake in Guatimala? N.*

What river runs from Lake Ontario into the Gulf of St. Lawrence? What is it course? N-E.

What two rivers empty into the Arctic Ocean? M. and C.

What large river empties into the Pacific? C.

What two into the Gulf of California? G. and C.

Where does the Mississippi empty?

What is a Strait? What is a Channel?

What Strait leads into Baffin's Bay? D.

What Strait is the entrance to Hudson's Bay? H.

What Strait between Newfoundland and Labrador? B.

What Strait between North America and Asia? B.

In what direction is North America longest?

In what direction from *us* is the Gulf of St. Lawrence?

In what direction from the Gulf of St. Lawrence is Hudson's Bay? Gulf of California? Baffin's Bay?

Which way from Hudson's Bay is the Gulf of Mexico?

In what direction from the Gulf of Mexico is the Caribbean Sea?

Which way from the Caribbean Sea is the Gulf of California?

In what direction from the Gulf of California is Baffin's Bay?

Which way from Baffin's Bay is Behring's Strait?

In what direction from Behring's Strait is the Isthmus of Darien?

What is an Isthmus?

What does the Isthmus of Darien connect?

How many oceans border on North America?

What three large Gulfs in North America? M. L. C.

Through what part of North America does the Tropic of Cancer pass? Through what part the Arctic Circle?

In what Zones does North America lie?

In what Zones are the West India Islands?

In what part of North America do you live?

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

What is the name of this State? Its capital?

In what direction is this State longest?

---

* Pronounced Nic-ar-aw'-gua.

How many States are there? Territories?
What Division bounds the United States on the north? B-A.
What Ocean lies east of the United States? A.
What Gulf south of the United States? M.
What Ocean west of the United States Territory? P.

In what direction does the coast of the United States run? N-E. and S-W.
What is a Shore or Coast? Point it out on the map.
What six Lakes lie between the United States and British America? W. S. H. C. E. O.
What States and Territories are bounded north by these Lakes and British America?
What fourteen States border on the Atlantic Ocean?
What States lie on the Gulf of Mexico?
What States and Territory lie on the Mississippi river?
What States lie entirely west of the Mississippi river?
What State lies on both sides of the Mississippi river?
How many Territories west of the Mississippi?
Which is the most western Territory?
Which is the most north-eastern State?
Which is the most south-western State?
Which of the United States extends farthest south?
What four States border on Lake Erie?
What State lies on Long Island Sound?

In what direction are the United States longest?
* In what direction from Connecticut is Maine? Vermont? New York? Rhode Island? Ohio? Texas?
In what direction from Ohio is New York? Georgia? Louisiana? †Illinois? New Jersey? Vermont? ‡Indiana? Maryland? Tennessee?
In what direction from *us* is the Gulf of Mexico? Lake Ontario? Nebraska Territory? Mexico?

What is a Sound?
What two Sounds east of North Carolina? A. and P.
What Sound south of Connecticut?
What harbor east of New Jersey?
What Bay east of Massachusetts? M.
What Bay east of Lake Huron? G.
What Bay on the north-western part of Lake Michigan?

What large river empties into the Gulf of Mexico? M.

---

* In answering the following questions, let the pupil point out the direction with his hand, as he gives the answer.

† Il-le-noy′. ‡ In-je-an′-na.

Which are the three largest western branches of the Mississippi river? M. A. R.

Which is the largest eastern branch of the Mississippi? O.

What two rivers unite and form the Ohio? A. M.

What two unite and form the *Mobile river? A. Tombigbee and Alabama.

What two rivers unite and form the Apalachicola? A. Chattahooche and Flint.

What river forms the boundary line between South Carolina and Georgia? S.

What river separates Virginia and Kentucky, from Illinois, Indiana and Ohio? O.

What river forms the boundary between Maryland and Virginia? P.

What between New Jersey and Pennsylvania? D.

What river in the eastern part of New York? H.

What is the principal branch of the Hudson? M.

What is the largest river in the Eastern States? C.

What river empties into Green Bay? F.

What river forms the boundary between Maine and New Brunswick? St. C. Between Texas and Mexico?

What river forms the boundary between Louisiana and Texas? S.

What three Capes east of Massachusetts? A. C. M.

What is the eastern point of Long Island called? M.

What Cape east of New Jersey? A. Sandy Hook.

What two at the entrance of Delaware Bay? M. H.

What two at the entrance of Chesapeake Bay? C. and H.

What three east of North Carolina? H. L. F.

What two east of Florida? C. and F.

What Cape south of Florida? S.

What Island south of Connecticut?

To what State does Long Island belong? A. To New York.

What Islands south-east of Florida? B.

What is the principal range of Mountains in the United States? A.

What Mountains between Mandan District and Oregon Territory?

What seven States are intersected by the parallel of 40° N. latitude?

What States by the parallel of 30° N. latitude?

How many States are longer from east to west, than from north to south?

---

* Mo-beel'.

* Through what States would you pass in travelling in a straight line from Connecticut to Maine?
From Maine to New York?
From New York to Virginia?
From Virginia to Louisiana?
From Louisiana to Ohio?
From Ohio to Georgia?
From Georgia to Louisiana?
From Louisiana to Maine?
Through what States would you pass in travelling on the coast from Mexico to New Brunswick?

What is the capital of the United States? W.
What is the capital of Maine? A. Of New Hampshire? C. Of Vermont? M. Of Massachusetts? B. Of Rhode Island? P. Of Connecticut? H. and N-H. Of New York? A. Of New Jersey? T. Of Pennsylvania? H. Of Delaware? D. Of Maryland? A. Of Virginia? R. Of North Carolina? R. Of South Carolina? C. Of Georgia? M. Of Florida? T. Of Alabama? T. Of Mississippi? J. Of Louisiana? N-O. Of Texas? A. Of Tennessee? N. Of Arkansas? L-R. Of Missouri? J-C. Of Kentucky? F. Of Illinois? S. Of Indiana? I. Of Ohio? C. Of Michigan† ? D. Of Wisconsin? M. Of Iowa‡ ? I.
Which is the largest State? V.
Which is the smallest State? R-I.
In what Zone are the United States? Why?

The initials of certain rivers in the United States spell HARTFORD; what are their names, and where do they empty?
In what direction from *this place* is South America?
Can we go to South America by land?
Can we go any other way? How?
Which is the shortest route, by land or water?
Would you prefer to go there by land or water?
What Islands must we pass in sailing from New York to South America? W-I.

MAP OF SOUTH AMERICA.

In what direction from us is South America?
What Sea north of South America?
What Ocean bounds it on the east?
What Strait on the south?
What Ocean bounds it on the west?
In which hemisphere is South America?

---

* In learning the following questions, the scholar should extend a rule from the centre of one of the given States to the centre of the other.
† Mish'-e-gan. ‡ I'-o-way.

What Isthmus connects it with North America? D.
What is an Isthmus?
What are the Divisions of South America?
Which is the most northern Division? N-G.
Which is the most southern Division? P.
Which is the most eastern Division? B.
Which is the most western Division? P.
What Divisions lie on the Atlantic Ocean?
What Divisions lie on the Pacific?
What Divisions on the Caribbean Sea? N-G. and V.
Which is the largest Division of South America? B.
What Division extends from the Atlantic to the Pacific? P.
What Desert between Chili* and Peru? Atacama Desert
In what Division is the Desert of Atacama? B.
Which is the smallest division of South America?

What is a River?
Which is the largest River in South America? A.
Which is the second largest? P.
What two Rivers unite and form the La Plata? P. and U.
Which is the third River in South America? O.
What River empties into the Caribbean Sea? M.

What is an Island?
What Island at the mouth of the Amazon? J.
What Island south of Patagonia? T-D-F.
What Strait separates Terra del Fuego from Patagonia? M.
What is a Strait?
What Island south of Chili? C.
What Island west of Chili, remarkable for the residence of Alexander Selkirk, or Robinson Crusoe? J-F.

Which is the most northern Cape or Point of S. America? Pt. G.
Which is the most eastern Cape? R.
Which is the most southern Cape? H.
Which is the most western Cape? B.

If we were on the island of Joannes, in what direction from us would Point Gallinus be? Cape St. Roque? Cape Horn? Cape Blan-co? Isthmus of Darien? Strait of Magellan? Bolivia? Equador? Patagonia? Guiana†? Peru? Chili? Brazil‡?

Through what Divisions does the Equator pass?
Through what does the tropic of Capricorn pass?
In what Zones is South America?

---

* Chee'-le. † Gee-an'-na. ‡ Bra-zeel'.

What are Zones? How many are there?
Through what Divisions does the 70th meridian of west longitude pass? What are meridians?

Which is the principal chain of Mountains?
Where is Mount Sorata, the highest peak of the Andes?
Where is Mount Chimborazo?
Where is Cotopaxi, the highest volcano on the globe?
What is a Volcano? What is a Mountain?
Between what two capes is South America the longest?
Between what two the widest? St. R. and B.

What is the Capital of New Grenada? B. Of Venezuela? C. Of Guiana? G. P. C. Of Equador? Q. Of Peru? L. Of Bolivia? C. Of Brazil? R-J. Of Buenos Ayres? B. Of Paraguay? A. Of Uruguay? M. Of Chili? S. Of Patagonia? Why are there no towns in Patagonia? A. Because it is inhabited by Indians in a savage state?

To whom does Guiana belong? A. To the English, Dutch and French. Spanish Guiana is included in Venezuela; and Portuguese Guiana in Brazil.

Can we go from South America to Europe by land? Why not? How must we then go?

What ocean must we cross, and in what direction must we sail in going from South America to Europe?

MAP OF EUROPE.

In what direction from us is Europe?
What ocean lies north of Europe? A.
What Grand Division of the Globe east of Europe? A.
What sea south of Europe? M.
What ocean bounds Europe on the west? A.
In which hemisphere is Europe?

Is Europe connected with Asia or Africa?
What sea separates it from Africa?
What large empire in the eastern part of Europe? R.
What is an empire? What is a kingdom?
What kingdom in the south-western part? P.
What four Divisions of Europe lie on the Mediterranean? S. F. I. G.
What divisions lie on the Atlantic? P. S. F. B. H. G. D. N.
What five Divisions encompass the Baltic Sea? G. D. S. R. P.

Which is the largest Division of Europe? R.
Which is the second largest Division? A.
Which is the third Division? T.
Which is the smallest Division?

What Divisions are intersected by the parallel of 40° N. latitude? P. S. I. T.

What by the parallel of 50°? F. B. G. A. P. R.

What by the parallel of 60°? N. S. R.

Through what Divisions does the first meridian* of longitude pass? E. F. S.

Through what the 10° of E. longitude? N. D. P. G. S. A. I.

Through what Divisions does the 20° of E. longitude pass? N. S. P. R. A. T.

The 30° E. longitude? R.

Which is the largest Island in Europe? G-B.†

What large Island west of Great Britain? I.

What large Island west of Norway? I.

What two large Islands west of Italy? S. C.

What small Island between Corsica and Italy? E.

For what is Elba remarkable? A. For being the place to which Bonaparte was banished in 1814.

What large Island south of Italy? S.

What small Island south of Sicily, on which St. Paul was shipwrecked? M.

What Island south of the Archipelago? C.

What is an Archipelago?

What large Island in the eastern part of the Mediterranean? C.

What three Islands near Spain? I. M. M.

What four clusters of Islands north and west of Scotland? F. S. O. W.

What three Divisions constitute the kingdom of Great Britain? A. England, Wales and Scotland.

What does the kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland constitute? A. The British Empire.

What Sea east of Great Britain? N.

What Sea between Great Britain and Ireland? I.

What Sea between Sweden and Russia? B.

What Sea in the northern part of Russia? W.

What three Seas south of Russia? C. A. B.

What three Seas east of Turkey? B. M. A.

There are ten Seas *in* and *around* Europe; what are their names? C. A. B. M. A. M. I. N. B. W.

What Gulf north of the Baltic? B.

What two Gulfs east of the Baltic? F. and R.

What Gulf east of Italy? V.

---

*The first meridian is that from which the longitude is reckoned; marked O on the map.

†The island comprising England, Wales and Scotland, is called Great-Britain.

What Gulf south-east of Italy ? T.
What Gulf south of France ? L.
What Bay west of France ? B.

What Channel between France and England ? B
What Channel between Wales and Ireland ? St. G.
What Channel south of Wales ? B.
What Channel between Ireland and Scotland ? N.
What Channel between Denmark and Norway ? S.
What Channel between Denmark and Sweden ? C.

What Strait between England and France ? D.
What Strait at the entrance of the Mediterranean ? G.
What Strait between Corsica and Sardinia ? B.
What Strait between Sicily and Italy ? M.
What Strait at the entrance of the Gulf of Venice ? Otranto.

What Mountains between Norway and Sweden ? D.
What Mountains between France and Spain ? P.
What Mountains in Switzerland ? A.
Which is the highest peak of the Alps ? A. Mont Blanc, the highest mountain in Europe.
What Mountains in Italy ? A.
What Mountains in Austria ? C.
What Mountains in Turkey ? B.
What Mountains between Russia and Asia ? U.

What Mountain in Sicily ? E.
What Mountain near Naples ? V.
What Mountain in Iceland ? H.

What is a Cape ? What is a Promontory ?
What Cape north of Norway ? N.
What Cape south-west of Norway ? N.
What Cape south-west of England ? L-E
What Cape South of Ireland ? C.
What Cape north of France ? L.-H.
What Cape north-west of Spain ? O.
What Cape west of Spain ? F.
What Cape south-west of Portugal ? St. V.
What Cape south of Italy ? S.
What Cape south of Greece ? M.

What large River rises in Russia, and empties into the Caspian Sea ? V.
What River empties into the sea of Azof ? D.
What river rises in Germany and empties into the Black Sea ? D.

What two Rivers rise in Switzerland ? R. and R.
What two Rivers empty into the Bay of Biscay ? G. and L.
What River empties into the British Channel ? S.
What five Rivers rise in Spain and empty into the Atlantic ? G. G. T. D. M.
Which is the principal River in England ? T.
Which is the largest River in Ireland ? S.
Which is the principal River in Norway ? G.
What is a River ? What is a Lake ?

What two Lakes in Russia ? O. L.
What three Lakes in Sweden ? W. W. and Ma-lar'.
What two Lakes in Switzerland ? A. Constance and Geneva.

What is the Capital of England ? L. Of Portugal ? L. Of Spain ? M. Of France ? P. Of Holland ? A. Of Belgium ? B. At what place in Germany does the Federative Diet hold its sessions ? A. At Frankfort-on-the-Mayne. What is the Capital of Denmark ? C. Of Switzerland ? B. Of Italy ? R. Of Austria ? V. Of Turkey ? C. Of Greece ? A. Of Prussia ? B. Of Russia ? St. P. Of Sweden ? S. Of Norway ? C. Of Scotland ? E. Of Ireland ? D.

In what direction from us is England ? In what direction from England is Norway ? Prussia ? Italy ? Spain ? Ireland ? Russia ? Portugal ? In what direction are *we* from Portugal ?
Does Europe lie in north or south latitude ? Why ?
In what Zones is Europe ? What are Zones ?
In what direction from Europe is Asia ?

MAP OF ASIA.

In what direction from us is Asia ?
What Ocean lies north of Asia ? A.
What Ocean bounds it on the east ? P.
What Ocean on the south ? I.
What Grand Division west of Asia ? E.
In which hemisphere is Asia ?

What Isthmus connects Africa and Asia ? S.
What Division embraces the northern part ? S.
What extensive Empire south of Siberia ? C.
What general name is given to the Divisions south of the Chinese Empire ? India.
What Division in the south-western part of Asia ? A.
What Division north of Arabia ? T.
What Division east of Turkey ? P.
What two Divisions east of Persia ? A. and B.

What Division north of Afghanistan? I-T.
What Division between the Caspian and Black seas?

What Sea between Asia and Africa? R.
What Sea between Arabia and Hindostan? A.
What Sea or Bay east of Hindostan? B.
What Sea south of China? C.
What Sea between China and Corea? Y.
What Sea between Corea and Niphon? J.
What Sea in the eastern part of Siberia? O.
What Sea east of Kamtchatka? K.
What Sea between Nova Zembla and Siberia? K.
What Sea west of Independent Tartary? C.
What Sea in Independent Tartary? A.
What Sea in the southern part of Syria, or Palestine? D

What Gulfs between Arabia and Persia? P. O.
What two Gulfs west of Hindostan? C. C.
What Gulf south of the Birman Empire? M.
What Gulf south of Siam? S.
What Gulf east of Anam? T.
What Gulf in the northern part of Siberia?
What Gulf between Cey-lon' and Hindostan?
What Gulf at the northern extremity of the Red Sea? A. Gulf of Suez.

What Mountains between Siberia and the Chinese Empire?
What Mountains between the Chinese Empire and Hindostan.
Which is the highest peak of the Himalaya Mountains? A. Dawal-a-ge'ri. It is five miles high above the level of the sea; being the highest mountain on the globe.
What chain unites the Altay and Himalaya Mountains? B-T.
What Mountains in the southern part of Hindostan? G.
What Mountains in the western part of Turkey? T.
What Mountain in the northern part of Arabia? R.
What Mountains separate Siberia from Russia in Europe? U.
What is a Mountain?

What is a Peninsula?
What Peninsula in the southern part of Farther India? M.
What Peninsula between the Yellow Sea and Japan Sea? C.
What Peninsula between the Sea of Okhotsk and the Sea of Kamtchatka? K.

What Cape north of Siberia? N. E.
What Cape south of Kamtchatka? L.
What Cape south of Malacca? R.
What Cape south of Hindostan? C.

What is a Strait? What is a Channel?
What Strait between Asia and North America? F.
What Strait between Malay Peninsula and Sumatra? M.
What Strait between Sumatra and Java? S.
[*See the Map of the World.*]
What Strait between Borneo and Celebes? M.
What Strait between Australia and New Guinea? T.
[*See the Map of the World.*]
What Strait between the Persian Gulf and the Gulf of Orman? A. The Strait of Orman.
What Strait is the entrance to the Red Sea? B.

What Rivers unite and empty into the Persian Gulf? E. T. K.
What large River rises in the Chinese Empire and empties into the Sea of Arabia? I.
What two large Rivers empty into the Bay of Bengal? G. B.
What River empties into the China Sea? C.
What River passes through the middle of China and empties into the Pacific? K.
What River empties into the Yellow Sea? H-H.
What River empties into the Gulf of Tartary? A.
What River empties into the Gulf of Anadir? A.
What three large Rivers empty into the Arctic Ocean? L. O. Y.
What River empties into the Gulf of Obi? O.
What River from Europe empties into the Caspian Sea?

What is an Island?
What Island south of Hindostan? C.
What Island south of Malay Peninsula? S.
What Island south-east of Sumatra? J.
[*See Map of the World.*]
What large Island east of Malay Peninsula? B.
What large Island east of Borneo? C.
What large Island south-east of Asia? A.
[*See Map of the World.*]
What Island south of Australia? V. D. L.
What large Island north of Australia? N-G.
What cluster of Islands east of Farther India? P.
What Island in the Gulf of Tonquin? H.
What large Island east of Corea? N.
What two Islands east of the Gulf of Tartary? J. S.
What Island north-west of Siberia? N-Z.

What Oceans border on Asia? A. P. I.
What five Seas east of Asia? K. O. J. Y. C.
What Seas west of Asia? R. M. A. M. B. C.

What is the Capital of Turkey? C. Of Arabia? M. Of Persia? T. Of Afghanistan? C. Of Beloochistan? K. Of Hindostan? C. Of the Birman Empire? A. Of the Chinese Empire? P. Of Independent Tartary? B. Of Siberia? A. Tobolsk.

Where is the Empire of Japan? A. In the east of Asia; including the islands of Niphon, Kiusof, Ximo and Sikofk, besides several smaller ones. Its capital is Jeddo.

What three Islands does the Equator cross? S. B. C.

Through what Divisions does the Tropic of Cancer pass? A. H. B. C.

Through what Division the Arctic Circle? S.

What Divisions are intersected by the parallel of 10° N. latitude? H. M. A.

What by the parallel of 20°? A. H. B. A.

What by the parallel of 30°? A. P. B. A. H. C-E.

What by the parallel of 40? T. C. I-T. C-E.

Through what Divisions does the 80th meridian of east longitude pass? S. C-E. H.

In what Zones does Asia lie?

At what place is Asia connected with Africa? S.

What is an Isthmus?

In what direction from Asia is Africa?

If you travel out of Asia into Africa, what Division will you enter?

MAP OF AFRICA.

In what direction from us is Africa?

What Sea lies north of Africa? M.

What Sea and Ocean east of Africa? R. and I.

What Ocean bounds it on the west? A.

On which side of the Equator does most of Africa lie?

With which of the other Grand Divisions is Africa connected?

In which hemisphere is Africa?

What States in the northern part? Barbary States.

What are their names? M. A. T. T. B.

Which is the most western of the Barbary States? M.

What does Morocco include? A. The former kingdoms of Tafilet and Fez.

Which is the most eastern of the Barbary States? B.

What Division in the north-eastern part of Africa? E.

What Division south of Egypt? N.

What Division south-west of Nubia? D.

What Division south-east of Nubia? A.

What extensive Desert south of the Barbary States? S.

Can you mention any oasis in the desert?

What is the meaning of oasis? A. An island.

What large Division south east of the Desert? S. or N.

What Division west of Soudan? S.

What two small Divisions south of Sene Gambia? S. L and L.

What name has been given to the coast between Sene Gambia and the Niger? Upper Guinea.

What names have been given to the coast between the Niger and the River Nourse? B. L. C. A. B.

What Colony in the southern part of Africa? C.

What small Division east of Cape Colony? C.

What is the interior of the southern part of Africa called? E.

What do we know respecting Ethiopia? A. But little except its name, as it has never been explored by any except those who inhabit it.

What names have been given to the coast between Caffraria and Abyssinia? M. Z. A.

What Division in the eastern part of the Desert? F.

Which is the most northern Cape? B.

Which is the most eastern Cape? G.*

Which is the most southern Cape? G-H.

Which is the most western Cape? V.

What is a Cape? What is an Island?

Which is the most northern group of the African Islands? A.

In what direction from Morocco are the Azores?

What Islands west of Morocco? M.

What cluster of Islands south-west of Morocco? C.

What Islands west of Sene Gambia? C-V.

What Island west of Cimbebas? St. H.

For what is St. Helena distinguished?

A. For being the place to which Napoleon Bonaparte was banished in 1815 He was detained on this island a prisoner of war, till his death, May 5, 1821 In August, 1840, the French government sent a ship, the Belle Poule, to St. Helena, for the purpose of bringing the remains of Napoleon to France. It arrived there October 8th. On the 15th, his tomb was opened, and his body conveyed on board the ship; and on the 19th of October, 1840, the Belle Poule sailed for France, where she arrived early in December, and on the 15th of the same month his body was deposited in the church of the Hospital of Invalids in Paris, with all the honors due to the greatest warrior of modern times.

In what direction from France is St. Helena?

In what direction from *us* is St. Helena?

What large Island south-east of Africa? M.

What Islands in the northern part of the Channel of Mozambique?

What two Islands east of Madagascar? M. B.

What Island near Cape Guardafui? S.

What Isthmus unites Africa and Asia? S.

How wide is the Isthmus of Suez?

What Strait at the entrance of the Red Sea? B.

What Strait at the entrance of the Mediterranean?

How wide are each of these Straits?

What lands are separated and what waters connected by the Strait of Gibraltar?

Pron. Ga'r-daf-we.

What Channel between Madagascar and Mozambique? M.
What Gulf east of Tunis? C.
What Gulf north of Tripoli? S.
What Gulf at the northern extremity of the Red Sea? A. The Gulf of Suez.
What Gulf south of Guinea? G.
What Bay near the Cape of Good Hope? A. Table Bay.

What River rises in the Mountains of the Moon and runs north through Abyssinia, Nubia and Egypt into the Mediterranean? N.
What large River in Soudan? N.
Where does the Niger empty?
What three Rivers in Sene Gambia? S. G. G.
What River separates Loango from Congo? Z.
What River in South Africa runs west into the Atlantic? O.
What River empties into the channel of Mozambique? Z.

What Mountains in the Barbary States? A.
What Mountains extend through the middle of Africa? G. or M.
What Mountains north of Guinea? K.

What is the Capital of Egypt? C.
What is the Capital of Barca? D.
What is the Capital of Tripoli? T.
Of Tunis? T. Of Algiers? A. Of Morocco? M.
What is the principal Town in the Cape Colony? C-T.
What is the Capital of Congo? St.-S.
What is the Capital of Abyssinia? G.

In what direction from us is Tripoli?
In what direction from Tripoli is the Cape Colony? Abyssinia? Sene Gambia? Egypt? Morocco? Nubia? G. of Guinea? Fezzan?
Through what Divisions of Africa does the Equator pass?
Through what the Tropic of Cancer?
Through what the Tropic of Capricorn?
In what Zones does Africa lie?
Suppose you were at the Cape of Good Hope to-day at 12 o'clock, would the sun be north or south of you? Why?
Between what two Capes is Africa the longest? Between what two Capes the widest?
How wide is the Sahara or Great Desert?
How long is the Mediterranean Sea?
In what direction from Africa is this place?
What bodies of water border on Africa?
What prevents Africa from being a continent by itself?
When and by whom was the Cape of Good Hope first discovered?
When and by whom was it first doubled?

Civil Geography.

There are five grand varieties of the human species, viz.: The European race,—the Asiatic or Mongolian race,—the Malay race,—the African race,—and the American race; but they imperceptibly approach and are lost in each other.

1. The *European race* has regular features and fair complexions, and includes the Europeans and their descendants in America, Turks, Tartars, Arabians, Persians, Hindoos, Abyssinians, Egyptians and Moors.

2. The *Asiatic* or *Mongolian* race has a brown, or olive complexion, having flat foreheads, small eyes, coarse, straight black hair, and wide mouths. The race includes the Chinese, Japanese, Mongolians, Siberian tribes, Nova Zemblans, Laplanders, Greenlanders and Esquimaux Indians.

3. The *Malay* race has a dark brown complexion, with large features, strong hair, broad nostrils, and great mouths. This race includes the inhabitants of the Maylay Peninsula, of the Asiatic islands, of Australasia, and of Polynesia.

4. The *African* race has a jet black complexion, woolly hair, flat noses, prominent chins, and thick lips. This race includes the Negroes of Africa.

5. The *American* or Indian race has a copper color, coarse, straight black hair, high cheek bones, sunken eyes, and stout masculine limbs. This race includes all the Indians dispersed over the American continent, except the Esquimaux.

Notwithstanding the numerous varieties in the human species, the Scriptures inform us that they are the offspring of one common parent; that the delicate European and the swarthy Ethiopian are brothers descended from the same ancestor.

Climate, or the temperature of the air, is the principal cause of the different complexion, and the external form of the varieties of the human race, which, when extremely warm or cold, produces in process of time, a dark, and when temperate, a fair complexion. Difference of education, food, clothing, modes of life, and particular customs may be assigned as other causes.

To which race do *you* belong? Why? Have you ever seen a person that belonged to the Asiatic race? Malay race? African? American or Indian race? Do the several races differ from each other as much in form and features as in complexion? Which race has taken the lead in civilization, in the arts, sciences, &c.? Will not each race adopt such form of government, and establish such institutions, as are in harmony with its intellectual and moral condition? Why have the European then ever taken the lead? Which race do you think superior in physical, moral and intellectual power? Which race seems destined ultimately to hold the supremacy?

STATE OF SOCIETY.

The different nations of the earth are divided according to their habits of life, and state of improvement, into FOUR CLASSES, viz.: *Savage, Half-civilized, Civilized,* and *Enlightened.*

In the *savage state,* men subsist principally by hunting, fishing, and the spontaneous productions of the earth. They possess but little knowledge of agriculture, or the mechanic arts. They live in huts formed of poles or stakes covered with bark or leaves, or plastered with clay. The most noted in this state of society are the North American Indians.

In the *half-civilized state,* men subsist by agriculture and pasturage, and understand many of the arts; but science, literature, and foreign commerce are almost unknown. They have established laws and religion, and some of their finer manufactures they have carried to a high degree of perfection. The most noted in this state of society, are the Persians.

In the *civilized state,* men are acquainted with the arts and sciences, and derive their subsistence from agriculture, manufactures and commerce. The most noted in this state of society are the Chinese.

In the *enlightened state,* men have carried the arts and sciences to a high degree of perfection, and are distinguished for their industry, intelligence, ingenuity and enterprise. Among enlightened nations, the most noted are the people of the United States, the English, French, and Germans.

To which state of society do you belong? Why?

GOVERNMENTS.

Government is the system, or power, by which the laws of a country are made and executed.

There are three simple forms of Government, viz.: Monarchy, Aristocracy, and Republican.

There are two kinds of Monarchies; absolute and limited.

An absolute monarchy is a government in which the *will* of the monarch is the *law;* as in Turkey and Persia.

Questions on the Maps.—What is the government of the Russian empire? Of the Chinese empire? Of the Turkish empire? Of Persia? Afghanistan?

A limited monarchy is a government in which the power of the sovereign is limited by law; as in England.

Questions on the Maps.—Under what form of government is France? Spain? Sweden? How many countries of Europe have limited monarchies?

An aristocracy is a government administered by a few men, usually styled the nobility.

A Republic is a free government, in which the people choose their own rulers; as in the United States.

Questions on the Maps.—Under what form of government is Mexico? Switzerland? What other countries have a republican government?

The government among savage nations is usually that of patriarchs or chiefs, who are elected to office on account of their bravery, wisdom, and experience. They are generally called Independent Chiefs; as among the North American Indians, Arabians, &c.

A Viceroy is the governor of a kingdom or country, who is appointed by a monarch, and who rules with regal authority.

Questions on the Maps.—Under what government is British America? Cape Colony?

RELIGIONS.

The four prevailing religions of the world are Christian, Mahometdan, Jewish, and Pagan, or Heathen.

Christians are those who believe in Jesus Christ as the Saviour of mankind. There are three great divisions of Christians, viz.: Roman Catholics, Greek Church, and Protestants.

The Roman Catholics are those who acknowledge the supremacy of the Pope.

The Greek Church, in its forms and ceremonies, resembles the Roman Catholic, but denies the supremacy of the Pope.

Protestants are those who disclaim the jurisdiction of the Pope, and take the Bible as the only foundation of Christian faith and worship.

Protestants are divided into various sects; the principal of which are Episcopalians, Presbyterians, Congregationalists, Baptists, Methodists, and Friends.

Mahomedans are those who believe in Mahomet, an impostor of Arabia, who flourished 600 years after Christ.

The Jews are those who believe in the Old Testament and reject the New, and expect a Saviour yet to come.

Pagans, or Heathen, are those who believe in false gods, and worship idols, beasts, reptiles, &c.

PART SECOND.

AMERICA.

America is less in size than the eastern continent, but surpasses it in the number and magnitude of its rivers, its numerous lakes, and its lofty and extended ranges of mountains.

It is 9,000 miles in length, and on an average 1,500 miles in width, containing about 15 million square miles.

It is distinguished for the variety of its climate, its valuable productions, and for the freedom of its civil and religious institutions.

The climate is generally colder than that of the eastern continent. It is calculated that the heat is 10 degrees less than in the same parallels in the eastern hemisphere.

It abounds in almost all the animal, vegetable and mineral productions. It contains a great variety of wild animals, and in comparing those of the same species in the two continents, it has been found, in a majority of instances, where a difference in size has been

ascertained that the American animal is larger than that of the eastern continent.*

The birds are exceedingly numerous, and are said to be more beautiful in their plumage than those of Asia and Africa, but in their notes less melodious. The Condor of South America, in size, strength and rapacity, surpasses all others of the feathered creation.

It abounds in gold and silver mines, and produces an abundance of iron, copper, quicksilver, antimony, sulphur, nitre, lead, loadstone, and marbles of every sort. It has various kinds of precious stones, as diamonds, rubies, emeralds, amethysts, alabaster, &c.

It produces every kind of grain, fruit, pulse, herbs, plants and flowers, native to Europe, besides a great variety of others—as cinnamon, pepper, sarsaparilla, cocoa, scarlet dye, mahogany, logwood, Brazil wood, sassafras, &c. &c.

The population of America is usually estimated at 47 millions; consisting of three classes, viz —Whites, Negroes and Indians.

The Whites are the descendants of Europeans who have settled in America since its discovery. The Negroes are the descendants of Africans who have been brought from their native country. The Indians are the descendants of those who occupied the country at the time of its discovery, and are generally savages.

History.—America is often called *the new world*, because it is but a little more than three centuries since it was first made known to the

*American Encyclopedia.

people of the eastern continent. The honor of this important event belongs to Christopher Columbus, who discovered it in 1492.*

DISCOVERY OF AMERICA BY COLUMBUS, IN 1492

The discovery of America excited a spirit of enterprise throughout the civilized world, unknown and unfelt at any time before, and drew adventurers from all parts of Europe. In 1497, John Cabot, and his son Sebastian, natives of Venice, in the service of Henry VII. king of England, discovered North America, and explored the coast from Newfoundland to Florida.

In 1499, Americus Vespucius, a native of Florence, discovered the

*Columbus was born in 1435, in the city of Genoa, at that time a republic in the north-western part of Italy. Great exertions were made by the maritime powers of Europe at that time to find a passage by sea to the East Indies. The Portuguese had made several attempts to accomplish this, by sailing down the western coast of Africa. But Columbus, from long and close application to the study of geography, became persuaded that the shortest and most direct route to India would be found by sailing in a westerly direction. For he imagined that the eastern coast of Asia and the western shore of Europe were separated by an ocean of moderate extent. To determine this point, he resolved on a voyage of discovery. He applied to the government of Genoa for assistance, but without success; he also applied to the government of Portugal, but his applications were here rejected; he next applied to Ferdinand and Isabella, the sovereigns of Castile and Arragon, who furnished him with three small vessels and 90 men. He sailed from Palos in Spain, the 3d of August, 1492, and discovered San Salvador, the most easterly of the Bahama Isles, Oct. 12th, 1492. He made four voyages of discovery to this continent, and died at Valladolid in 1506, aged 59.

continent at Paria, near the mouth of the Orinoco. On his return to Europe, he published an account of his voyage, and acquired the *undeserved honor* of giving his name to this continent. In a short time the whole continent was discovered, and settlements made in various parts of it, by different nations of Europe. South America and the southern part of North America, were peopled by colonies from Spain and Portugal; the eastern part of North America by colonies from England, France and Holland. America, at the time of its discovery, was inhabited by a rude, barbarous and warlike people, whom Columbus and his followers named Indians. They considered the Spaniards as a superior race of beings, and treated them with all the kindness and hospitality of which native innocence is capable. But their kindness was ill repaid. Impelled by a thirst for gold, the Spaniards committed the most horrid cruelties upon them, and in some instances destroyed whole nations.

Questions.—Between what two oceans does the western continent lie? How long since America was discovered? What name is given to the northern part of the continent? What name is given to the southern part? What isthmus unites these two portions? What islands between North and South America? Which approaches nearest to the eastern continent, North or South America? N-A. On which part of the western continent do you live? In what zones does the western continent lie? In what direction from South America is North America?

North America.

In extent of territory, North America ranks among the largest grand divisions of the globe. It is about 4,500 miles in length, and on an average, 2,500 miles in breadth. It is distinguished for the number and size of its rivers and lakes, and its extended ranges of mountains. Lake Superior is the largest collection of fresh water in the world, and the Missouri and Mississippi far surpass the rivers of the eastern continent.

There are two great ranges of mountains in North America. The western extends from the isthmus of Darien to the Arctic ocean, and contains several peaks whose tops are covered with perpetual snow. The northern part of this range is called *The Rocky Mountains;* the southern part, *The Cordilleras.* The eastern range is called the Alleghany, and extends through the United States, running nearly parallel with the coast.

North America has almost every variety of climate. The part north of 50° is a barren and frozen region, and is covered with snow and ice a great part of the year. Between 50° and 35°, the country is subject to great extremes of heat and cold, and produces in most parts, grass, grain and various kinds of fruit. South of 35° the climate is warm, and produces rice, cotton, tobacco, indigo, sugar-cane, and tropical fruits, as oranges, lemons, pine apples and figs.

The mineral treasures of North America, so far as discovered, consist of gold, silver, iron, copper, lead, coal, &c. The gold and silver mines of Mexico are supposed to be the richest in the world. Gold has recently been discovered in Virginia, North Carolina, Georgia and Alabama, and large quantities are now annually obtained. Iron is abundant in various parts, especially in the United States. There are rich mines of copper near Lake Superior, also on the banks of the Copper-mine river, and others in various parts of the United States. Coal is abundant. The most remarkable mines of it are found in Pennsylvania. Tin is produced in Mexico; and the lead mines of Missouri, Illinois and Iowa are among the most productive on the globe. Salt is plenty in all parts; the most noted springs are found in the state of New York. Sulphur and all sorts of marble are found in different places.

The vegetable kingdom embraces a great variety of productions, many of which are peculiar to N. America. The forests contain pines of an extraordinary height, oaks of various species, walnut and chestnut trees, ash, beech, birch, yew, cypress willow, elm, poplar, and other trees common to the other continent. Among those which are peculiar to America, are the magnolia, the tulip tree, the acacia and many other. In the forests of the warmer regions are the palms, mahogany, cocoa and cotton trees. Besides these native productions, the orange and lemon trees, the coffee shrub, the sugar cane and the indigo plant, have been introduced and cultivated with success. Indian corn, tobacco and the potato were found here by the Europeans, and by them introduced into the eastern continent.

The animal kingdom embraces a great variety of species. In the most northern regions are found the musk ox, the reindeer and white bear. The vast prairies are peopled with immense herds of bisons, elks, moose, deer, antelopes, &c. Carniverous animals, such as the black bear, grisly bear, wolf, cougar or panther, lynx, &c. are numerous in the unfrequented parts of the country. In some parts of N. America have been found imbedded in the earth, the bones of remarkable animals that are not now known to exist. A few years since nearly an entire skeleton of one of these animals was dug up near Newburgh, in the state of New York, and is now preserved in the museum in Philadelphia. It must have been several times larger than the elephant, as a tall man can walk upright under its belly. Bones of the same species of animals are found in various parts of the western states, and it is highly probable that at a very remote

period, they existed here in great numbers. They are are called Mammoth or Mastodon.

All the domestic animals of Europe, the horse, ox, sheep, goat, hog, dog and cat, were introduced into America by the first settlers, and some of them have increased to such a degree that they form large herds in a wild state.

Among the birds of North America, the most noted is the wild turkey. It is peculiar to this country, and was first introduced into Europe in 1525, and is the original stock whence have sprung the tame turkeys. The mocking bird of the southern states is celebrated for its wonderful power of song. It surpasses all other tribes of melodious birds in the sweetness of its notes. The humming bird is distinguished for its beauty and diminutive size. There are numerous other birds peculiar to this continent; and others, as the eagle, owl, crow, hawk, swan, goose, duck, &c. which in many respects differ from those of the same name in the eastern continent. The coasts and inland waters swarm with water fowl.

Alligators are found in the southern rivers, and the waters are filled with sturgeons, pikes, trout, eels and salmon. The banks of Newfoundland and the neighboring coast abound in cod. Three thousand vessels, and one hundred thousand men from the United States, Great Britain and France, are annually engaged in the cod fisheries.

Respecting the northern part of North America, nothing is known with any degree of certainty. During a few years past, several attempts have been made to sail round this part into the Pacific, or in other words, to find a north-west passage; but all have been unsuccessful. Capt. Parry entered Barrow's Strait, and sailed to the 106° W. longitude, where he discovered a large island, which he named Melville, but was unable to proceed farther on account of ice. Mackenzie, Hearne, Franklin and others, attempted to explore this region by land, but were not able to penetrate these fearful abodes of perpetual ice and snow.

Questions.—What bodies of water border on North America? Which ocean borders most on North America? What is the difference between the length and the average breadth of North America? What prevents North America from being a continent by itself? Is North America longer from north to south, or from east to west?

MAP OF NORTH AMERICA.

How is North America bounded?

British America?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
U. S. and Territory?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Mexico?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Guatimala?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Russian Possessions?	——?	——?	——?

RIVERS.

Where does Mackenzie's River rise, in what direction does it run, and where does it empty? Coppermine? Liards? Peace? Athabasca? Slave? Saskatchawan? Churchill? Nelson? Severn? Albany? Rupert? Ottawa? St. Lawrence? Columbia? Clark's? Lewis? Colorado? Gila? Grand del Norte? St. Juan? Mississippi? Missouri? Yellowstone? Arkansas? Red River?

CAPES.

What is a Cape? Where is Cape Farewell?
Where is Cape Charles?
Where is Cape Sable?
Where is Cape Lisburne?
Where is Cape Prince of Wales?
Where is Cape St. Lucas?
Where is Cape San Antonio?

ISLANDS.

What is an Island? Where is Melville Island? Sabine? Disco? Iceland? Southampton? Mansfield? Anticosti? Cape Breton? Prince Edward? Newfoundland? Bermudas? Bahamas? Greater Antilles, viz. Cuba, Hayti, Jamaica, Porto Rico? Carribbean Islands, viz. Santa Cruz, Antigua, Gaudaloupe. Dominica, Martinique, St. Lucia, Barbadoes, Grenada, Tobago, Trinidad? Little Antilles, viz. Curacoa, Buen Ayre, Orua, Margurita? Prince of Wales? Queen Charlotte's? Vancouver's or Nootka Island?

STRAITS.

What is a Strait? Where is Davis' Strait?
Where is Hudson's Strait?
Where is the Strait of Belle Isle?
Where is Barrow's Strait?
Where is Behring's Strait?

BAYS.

What is a Bay? Where is Baffin's Bay?
Where is Hudson's Bay?
Where is James' Bay?
Where is the Bay of Fundy?
Where is the Bay of Honduras?
Where is the Bay of Campeachy?

INLETS.

Where is Regent Inlet?
Where is Northumberland Inlet?
Where is Chesterfield Inlet?
Where is Cook's Inlet?

GULFS.

What is a Gulf? Where is the Gulf of St. Lawrence?
Where is the Gulf of Mexico?
Where is the Gulf of California?

SOUNDS.

What is a Sound? Where is Prince William's Sound?
Where is Queen Charlotte's Sound? Nootka Sound?
Where is Smith's Sound? Where is Whale Sound?

PENINSULAS.

What is a Peninsula? Where is the Peninsula of Greenland?
Where is the Peninsula of Nova Scotia?
Where is the Peninsula of Florida?
Where is the Peninsula of Yucatan?
Where is the Peninsula of California?
Where is the Peninsula of Alaska?

MOUNTAINS.

What is a Mountain? Where are the Alleghany Mountains?
Where are the Cordilleras Mountains?
Where are the Rocky Mountains?
Where is Mount Fairweather? Where is Mount St. Elias?
Where is the volcano of Popocatapetl?

LAKES.

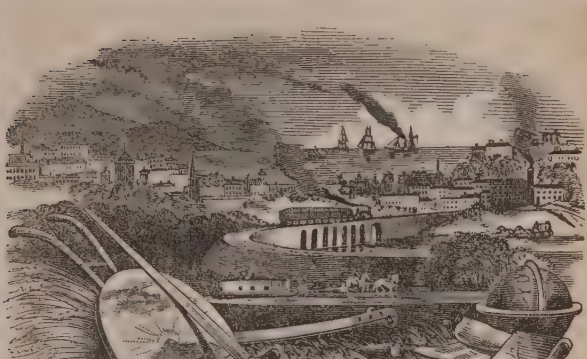
What is a Lake? Where is Lake Superior?
Where is the Lake of the Woods?
Where is Lake Winnipeg?
Where is Athabasca Lake?
Where is Great Slave Lake? Where is Great Bear Lake?
Where is Lake *Chapala?
Where is Lake †Nicaragua?

DIVISIONS.

What are the Divisions of North America?
Which is the most northern Division?
Which is the middle Division?
Which is the south-western Division?
Which is the southern Division?
Which is the most north-western Division?

What is the length of the Gulf of Mexico?
What is the length of the Gulf of California?
What is the length of the Carribbean Sea?
What is the length of Hudson's Bay?

* Sh-pa'-la. † Nic-ar-aw'-gua.



UNITED STATES.

The United States are the most interesting and important division of the western continent. They are distinguished for the excellence of their government,—the rapid increase of the population,—and for the intelligence, industry, and enterprise of the inhabitants.

In extent of territory, the United States rank among the first political divisions of the globe. They are about 3000 miles in length from east to west, and 1700 miles in breadth, from north to south; embracing almost every variety of surface, soil, and climate.

The commerce* of the United States ranks next to Great Britain. It extends to all nations, and to every clime. The chief articles of export,† are cotton, tobacco, wheat, flour, rice, fish, ashes, lumber,

* Com′ merce, the exchanging of the goods or productions of one country for those of another; trade, traffic.

† Ex′-port, carried out of our country.

and naval stores. The chief articles of import,* are woollens, cottons, silks, teas, coffee, sugar, spirits, spices and wines.

By examining the map, you will perceive that the United States' territory is divided by the Alleghany and Rocky Mountains into three great natural sections or divisions, viz. 1. THE ATLANTIC SLOPE, which extends from the Allegany mountains to the Atlantic; 2. The MISSISSIPPI VALLEY, which lies between the Alleghany and Rocky mountains, and is watered by the Mississippi and its numerous branches; 3. The PACIFIC SLOPE, which comprises the region between the Rocky mountains and the Pacific ocean. Hence it will be seen, that the general features of the country is that of an immense plain traversed by two great chains of mountains.

There is no country of equal extent so well watered as the United States, by noble rivers and lakes, or so highly favored by nature with channels for internal commerce or mutual intercourse. With the Atlantic ocean on the east, the Pacific on the west, the gulf of Mexico on the south, and the lakes on the north, the United States contain some of the finest harbors in the world, and possess every advantage for commercial pursuits.

In a country so extensive, and having so many varieties of exposure as the United States, the climate must of course be various. In a general view, the country may be regarded as comprised within three distinct climates. 1. That of the *cold climate*, embracing the Eastern States, the northern part of New York, Michigan and the western territories. 2. That of the *temperate climate*, comprising the Middle States, with Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Missouri, Kentucky and Tennessee. 3. The *hot climate*, comprising the Southern States and Arkansas.

Every quality of soil may be found in the United States from utter barrenness to the highest degree of fertility. Viewed as a whole, however, probably there is no region of equal extent better adapted than this, to support a vigorous, healthy and numerous population. The richest soils are in the western and southern states.

The vegetable productions of the United States are exceedingly various. There are some, however, common to every section of the country. Maize, or Indian corn, and wheat, are cultivated from Maine to Louisiana, but succeed best in the Western and Middle States.

The chief agricultural occupations in the Eastern States are grazing and the dairy. The Middle States are principally devoted to the cultivation of wheat and maize; the Southern to that of cotton, tobacco, sugar and rice; and the Western to maize, wheat and hemp. The vine has been successfully cultivated in various parts of the Union, and the mulberry-tree grows spontaneously, and has been extensively planted of late years.

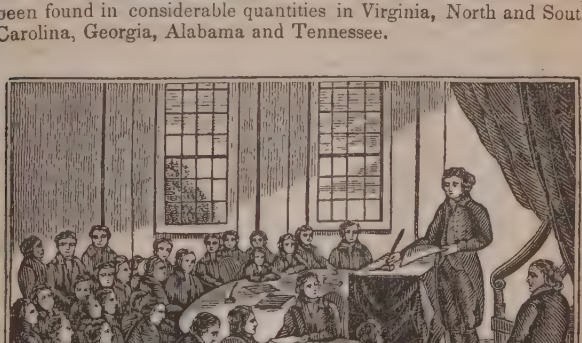
---

*Im'-port, brought into our country.

Manufactures are numerous and extensive, and are rapidly increasing. They comprise almost every article used, and annually amount to about 350 million dollars.

The fisheries form an important branch of industry, and are carried on principally by the people of the Eastern States. The whale fishery is prosecuted in the northern and southern oceans,—and the cod, herring and mackerel fishery on the banks of Newfoundland and along the coast.

Minerals abound in the United States in great variety and profusion. Iron, coal and lime, exist in great abundance. Lead is found in inexhaustible quantities, from Arkansas river to Wisconsin. Copper exists in various parts. Salt springs abound in many parts of the Union and large quantities of salt are manufactured in New York, Pennsylvania, Virginia, Ohio and Illinois. Gold has recently been found in considerable quantities in Virginia, North and South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama and Tennessee.



CONVENTION AT PHILADELPHIA.

History.—The United States were settled principally by emigrants from Great Britain. They were all included within the English patent, and claimed by the English crown. They were styled "British colonies in North America," and remained in subjection to the English government till 1775.

From the first settlement of this country, the English government treated the inhabitants of these colonies as a distinct and subordi-

nate class of subjects, and considered their interests entirely subservient to the aggrandizement and prosperity of the mother country; and after the conquest of Canada, they began to exercise an undue authority over them, and to interfere in their civil concerns in a manner which excited the most serious alarm.

The English government claimed the right of taxing the colonies, although they allowed them no participation in their legislative councils. The colonies denied this right, and contended that "taxation and representation were inseparable; and that they could not be safe if their property could be taken from them without their consent."

After various oppressive acts on the part of the English government, the colonists resolved to support their rights by force of arms. The first battle was fought at Lexington, on the 19th of April, 1775. In 1776, they declared themselves free and independent, under the name of "THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA." In 1783, January 20th, peace was settled between the two nations, when Great Britain acknowledged the United States to be *free*, *sovereign* and *independent*.

In May, 1787, a Convention of delegates from the several states met at Philadelphia, for the purpose of forming a Constitution adequate to the exigencies of government, and the preservation of the Union. George Washington was unanimously elected President of this body of illustrious statesmen; and after four months deliberation, they agreed upon a Constitution, which was adopted by the several states in 1789, and has been the source of unexampled prosperity to the nation.

Questions.—From what country did the first settlers of the United States principally come? What were the United States called previous to 1775? Why? Can you tell me to whom Canada belonged before the English conquered it? Where is Canada? What right did the English government claim? Did the colonies acknowledge this right? What did the colonies at last do? When and where was the first battle fought? Can you mention any other battles that were fought during the revolutionary war? Can you mention the names of any American generals? How long did the war continue? When was our present constitution adopted? How long since?

HISTORICAL TABLE.

The following Table exhibits the *settlement* of the different States and Territories, the *place* first settled, and by what nation; likewise the square miles of each State, taken from the best geographical tables. The first thirteen States are those which united in declaring their *independence*, and are called the THIRTEEN ORIGINAL STATES; the remainder are placed in the order in which they were admitted into the Union.

States.	*settl.*	*Nation.*	*Place.*	*Sq. miles.*	*Pop. to sq. m.*
1. Virginia	1607	English	Jamestown	70,000	18
2. New York	1614	Dutch	Albany,	46,000	53
3. Massachusetts	1620	English	Plymouth	7,500	99
4. N. Hampshire	1623	English	Dover	9,280	31
5. New Jersey	1624	Danes	Bergen	8,320	45
6. Delaware	1627	Swedes & Finns	C. Henlopen	2,120	37
7. Connecticut	1633	English	Windsor	4,676	66
8. Maryland	1634	English	St. Mary's	13,959	33
9. Rhode Island	1636	R. Williams	Providence	1,360	80
10. N. Carolina	1650	English	Albemarle	48,000	12
11. S. Carolina,	1670	English	Port Royal	25,000	25
12. Pennsylvania	1682	Wm. Penn	Philadelphia	46,000	38
13. Georgia	1733	English	Savannah	58,000	12
Vermont	1724	English	Fort Dummer	10,200	28
Kentucky	1769	Col. D. Boon	Boonsboro	40,500	18
Tennessee	1765	English	Nashville	45,600	18
Ohio	1788	English	Marietta	40,000	38
Louisiana	1699	French	Ibberville	45,300	8
Indiana	1730	French	Vincennes	36,000	19
Mississippi	1716	French	Natchez	45,760	8
Illinois	1749	French	Kaskaskia	50,000	9
Alabama	1783	Spanish	Mobile	46,000	13
Maine	1630	English	York	30,000	17
Missouri	1663	French	St. Genevieve	64,000	5
Michigan	1670	French	Detroit	66,000	4
Arkansas	1685	French	Arkansas	54,500	2
Florida	1565	Spanish	St. Augustine	57,000	1

Questions.— Which is the largest state? How many square miles has Virginia? Which are the three next largest? How many square miles has Missouri? Georgia? How many square miles has Massachusetts? How many times larger is Maine than Massachusetts? Divide the number of square miles in Maine by those in Massachusetts—thus, 7500)30,000(4. Hence we see that Maine is four times larger than Massachusetts. About how many times larger is Virginia than Connecticut? A. Nearly fourteen times larger. Which is the smallest state? Which is the next smallest? Which is the most thickly inhabited state, or which has the greatest population to a square mile? See the right hand column above. How many inhabitants has Massachusetts to a square mile? Virginia? New York?

GOVERNMENT.—The several states are all united under one general government called a Federal Republic, that is, a republic in which several separate republics are united in one.

Each state is a republic by itself; for it has a government of its own, and is at liberty to make laws relative to its own peculiar interests; but the more general concerns of the nation, as the regulation of commerce, the declaration of war, the coining of money, &c. are entrusted to a general government.

The government of the United States consists of three branches, viz.: The *Legislative;* the *Executive*, and the *Judicial power*.

1. The *Legislative power* is vested in a Congress which consists of two branches—the Senate and the House of Representatives. The Senate consists of two members from each state, chosen by the legislature thereof, for the term of six years. The members of the House of Representatives are chosen for two years, by the people of each state, according to the population. Since June, 1842, each state is entitled to one representative for every 70,680 inhabitants; consequently if it has six times 70,680 inhabitants, it sends six representatives. Congress meets at Washington every winter on the first Monday in December to attend to the general interests of the nation.

2. The *Executive power* is vested in a President and Vice President, assisted by four Secretaries, called Heads of Departments, appointed by the President, viz.: The Secretary of State, the Secretary of War, the Secretary of the Navy and the Secretary of the Treasury. These are termed the cabinet. The President and Vice President are chosen for four years, by delegates elected by the people, called *electors*. Each state chooses as many electors as it has members in congress. For example, Connecticut is entitled to *six electors*, because the State has six members in congress, viz.—four representatives and two senators. The following is a list of the Presidents since the adoption of the present Constitution in 1789.

1. George Washington,	of Va.	from	1789	to	1797,	8 years.
2. John Adams,	" Mass.	"	1797	"	1801,	4 "
3. Thomas Jefferson,	" Va.	"	1801	"	1809,	8 "
4. James Madison,	" Va.	"	1809	"	1817,	8 "
5. James Monroe,	" Va.	"	1817	"	1825,	8 "
6. John Quincy Adams,	" Mass.	"	1825	"	1829,	4 "
7. Andrew Jackson,	" Tenn.	"	1829	"	1837,	8 "
8. Martin Van Buren,	" N. Y.	"	1837	"	1841,	4 "
9. Wm. Henry Harrison,*	" Ohio.	"	1841		one month.	
10. John Tyler,	" Va.	"	1841	"	1845,	4 years.
11. James K. Polk,	" Tenn.	"	1845	"	1849,	

As the executive power administers the government, it is termed the Administration. Hence we speak of Washington's administration, Jefferson's administration, &c. &c.

3. The *Judicial power* is vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as Congress may from time to time establish.

---

* Wm. H. Harrison held the office of President one month. He died the 4th of April, and John Tyler, the Vice President became President.

The present judicial establishment of the United States consists of a Supreme Court, thirty-one District Courts, and seven Circuit Courts. The Supreme Court is composed of one Chief Justice and eight Associate Justices, who hold a court in the city of Washington annually, commencing on the second Monday of January; besides which, each of these justices attends in a certain circuit comprising two or more districts appropriated to each, and together with the judge of the district, composes a Circuit Court, which is held in each district of the circuit. The principal business of these courts is to expound the laws of the United States, and to settle all questions which arise under the Constitution and treaties of the United States. The justices are appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, and hold their offices during good behavior.

Questions.—What is meant by *Government?* A. The power that makes and executes the laws. What is the government of the United States called? What is the meaning of *Federal?* A. United, joined by mutual agreement. What power has each state? What powers are entrusted to the general government? Of how many branches does the government of the United States consist? In what is the Legislative power vested? Of what does Congress consist? In what manner, and for what length of time are the Senators chosen? How many Senators has this state in Congress? Can you tell me their names? There are now twenty-six states, and can you tell me of how many members the Senate consists? Who is the president or presiding officer of the Senate? A. The Vice President. For what length of time and by whom are the Representatives chosen? How many inhabitants are entitled to one representative? If this state contained 282,720 inhabitants, how many representatives could it send to Congress? How many representatives has this state in Congress? Can you tell me their names? When and where does Congress meet? In what is the Executive power vested? By whom is the President assisted? Who is the President at this time? Vice President? How is the President and Vice President chosen, and for what length of time? To how many presidential electors is this state entitled? Why? If this state had eight Representatives in Congress, how many Electors would it have a right to choose? Why ten? In what is the Judicial power of the United States vested? Of how many Courts does it consist at present? Of how many Judges or Justices? Who is Chief Justice at this time? What is the principal business of these courts? By whom are the Judges appointed? What is the power of the Supreme Court called? A. The Federal Judiciary. Will you recapitulate the powers of each branch of our national government? A. Congress makes the laws, the President executes them, and the Judiciary explains and applies them in doubtful cases. Of how many branches does the government of this state consist? A. Of three. It has a legislature to make the laws; an Executive, at the head of

which is a Governor to see that the laws are enforced, and a Judiciary to decide in disputed cases between its citizens. Which consists of the most branches then, the government of this state, or of the U. States?

INHABITANTS.—The population of the United States consists of three general classes, viz.—Whites, Negroes and Indians.

1. The Whites are descendants of Europeans, and are generally of English extraction, but embrace many French, Germans, Dutch, Scotch, Irish, Spanish, &c. The Dutch are most numerous in New York; the Germans in Pennsylvania, and the French in Louisiana.

2. The Negroes are for the most part descendants of African slaves, and are found principally in the Southern States.

3. The Indians are the descendants of those who occupied the country at the time of its discovery by Europeans. Most of these prefer their own modes of savage life to those of the whites, and as the latter have extended their settlements, they have removed farther and farther back into the wilderness: and at the present time but a small number of them are found east of the Mississippi river.

A census or enumeration of the inhabitants of the United States, is taken every ten years. The following table exhibits the population of the United States according to six enumerations.

STATES.	1790.	1800.	1810.	1820.	1830.	1840.
Maine,	96,540	151,719	228,705	298,335	399,955	501,793
New Hampshire,	141,899	183,762	214,360	244,161	269,328	284,574
Vermont,	85,416	154,465	217,713	235,764	280,652	291,948
Massachusetts,	378,717	423,245	472,040	523,287	610,408	737,699
Rhode Island,	69,110	69,122	77,031	83,059	97,199	108,830
Connecticut,	238,141	251,002	262,042	275,202	297,665	309,978
New York,	340,120	586,756	959,949	1,372,812	1,918,608	2,428,921
New Jersey,	184,139	211,949	249,555	277,575	320,823	373,306
Pennsylvania,	434,373	602,365	810,091	1,049,458	1,348,233	1,724,033
Delaware,	59,098	64,273	72,674	72,749	76,748	78,085
Maryland,	319,728	341,548	380,546	407,350	447,040	469,232
Virginia,	748,308	880,200	974,622	1,065,379	1,211,405	1,239,797
North Carolina,	393,751	478,103	555,500	638,829	737,987	753,419
South Carolina,	249,073	345,591	415,115	502,741	581,185	594,398
Georgia,	82,548	162,101	252,433	340,987	516,823	691,392
Alabama,	. .	. .	20,845	127,901	309,527	590,756
Mississippi,	. .	8,850	40,352	75,448	136,621	375,651
Louisiana,	. .	. .	76,556	153,407	215,739	352,411
Arkansas,	. .	. .	. .	14,273	30,388	97,574
Tennessee,	35,791	105,602	261,727	422,813	681,904	829,210
Kentucky,	73,077	220,955	406,511	564,317	687,917	779,828
Ohio,	. .	45,365	230,760	581,434	937,903	1,519,467
Michigan,	. .	. .	4,762	8,896	31,639	212,267
Indiana,	. .	4,875	24,520	147,178	343,031	685,866
Illinois,	. .	. .	12,282	55,211	157,455	476,183
Missouri,	. .	. .	20,845	66,586	140,445	383,702
District of Columbia,	. .	14,093	24,023	33,039	39,834	43,712
Florida,	. .	. .	. .	. .	34,730	54,477
Wisconsin,	. .	. .	. .	. .	. .	30,945
Iowa,	. .	. .	. .	. .	. .	43,112
Total,	3,929,827	5 305,925	7,239,814	9,638,131	12,866,920	17,062,566

Questions.—Which was the most populous state in 1790? In 1800? In 1810? In 1820? In 1830? In 1840? How often is the census or an enumeration of the people of the United States taken? When will the next census be taken? What was the total population of the United States in 1790? In 1800? In 1810? In 1820? In 1830? In 1840?

RELIGION.—In almost every country, there is some religion established by law, and the people are not only required to pay for the support of it, but to believe it, and if they refuse, they suffer great inconveniences and persecutions. But in the United States there is no established form of religion; every individual is left to the free enjoyment of his own religion, and is at liberty to worship God agreeably to the dictates of his own conscience. The inhabitants are divided into a great variety of sects, or denominations, as will be seen by the following table.

SUMMARY OF THE PRINCIPAL RELIGIOUS DENOMINATIONS.

DENOMINATIONS.	Churches, or congregations.	Ministers.	Members, or Communicants.	Population.
Baptists,	7,898	4,741	573,702	
" Freewill,	981	647	47,217	5,000,000
" Seventh Day,	48	54	5,000	
" Six Principle,	16	10	2,117	
Catholics,	512	562		1,300,000
Christians,	1,000	800	150,000	300,000
Congregationalists,	1,300	1,130	160,000	1,400,000
Dutch Reformed,	197	192	22,515	450,000
Episcopalians,	950	1,099	55,427	600,000
Friends,	500			100,000
German Reformed,	600	180	30,000	
Jews,				15,000
Lutherans,	750	267	62,266	540,000
Menonites,	200		30,000	
Methodists,		10,971	906,363	3,500,000
Moravians, or United Brethren,	24	33	5,745	12,000
Mormonites,			12,000	12,000
New Jerusalem Church,	27	33		5,000
Presbyterians,	2,807	2,225	274,084	
" Cumberland,	500	456	50,000	
" Associate,	183	87	16,000	2,175,000
" Reformed,	40	20	3,000	
" Associate Reformed,	214	116	12,000	
Shakers,	15	45	6,000	6,000
Tunkers,	40	40	3,000	30,000
Unitarians,	300	200		200,000
Universalists,	653	317		600,000

Questions.—How many sects in this place? In the United States How many churches have the Congregationalists in the U. S. The Baptists? Methodists? Presbyterians?

Table, exhibiting the Governor's term of office and salary, the times of holding the Election of State Officers, and the times of the meeting of the Legislatures of the several States.

States.	Gov t'rm Yrs.	Salary.	Times of holding Elections.	Times of the Meeting of the Legislatures.
Maine,	1	$1,500	2d Monday in Sept.	1st Wednesday in Jan.
N. Hampshire,	1	1,200	2d Tuesday in March,	1st Wednesday in June.
Vermont,	1	750	1st Tuesday in Sept.	2d Thursday in Oct.
Massachusetts,	1	2,500	2d Monday in Nov.	1st Wednesday in Jan.
Rhode Island,	1	400	1st Wednes. in April,	1st Tuesday in May, Last Monday in Oct.
Connecticut,	1	1,100	1st Monday in April,	1st Wednesday in May.
New York,	2	4,000	1st Monday in Nov.	1st Tuesday in January.
New Jersey,	1	2,000	2d Tuesday in Oct.	4th Tuesday in Oct.
Pennsylvania,	3	4,000	2d Tuesday in Oct.	1st Tuesday in Jan.
Delaware,	3	1,333	2d Tuesday in Nov.	1st Tues. Jan. *biennially.*
Maryland,	3	4,200	1st Wednesday in Oct.	Last Monday in Dec.
Virginia,	3	3,333	4th Thursday in April,	1st Monday in Dec.
N. Carolina,	2	2,000	Commonly in August,	2d Monday in Nov. *bienn.*
S. Carolina,	2	3,500	2d Monday in Oct.	4th Monday in Nov.
Georgia,	2	3,500	1st Monday in Oct.	1st Monday in Nov.
Alabama,	2	3,500	1st Monday in Aug.	1st Monday in Nov.
Mississippi,	2	3,000	1st Mon. & Tues. Nov	1s Monday in Jan. *bienn.*
Louisiana,	4	6,000	1st Monday in July,	1st Monday in Jan.
Arkansas,	4	2,000	1st Monday in Oct.	2d Monday in Oct. *bienn.*
Tennessee,	2	2,000	1st Thursday in Aug.	1st Monday in Oct. *bienn.*
Kentucky,	4	2,500	1st Monday in August,	1st Monday in Dec.
Ohio,	2	1,500	2d Tuesday in Oct.	1st Monday in Dec.
Indiana,	3	1,500	1st Monday in August,	1st Monday in Dec.
Illinois,	4	1,000	1st Monday in August,	1st Monday in Dec. *bienn.*
Missouri,	4	1,500	1st Monday in August,	1st Monday in Nov. *bienn.*
Michigan,	2	1,500	1st Monday in Oct.	1st Monday in Nov.

Internal Improvements.—During a few years past the people of the United States have made great and spirited exertions to improve their inland water communication, by the construction of canals. Several of great extent have already been completed, and numerous others have been projected, and are now in a state of forwardness, designed to connect the remotest parts of the country with each other. A great number of rail roads have been constructed in various parts of the Union, and a multitude of others are now in progress of construction; and the spirit with which these improvements have been commenced, is constantly increasing. The canals in the United States which are now finished, comprise more than 2,000 miles in length; and the rail roads already completed about 1,500 miles, and those of the latter now under contract or in progress, have been estimated at more than 3,000 miles. When the various works of this description which are now in progress, or in prospect, shall be completed, the principal places in the different parts of the country will be brought comparatively near to each other.

The following is a list of the principal canals finished or in progress in the United States.

NAMES.	STATES.	PLACES CONNECTED.	Length
Cumberland and Oxford	Maine	Portland and Sebago Pond	20
Middlesex	Mass.	Boston and Lowell	27
Blackstone	Mass. & R. I.	Providence and Worcester	45
Farmington	Conn. & Mas.	New Haven and Northampton	78
Delaware and Hudson	N. Y. & Pa.	Honesdale and Hudson river	388
Erie	New York	Albany and Buffalo	63
Champlain	New York	Lake Champlain and Hudson r.	63
Black River	New York	Rome and Black river	176
Rochester and Olean	New York	Rochester and Olean	07
Oswego	New York	Syracuse and Oswego	38
Chenango	New York	Binghamton and Utica	97
Seneca	New York	Seneca Lake and Erie Canal	20
Cayuga	New York	Geneva and Montezuma	20
Chemung	New York	Seneca Lake and Elmyra	23
Ithaca and Oswego	New York	Ithaca and Oswego	127
Morris	N. J. & Pa.	Jersey City and Easton, Pa.	61
Delaware and Raritan	New Jersey	N. Brunswick and Bordentown	42
Delaware	Pennsylvania	Bristol and Easton	60
Pittsburgh and Erie	Pennsylvania	Franklin and Erie	90
Lehigh	Pennsylvania	Easton and White Haven	160
Schuylkill	Pennsylvania	Philadelphia and Port Carbon	08
Little Schuylkill	Pennsylvania	Schuylkill river and Coal Mines	24
Union	Pennsylvania	Reading and Middletown	378
Pennsylvania r. r. & c.	Pennsylvania	Philadelphia and Pittsburg	95
Northumberland	Pennsylvania	Penn Canal to Northumberland	139
West Branch	Pennsylvania	North'mld and Sinnemehoning r.	125
North Branch	Pa. and N Y.	Northumberland and Elmyra	50
Beaver	Pennsylvania	Beaver and Mercer city	35
Sandy and Beaver	Pa. and Ohio	Beaver and Bolivar	74
Delaware and Chesapeake	Delaware	Delaware and Chesapeake bays	314
Chesapeake & O. r. r. & c.	Va. and Md.	Georgetown and Pittsburg	42
Dismal Swamp	Va. and N. C.	Chesapeake B. and N. Lebanon	23
Welden	N. Carolina	Welden and Blakeley	12
Santee	S. Carolina	Santee and Coopers rivers	22
Savannah and Ogechee	Georgia	Savannah and Ogeechee rivers	16
Muscle Shoals	Alabama	Roudd Muscle Shoals	37
La Fourche	Louisiana	New Orleans and Grand Lake	75
Orleans	Louisiana	N. Orleans and L. Pontchartrain	6½
Miami	Ohio	Cincinnati and Maumee	265
Ohio State	Ohio	Portsmouth and Cleveland	309
Wabash and Erie	Ind. and Ohio	Lafayette and Toledo	214
Illinois	Illinois	Peru and Chicago	100

The following is a list of the principal Railroads finished or in progress in the United States.

NAMES.	STATES.	PLACES CONNECTED.	l'th
Bangor and Old Town,	Maine.	Bangor and Old Town.	16
Eastern,	Mass. & Maine.	Boston and Portland.	0
Boston and Lowell,	Massachusetts.	Boston and Lowell.	25
Boston and Worcester,	Massachusetts.	Boston and Worcester.	43
Western,	Mass. & N. Y.	Worcester and Albany.	147
Boston and Providence,	Mass. & R. I.	Boston and Providence.	42
Providence and Stonington,	R. I. & Conn.	Providence and Stonington.	47
Norwich and Worcester,	Conn. & Mass.	Norwich and Worcester.	58
Hartford and New Haven,	Connecticut.	Hartford and New Haven.	36
Hartford and Springfield,	Conn. & Mass.	Hartford and Springfield.	26
Housatonic,	Connecticut.	Bridgeport and New Milford.	35
Mohawk and Hudson,	New York.	Albany and Schenectady.	16
Utica and Schenectady,	New York.	Utica and Schenectady.	84
Utica and Syracuse,	New York.	Utica and Syracuse.	50
Auburn and Syracuse,	New York.	Auburn and Syracuse.	25
Auburn and Rochester,	New York.	Auburn and Rochester.	60
Lockport and Niagara Falls.	New York.	Lockport and Niagara Falls.	20
Buffalo and Niagara Falls.	New York.	Buffalo and Niagara Falls.	23
Tonawanda,	New York	Rochester and Attica.	47
New York and Erie,	New York.	Hudson R. and Lake Erie.	340
Ithaca and Owego,	New York.	Ithaca and Owego.	29
Troy and Ballston,	New York.	Troy and Ballston.	25
Schenectady and Saratoga,	New York.	Schenectady and Saratoga.	22
Jersey City and Patterson,	New Jersey.	Jersey City and Patterson.	15
Jersey City and Trenton,	New Jersey.	Jersey City and Trenton.	58
Camden and Amboy,	New Jersey.	Camden and Amboy.	61
Philadelphia and Trenton,	Pa. and N. J.	Philadelphia and Trenton.	26
Philadelphia and Columbia,	Pennsylvania.	Philadelphia and Columbia.	81
Philadelphia and Baltimore,	Pa. Del. & Md.	Philadelphia and Baltimore.	92
Philadelphia and Norristown,	Pennsylvania.	Philadelphia and Norristown	17
Philadelphia and Reading,	Pennsylvania.	Philadelphia and Reading.	56
Central,	Pennsylvania.	Danville and Pottsville.	44
Lancaster and Harrisburgh,	Pennsylvania.	Lancaster and Harrisburg.	37
West Chester,	Pennsylvania.	West Chester and Columbia.	9
Baltimore & Susquehannah,	Md. and Pa.	Baltimore and Wrightsville.	70
Williamsport and Elmira,	Pennsylvania.	Williamsport and Elmira.	74
Reading and Port Clinton,	Pennsylvania.	Reading and Port Clinton.	20
Little Schuylkill,	Pennsylvania.	Port Clinton and Tamaqua.	20
Cumberland Valley,	Pennsylvania.	Harrisburg & Chambersburg.	49
Wrightsville and Gettysburg,	Pennsylvania.	Wrightsville and Gettysburg.	42
New Castle and Frenchtown,	Delaware.	New Castle and Frenchtown.	16
Baltimore and Ohio,	Maryland.	Complete to Harper's Ferry.	80
Baltimore and Washington,	Md. & Dist.Col.	Baltimore and Washington.	40

NAMES.	STATES.	PLACES CONNECTED.	M'th
Winchester,	Virginia.	Winchester & Harper's Ferry	30
Richmond and Potomac,	Virginia.	Richmond and Potomac R.	75
Richmond and Petersburg,	Virginia.	Richmond and Petersburg.	21
Petersburg and Roanoke,	Va. and N. C.	Petersburg and Blakeley.	60
Portsmouth and Roanoke,	Va. and N. C.	Portsmouth and Weldon.	80
Roanoke and Greensville,	Va. and N. C.	Hickford and Gaston.	18
Raleigh and Gaston.	North Carolina.	Raleigh and Gaston.	86
Wilmington and Raleigh,	North Carolina.	Wilmington and Raleigh.	161
South Carolina,	South Carolina.	Charleston and Hamburg.	135
Central,	Georgia.	Savannah and Macon.	200
Monroe,	Georgia.	Macon and Forsyth.	25
Georgia,	Georgia.	Augusta and Decatur	160
Tuscumbia and Decatur,	Alabama.	Tuscumbia and Decatur.	45
Montgomery, Chattahoochee,	Alabama.	Montgomery and West Point.	85
Vicksburg,	Mississippi.	Vicksburg and Jackson.	54
Jackson and Brandon,	Mississippi.	Jackson and Brandon.	8
Grand Gulf and Port Gibson,	Mississippi.	Grand Gulf and Port Gibson.	8
New Orleans and Nashville,	Lou. and Miss.	New Orleans and Nashville.	500
Clinton and Port Hudson,	Louisiana.	Clinton and Port Hudson.	28
St. Francisville & Woodville,	Louisiana.	St. Francisville & Woodville.	28
Memphis and La Grange,	Tennessee.	Memphis and La Grange.	50
Mad River,	Ohio.	Dayton and Sandusky City.	153
Lexington and Ohio,	Kentucky.	Louisville and Lexington.	90
Central,	Michigan.	Detroit and St. Joseph's.	180
Detroit and Pontiac,	Michigan.	Detroit and Pontiac.	30
Erie and Kalamazoo,	Michigan.	Toledo and Adrian.	33
Madison and Lafayette,	Indiana.	Madison and Lafayette.	150
Lawrenceburg, Indianopolis,	Indiana.	Lawrenceburg, Indianapolis.	90

YALE COLLEGE.

EDUCATION.—The United States are not so much distinguished for *eminence* in literature and science, as for the general diffusion of knowledge. There are numerous seminaries of learning throughout the country, and the means of acquiring a good common education are extended to all classes of society.

COLLEGES IN THE UNITED STATES.

The colleges marked thus, (*) are under the direction of Baptists; thus, (†) Episcopalians; thus, (‡) Methodists; thus, (§) Catholics.

Names.	Where Located.	Inco.	Libra.
Bowdoin college	Brunswick, Me.	1794	20000
*Waterville c	Waterville, Me.	1820	7000
Dartmouth c	Hanover, N. H.	1770	16500
Vermont University	Burlington, Vt.	1791	9200
Middlebury c	Middlebury, Vt.	1800	7054
Norwich u	Norwich, Vt.	1834	
Harvard u	Cambridge, Mass.	1638	53000
William's c	Williamstown, Mass.	1793	7500
Amherst c	Amherst, Mass.	1821	15000
*Brown u	Providence, R. I.	1764	14000
Yale c	New Haven, Ct.	1700	27000
†Trinity c	Hartford, Ct.	1824	6500
‡Wesleyan u	Middletown, Ct.	1831	10300
†Columbia c	New York city,	1754	14000
Union c	Schenectady, N. Y.	1795	13000
Hamilton c	Clinton, N. Y.	1812	9000
*Hamilton Lit. Th.	Hamilton, N. Y.	1819	4600
†Geneva c	Geneva, N. Y.	1823	5400
New York u	New York city,	1831	
New Jersey c	Princeton, N. J.	1746	11000
Rutgers c	New Brunswick, N. J.	1770	12000
Pennsylvania u	Philadelphia, Pa.	1755	5000
‡Dickinson c	Carlisle, Pa.	1783	10600
Jefferson c	Canonsburg, Pa.	1802	4500
Washington c	Washington, Pa.	1806	3300
‡Alleghany c	Meadville, Pa.	1815	8000
Pennsylvania c	Gettysburg, Pa.	1832	2270
Lafayette c	Easton, Pa.	1832	1350
Marshall c	Mercersburg, Pa	1836	
Newark c	Newark, Del.	1833	1200
St. John's c	Annapolis, Md.	1784	4000
§St. Mary's c	Baltimore, Md.	1799	12000
§Mount St. Mary's c	Emmetsburg, Md.	1830	3500
§Georgetown c	Georgetown, D. C.	1789	22000
*Columbian c	Washington city,	1821	4200
†William and Mary's c	Williamsburg, Va.	1693	5000
Hampden Sidney c	Prince Edward Co., Va.	1783	8000
Washington c	Lexington, Va.	1812	2700
Virginia u	Charlottesville, Va.	1819	16000
‡Randolph Macon c	Boydton, Va.	1832	
‡Emory and Henry c	Glade Spring, Va.	1839	1000

Names.	Where Located.	Inco.	Libra.
*Rector c	Harrison Co. Va.	1839	
North Carolina u	Chapel Hill, N. C.	1789	9000
Davidson c	Mecklenburg Co. N. C.	1838	1150
*Wake Forest c	Wake Forest, N. C.	1838	4000
Charleston c	Charleston, S. C.	1795	3000
South Carolina c	Columbia, S. C.	1804	13000
Georgia u	Athens, Ga.	1785	11000
Oglethorpe c	Midway, Ga.	1836	
‡Emory c	Oxford, Ga.	1837	
*Mercer u	Penfield, Ga.		
Alabama u	Tuscaloosa, Ala.	1828	6000
‡La Grange c	La Grange, Ala.	1831	1200
‡Spring Hill c	Spring Hill, Ala.	1830	4000
Jefferson c	Washington, Miss.	1802	1522
Oakland c	Oakland, Miss.	1831	
Louisiana c	Jackson, La.	1825	1850
Jefferson c	Bringiers, La.	1831	5500
§St. Charles c	Grand Coteau, La.		
Baton Rogue c	Baton Rouge, La.	1838	300
Franklin c	Opelousas, La.	1839	
Greenville c	Greenville, Tenn.	1794	3000
Washington c	Washington Co. Tenn.	1794	1000
Nashville u	Nashville, Tenn.	1806	8493
East Tennessee c	Knoxville, Tenn.	1807	3307
Jackson c	Near Columbia, Tenn.	1830	1250
Transylvania u	Lexington, Ky.	1798	12242
§St. Joseph c	Bardstown, Ky.	1819	7000
Centre c	Danville, Ky.	1822	2000
‡Augusta c	Augusta, Ky.	1825	2500
Cumberland c	Princetown, Ky.	1825	1050
*Georgetown c	Georgetown, Ky.	1829	1200
Bacon	Harrodsburg, Ky.	1836	1200
§St. Mary's	Marion Co. Ky.	1837	4000
Ohio u	Athens, Ohio,	1821	2500
Miami u	Oxford, Ohio,	1809	4352
Franklin c	New Athens, Ohio,	1825	1900
Western Reserve c	Hudson, Ohio,	1826	4200
†Kenyon c	Gambier, Ohio,	1826	8720
*Granville c	Granville, Ohio,	1832	3000
Marietta c	Marietta, Ohio,	1832	3500
Orberlin Institute	Oberlin, Ohio,	1834	
Cincinnati c	Cincinnati, Ohio,	1819	
Woodward c	Cincinnati, Ohio,		800
Indiana c	Bloomington, Ind.	1827	1765

Names.	Where Located.	Inco.	Libra.
South Hanover c	South Hanover, Ind.	1829	
Wabash c	Crawfordsville, Ind	1833	2000
‡Ind. Asbury u		1839	
Illinois c	Jacksonville, Ill.	1829	2000
*Shurtleff c	Upper Alton, Ill.	1835	1000
‡McKendree c	Lebanon, Ill.	1834	
McDonough c	Macomb, Ill.	1837	
§St. Louis u	St. Louis, Mo.	1829	7900
§St. Mary's c	Barrens, Mo.	1830	6400
Marion c	New Palmyra, Mo.	1831	2300
Missouri u	Columbia, Mo.	1840	
‡St. Charles c	St. Charles, Mo.	1839	
Fayette c	Fayette, Mo.		
Michigan u	Ann Arbor, Mich.	1837	
Marshall c	Marshall, Mich.		3700
St. Phillip's c	Near Detroit, Mich.	1839	3000

THEOLOGICAL SEMINARIES.

Name.	Place.	Denomination.	Com. per atio	No. ed uated	Vols. in Libra.
Bangor Theol. Sem.	Bangor, Me.	Cong.	1816	139	7,000
Thomaston Theol. Inst.	Thomaston, do.	Baptist,	1837		500
Gilmanton Theol. Sem.	Gilmanton, N. H.	Cong.	1835	21	2,200
Theological Seminary,	Andover, Mass	Cong.	1808	785	17,500
Div. School, Harv. U.	Cambridge, do.	Cong. Unit.	1816	191	1,800
Theological Institution,	Newton, do.	Baptist,	1825	137	4,000
Theol. Dep. Yale Coll.	New Haven, Ct.	Cong.	1822	245	200
Theol. Inst. of Conn.	E. Windsor, do.	Cong.	1834	37	4,000
Theol. In. Epis. Church,	New York, N. Y.	Prot. Epis.	1817	186	7,260
N. Y. Theol Sem.	do. do.	Presbyt.	1836		12,000
Theol. Sem. of Auburn,	Auburn, do.	Presbyt.	1821	344	5,000
Hamilton Lit. & Th In.	Hamilton, do.	Baptist,	1820	124	2,250
Hartwick Seminary,	Hartwick, do.	Lutheran,	1816		1,000
Theol. Sem. As. Ref. Ch	Newburgh, do.	As. R. Ch.	1836		4,000
Th. Sem. Dutch Ref. C.	N. Br'wick, N. J.	Dutch Ref.	1784	179	
Th. Sem. Pr. Ch. U. S.	Princeton, do.	Presbyt.	1812	714	7,000
Sem. Luth. Ch. U. S.	Gettysburg, Pa.	Evang. L.	1826	130	7,000
German Reformed,	York, do.	G. Ref. Ch.	1825		
West. Theol. Sem.	Alleghany T. do.	Presbyt.	1828	175	6,000
Theological School,	Canonsburg, do.	Asso. Ch.		47	1,600
Theological Seminary,	Pittsburg, do.	Asso. Ref.	1828		
Epis. Th. School of Va.	Fairfax co. Va.	Prot. Epis.	1822	126	4,000
Union Theol. Sem.	Pr. Ed. co. do.	Presbyt.	1824	175	4,000
Virginia Baptist Sem.	Richmond, do.	Baptist,	1832		1,600
Southern Theol. Sem.	Columbia, S.C.	Presbyt.	1831	62	3,730
Theological Seminary,	Lexington, do.	Lutheran,	1835	20	1,800
Furman Theol. Sem.	High Hills, do.	Baptist.		30	1,000

Names.	Place.	Denomination.	Commenced operation	No. of students	Vols. in Libra.
Lit. and Theol Sem.	Eaton, Ga.	Baptist,	1834		
South West. Th. Sem.	Maryville, Ten.	Presbyt.	1821	90	6,000
Lane Seminary,	Cincinnati, Ohio.	Presbyt.	1829	43	10,300
Theol. Dep. Ken. Coll.	Gambier, do.	Prot. Epis.	1828		
Theol. Dep. W. Res. C.	Hudson, do.	Presbyt.		6	
Theological School,	Columbus, do.	Lutheran,			
Granville Theol. Dep.	Granville, do.	Baptist,	1833		500
Oberlin Theol. Dep.	Oberlin, do.	Presbyt.	1834		
Indiana Theol. Sem.	S. Hanover, In.	Presbyt.			
Alton Theol. Sem.	Upper Alton, Ill.	Baptist,	1835		
Carlinville Theol. Sem.	Carlinville, do.	Presbyt.	1838		700
Theol. Dep. Marion Col.	N. Palmyra, Mo.	Presbyt.			

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES.

How are the United States bounded ?* Capital ?

Eastern, or New England States.

1. Maine ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
2. N. Hampshire ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
3. Vermont ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
4. Massachusetts ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
5. Rhode Island ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
6. Connecticut ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?

Middle States.

1. New York ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
2. New Jersey ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
3. Pennsylvania ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
4. Delaware ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?

* In giving the boundary of a country, the learner should first mention the different places that border upon it on the *north*,—then in the same manner on the *east*,—then on the *south*,—and then on the *west*. As for example—The United States are bounded North by British America; East by British America and the Atlantic ocean; South by the Atlantic ocean, Gulf of Mexico, and Mexico; and West by the Gulf of Mexico, Mexico and the Pacific ocean. Maine is bounded North by Canada; East by New Brunswick and the Atlantic; South by the Atlantic; and West by New Hampshire and Canada. New Hampshire is bounded North by Vermont and Canada; East by Maine and the Atlantic; South by Massachusetts, and West by Vermont and Canada. Vermont is bounded North by Canada; East by New Hampshire; South by New Hampshire and Massachusetts, and West by New York, &c. &c. It is highly important that the scholar should correctly learn the boundary before he studies the description the country.

Southern States.

1. Maryland ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
2. Virginia ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
3. North Carolina ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
4. South Carolina ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
5. Georgia ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
6. Florida ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
7. Alabama ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
8. Mississippi ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
9. Louisiana ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
10. Texas ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?

Western States.

1. Tennessee ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
2. Kentucky ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
3. Ohio ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
4. Michigan ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
5. Indiana ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
6. Illinois ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
7. Missouri ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
8. Arkansas ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
9. Wisconsin ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
10. Iowa ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?

Territories.

1. Minisota ?	Rivers ?
2. Indian ?	Rivers ?
3. Nebraska ?	Rivers ?
4. Oregon ?	Rivers ?

RIVERS.

Where does the Columbia river rise, in what direction does it run, and where does it empty ? Clark's ? Lewis ? Yellowstone ? Platte ? Osage ? St. Peter's ? Des Moines ? Missouri ? Arkansas ? Red ? Rio Grande ? Sabine ? Mississippi ? Yazoo ? Pearl ? Pascagoula ? Alabama ? Chatahoochee ? Flint ? Suwanee ? St. John's ? Altamaha ? Ogeechee ? Savannah ? Santee ? Pedee ? Cape Fear ? Neuse ? Roanoke ? Chowan ? James ? York ? Rappahannoc ? Shenandoah ? Potomac ? Monongahela ? Little Kanawha ? Great Kanawha ? Tennessee ? Cumberland ? Green ? Kentucky ? Ohio ? Sciota ? Miami ? Maumee ? Wabash ? Kaskaskia ? Illinois ? Rock ? Wisconsin ? Chippeway ? Fox ? Alleghany ? Genesee ? Susquehannah ? Delaware ? Mohawk ? Hudson, or North river ? Connecticut ? Merrimack ? Androscoggin ? Kennebec ? Penobscot ? St. Croix ? St. John's river ?

LAKES.

Where is Lake Michigan ?
Where is Lake Champlain ?

Where is Lake George?
Where are Oneida, Seneca, and Cayuga Lakes?
A. In the interior of New York.
Where is Lake Memphramagog?†
Where is Moosehead Lake?†
Where is Lake Umbagog?†
Where is *Winnipiseoge Lake?†

SOUNDS.

Where is Long Island Sound?
Where is Albemarle Sound?
Where is Pamlico Sound?

BAYS.

Where is Mobile Bay?
Where is Chesapeake Bay?
Where is Delaware Bay?
Where is Massachusetts Bay?
Where is Penobscot Bay?
Where is Georgian Bay?
Where is Green Bay?

CAPES.

Where is Cape Ann, Cape Cod and Cape Malabar?
Where is Montauk Point?
Where is Sandy Hook?
Where are Cape May and Cape Henlopen?
Where are Cape Charles and Cape Henry?
Where are Cape Hatteras, Cape Lookout and Cape Fear?
Where are Cape Canaveral and Cape Florida?
Where is Cape Sable?

ISLANDS.

Where are Nantucket and Martha's Vineyard?
Where is Long Island?
Where are the Bahama Islands?

MOUNTAINS.

What is the principal range of Mountains in the United States?
Through what States do the Alleghany Mountains extend?
Where are the Cumberland Mountains?
Where are the Catskill Mountains? A. In New York.
Where are the Green Mountains? A. In Vermont.
Where are the White Mountains? A. In New Hampshire.
What Mountains between Mandan District and Oregon Territory?

* Win-e-pe-sav'-ke. † See Map of the Eastern States.

EASTERN, OR NEW ENGLAND STATES.

COMMERCE.

The Eastern States are the most populous and commercial section of the Union. They are distinguished for the infinite variety of their surface, and for their numerous lakes, ponds, rivers, and beautiful scenery.

Along the coast, the land is mostly level. In the interior, it is diversified with hills, mountains and valleys. There are no plains of any considerable extent; but beautiful swells of land in every form, are innumerable.

The two principal ranges of mountains, are the White mountains in New Hampshire, and Green mountains in Vermont. Mount Washington, the most elevated summit of the former, is the highest land in the United States east of the Mississippi. These mountains abound in the most beautiful, wild, and sublime scenery, and afford a delightful ramble during the warm season of the year.

The climate is variable, and subject to great extremes of heat and cold. It is generally healthy however, except during the spring months, when damp and disagreeable east winds prevail, particularly on the sea-coast. The autumn is delightful, and the climate then is one of the most agreeable in the world.

The soil is various, from barren sand to the richest clays and loams. It requires diligent cultivation to procure tolerable crops. is generally better fitted for grazing than tillage. The most important production is grass. One of the leading pursuits of the farmer is the raising of cattle, horses, sheep and swine. Indian corn, or maze,

wheat, rye, oats, barley, flax and hemp, are extensively cultivated. Apples, pears, peaches, plums, &c. are produced in great plenty, especially in the southern part.

The people of these states are extensively engaged in the whale fisheries in the Pacific, in the cod fisheries on the banks of Newfoundland, and in the herring fisheries on the coast of Maine and Nova Scotia.

The Eastern States are not less distinguished for manufactures than for commerce. Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island and New Hampshire are extensively engaged in manufacturing cotton and woollen goods, hats, shoes, clocks, iron and tin ware, and various other articles. The exports from these states, in addition to the articles above mentioned, are lumber, pot and pearl ashes and fish.

Perhaps in no other part of the world is knowledge so universally diffused among all classes, as in the Eastern states. The inhabitants are generally instructed in the common branches of school education, and it is a rare occurrence to meet with a person of mature years, who cannot both read and write, and who, besides, has not some practical knowledge of arithmetic. This is owing to the universal provision made for the education of all classes. The towns are divided into small districts in which a school is established and supported

A SCHOOL HOUSE.

by law, during a part, or the whole of the year. One of the most common objects that is presented to a traveller in passing through these states is a school house, in which the young are taught all the branches necessary to the transaction of the ordinary business of life. In addition to common schools, these states are well supplied with academies, high schools and colleges. Some of the latter stand at the head of the literaty institutions in our country.

The people of these states are intelligent, moral, industrious and enterprising. They rank among the first in each of the learned professions, and with the best mechanics, best farmers, and the best seamen in our country.

Questions.—What can you say of the Eastern states? How many square miles do they embrace? A. 63 016. What was their population in 1840? A. 2,333,900. How many inhabitants were there at that time to a square mile? A. 36. Are they as large in extent as Virginia? What is the face of the country in the Eastern States? Which are the two principal ranges of mountains? What is said of the climate? What is meant by climate? A. The kind of weather that prevails in a country, or the temperature of the air. Which winds during the spring months are most disagreeable? What is said of the soil? What articles are manufactured? What is the state of education? What is the general character of the people? Can you tell me when the first settlement was made in the Eastern states? How many years since Plymouth was settled? Where is Plymouth, and in what direction from us is it?

MAINE.*

LUMBER TRADE.

How is Maine bounded? What is its Capital?

Maine is generally a cold, uneven, and healthy state. It is principally distinguished for its extensive

*This state was formerly united with Massachusetts, and was termed the *District of Maine*, but in 1820 it was erected into an independent state and admitted into the Union.

coast and numerous harbors, which afford peculiar advantages for navigation and the fisheries.

The northern part is covered with forests which furnish vast quantities of lumber for exportation. The southern parts are thickly settled, and present many flourishing towns and villages.

The soil is various, but generally fertile. The land on the Kennebec and between this river and the Penobscot, is accounted the best in the state. It is well adapted to the various purposes of agriculture, and as a grazing country, it is one of the finest in the Eastern states.

Agriculture and manufactures have received considerable attention; but the people are principally engaged in commercial pursuits. Ship building, the lumber trade,* and the fisheries, are leading branches of industry.

Chief Towns.—AUGUSTA is a flourishing town, pleasantly situated at the head of sloop of navigation on the Kennebec, 43 miles from the ocean. It is regularly laid out, contains a handsome State House, and possesses immense water power for mill sites.

Portland is pleasantly situated on a peninsula in Casco bay. It is well laid out and handsomely built, and is the most important town in the State. It has a safe and capacious harbor, and is extensively engaged in commerce and the fisheries.

Bangor, on the Penobscot, 60 miles from the ocean, is a large and flourishing town. It is in the midst of a fertile country, and is noted for the elegance of its buildings, and for its extensive trade in lumber.

Thomaston is an important place. It is the seat of the State prison, and is noted for its exports of lime, marble and granite.

Bath, situated on the Kennebec, 13 miles from its mouth, is a flourishing place. It is noted for its ship building and trade.

Gardiner has flourishing manufactories. Hallowell is noted for its granite quarries,—Castine for its fine military position, and its excellent harbor,—Eastport for its lumber trade and the fisheries,—Belfast for its fine harbor and extensive trade,—Brunswick as the seat of Bowdoin college, and Waterville as the seat of Waterville college.

Machias, Saco, Calais, Orono, are noted for their numerous saw mills and trade in lumber. Old Town is the residence of a remnant of the Penobscot tribe of Indians.

---

* The value of the lumber exported from Maine is more than $10,000,000 annually.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is Maine longest? For what is Maine distinguished? What river forms part of the boundary between Maine and New Brunswick? St..c. Between Maine and New Hampshire? A. Salmon Falls river? What river forms part of the boundary in the N. E. part? St..J. What other rivers in Maine? What lake? What mount? Hills? Towns? Which extends farthest north, Maine or Iowa? South? Which part of the state is most populous? Which most fertile? At what time is the annual meeting for the choice of state officers held? [See table, p. 68.] In what are the people of Maine principally engaged?

MAP OF NEW ENGLAND. How many square miles does Maine comprise? What was its population in 1840? What are its principal rivers? S. A. K. P. St..C. St..J. What lakes? What is the length of Moosehead lake? Kennebec river? Penobscot? St. Croix? What is the height of mount Katahdin? What counties in Maine? What are the shire, or county towns?* What bays on the coast? C. P. F. N. E. M. P. What islands on the coast? What colleges in Maine? Theological seminaries? Canals? Railroads? Can you sail from Augusta to Concord?

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

DARTMOUTH COLLEGE.

How is New Hampshire bounded? What is its Capital?

---

* Shire, or county towns, are the towns in which the county and higher courts are held

New Hampshire is a mountainous, healthy, and fertile state, and is noted for its numerous rivers and lakes, and for its beautiful and picturesque scenery. It has but a small share of commerce, but is distinguished for its agriculture, and flourishing manufactures.

Chief Towns.—CONCORD is a pleasant and flourishing town, and is the centre of trade for the northern part of the state.

Portsmouth, the only seaport of New Hampshire, is a large, well built, and flourishing town, pleasantly situated on the Piscataqua, 3 miles from its mouth. It has an excellent harbor, and contains a United States' navy yard.

Dover is situated on the Cocheco river, 4 miles above its junction with the Piscataqua. It is the oldest town in the state, and is noted for its extensive manufactures.

Hanover is beautifully situated on the Connecticut river. It is the seat of Dartmouth College, one of the most respectable and flourishing institutions in the United States.

Exeter is pleasantly situated on Exeter river, a branch of the Piscataqua. It is the seat of Philips Academy, and is distinguished for its numerous manufacturing establishments. Great Falls, Nashua, Somersworth Manchester, and New Market, are thriving places, and noted for their manufactures.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is New Hampshire longest? What river forms part of the boundary between New Hampshire and Maine? A. Salmon Falls river. Between N. H. and Vermont? How many miles of sea-coast has New Hampshire? A. Eighteen. What sea port? What can you say of Portsmouth? For what is New Hampshire noted? Distinguished? Which extends farthest north, New Hampshire or Vermont? South? When are the state officers chosen?

MAP OF NEW ENGLAND. How many square miles does New Hampshire comprise? What was its population in 1840? What the principal rivers? Lakes? Mountains? What is the highest summit of the White mountains? How high is mount Washington? What counties in New Hampshire? Shire towns? What college? What can you say of Dartmouth college? What theological seminary? What towns on the Connecticut river? In what lake does the Connecticut rise? When, where, and by whom was New Hampshire settled? [See page 63.] Can you sail from Concord to Burlington?

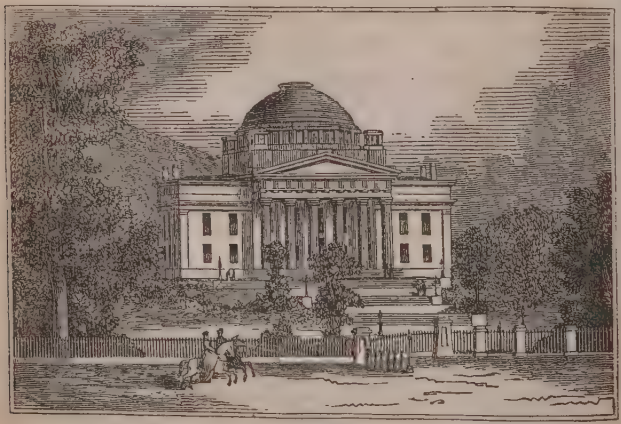
VERMONT.*

How is Vermont bounded? What is its Capital?

Vermont is a beautiful, picturesque, and inland state. It derives its name from the Green Mountains, which extend through its whole length, dividing it into *eastern* and *western* declivities.

It is a well watered, healthy, and fertile state, and is noted for its mines of *iron*, *copper*, and *lead*, and for its numerous quarries of *marble*.

A large portion of the soil is fertile, and well adapted to grazing or tillage. Wheat is extensively cultivated on the west side of the mountains. Barley, rye, oats, peas, flax and potatoes, flourish in all parts of the state. Maple sugar is made in quantities nearly equal to the home consumption. Horses, cattle and sheep are raised in great numbers, and sold for New York, Boston and Montreal markets.



Chief Towns.—MONTPELIER is a beautiful and flourishing town, pleasantly situated on Onion river, 43 miles from its mouth.

* The word, Vermont, is derived from two French words, signifying Green Mountain—Verd, green, and Mont, mountain. The mountains were so called on account of the numerous evergreens with which they were covered. The soldiers from Vermont, so celebrated for bravery in the revolutionary war, were denominated "Green Mountain Boys."

Bennington is the oldest, and one of the largest towns in the state. It is celebrated for a battle fought here in 1777, in which the Americans, under Gen. Stark, defeated a detachment from the army of Burgoyne.*

Burlington is pleasantly situated on Lake Champlain, and is the most commercial town in the state.

Middlebury, situated on Otter Creek, 20 miles from its mouth, is the greatest manufacturing town in the state.

Windsor is pleasantly situated on the Connecticut river, and is distinguished for its beautiful and picturesque scenery. It is well built, and has considerable trade.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is Vermont longest? Which part widest? What river separates it from New Hampshire? What lake mostly separates it from New York? From what does Vermont derive its name? For what is it noted? What is the principal employment of the people? Which is the oldest town in the state? For what is Bennington celebrated?

MAP OF NEW ENGLAND. How many square miles does Vermont comprise? Its population? What are the principal rivers? C. M. L. O. O. What lakes? What river connects lake Champlain with the St. Lawrence? Lake Memphremagog with the St. L.? What mountains in Vermont? What is the length of the Green mountains? What counties in Vermont? Shire towns? What towns on Connecticut river? Lake Champlain? What is the length of lake Champlain? What colleges in Vermont? University? When, where, and by whom was Vermont settled? Can you sail from Burlington to Boston?

MASSACHUSETTS.

How is Massachusetts bounded? What is its Capital?

Massachusetts is the oldest, most populous and important of the Eastern States. It is distinguished for the number of its literary institutions and for the intelligence, industry and enterprise of its inhabitants.

In agriculture, manufactures and commerce, it is one of the first states in the Union. It abounds in flourishing towns and villages, noted for the neatness of their dwellings, the elegance of their churches, and the beauty of their rich and fertile landscapes.

---

* See Olney's History of the United States, page 148.

It is generally an uneven, healthy, and fertile state. Its numerous rivers and smaller streams furnish every facility for manufacturing operations; and its internal communication, by means of canals, railways, and excellent roads, is scarcely equalled.

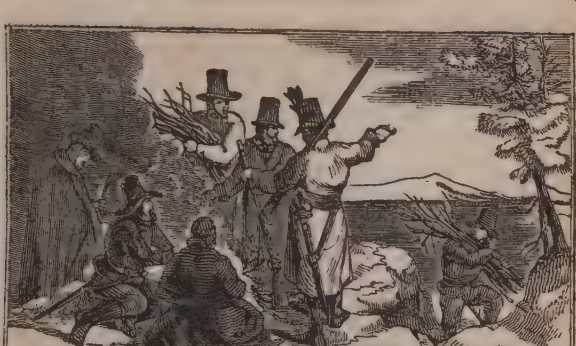
A VIEW OF BOSTON.

Cities. Boston is a large, wealthy, and flourishing city, situated on a small peninsula in Massachusetts bay, and surrounded by a beautiful and populous country. It has an excellent harbor and an extensive commerce, and is noted for the elegance of its public buildings and the number of its humane and literary institutions. In the vicinity of Boston are many interesting places; Cambridge, noted for its university, one of the oldest and best endowed literary institutions in the Union; Charlestown, celebrated for the battle of Bunker Hill, and the noble monument erected in commemoration of it; and Roxbury, for the increase of its population, the elegance of its country seats and well cultivated gardens.

Salem is a large, wealthy and flourishing place, 14 miles N. E. of Boston. It is chiefly built on a narrow peninsula formed by two inlets from the sea, called North and South rivers. Its situation is low, but it is pleasant and healthy. It contains many handsome buildings and is noted for its extensive commerce.

Plymouth, 36 miles S. E. of Boston, is a place of considerable trade, and is noted for being the first settled town in New England.

The first English settlement in New England was made at Plymouth, Dec. 22d, 1620, by 101 *Puritans*, who fled from England on account of religious persecution. The anniversary of the landing of the Pilgrims is still observed.



LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS AT PLYMOUTH.

Worcester*, situated 40 miles W. of Boston, in the midst of a fertile country, is the largest, and one of the most beautiful inland towns in New England. It contains many elegant buildings, and is a place of great wealth and trade.

Springfield is a beautiful and flourishing town, 87 miles W. of Boston. It contains a number of elegant public buildings, and a large United States' Armory; and is distinguished for its extensive inland trade, and numerous manufacturing establishments.

Northampton is one of the most beautiful towns in New England. Lowell, on the Merrimack, is noted for its extensive manufactures, and the rapid increase of its population. Newburyport, at the mouth of the Merrimack, is remarkable for the beauty of its situation, and the regularity of its streets, and for its commerce. Marblehead and Gloucester are extensively engaged in the cod fisheries. Nantucket and New Bedford are largely concerned in the whale fisheries. Lynn, on the coast between Boston and Salem, is a pleasant and flourishing town, noted for the manufacturing of shoes. Pittsfield, Lenox and Stockbridge, are pleasant towns in the western part of the state.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is Massachusetts longest? What bay east of Massachusetts? What three capes? A. C. M. What large river runs through it? What river in the N. E. part? What two islands S. E. of Massachusetts? Which extends farthest north Massachusetts or Illinois? For what is Massachusetts distinguished? When are the state officers chosen?

---

* Woors'-ter.

MAP OF NEW ENGLAND. What is the extent of Massachusetts? Population? What are its principal rivers? Bays? What mountains in the western part? H. Of what chain are the Hoosack mountains a continuation? G. What two mountains near Northampton? T. H. What counties in Massachusetts? Shire towns? What large manufacturing town on the Merrimack 25 miles N. W. of Boston? Which is the first settled town in Massachusetts? When was Plymouth settled? Where is Lexington, memorable for the first battle of the Revolution? When was the battle fought? A. The 19th of April, 1775. What towns on the Connecticut river? What canals in Massachusetts? Railroads? Through what large towns does the western railroad pass? W. S. W. P. What literary institutions in Massachusetts? How will you sail from Boston to Providence?

RHODE ISLAND.

How is Rhode Island bounded? What is its Capital?

Rhode Island is a small, pleasant and healthy state; and is distinguished for its flourishing manufactures, and extensive commerce.

MANUFACTURES AND COMMERCE.

It is mostly a level state, and has generally a fertile soil, especially on the islands and shores of Narraganset Bay.

Rhode Island, from which the state takes its name, is in the southern part of Narragansett bay, and contains about 50 square miles. It is celebrated for its delightful and healthy climate, and is a noted resort of invalids from various parts of the United States.

Chief Towns.—PROVIDENCE is situated on Providence river at the head of Narragansett bay, 35 miles from the ocean. It is one of the most wealthy and flourishing towns of its size in the United States. It has an extensive commerce, and is distinguished for the extent and variety of its manufactures.

Newport is finely situated on Rhode Island, and is distinguished for its beautiful situation, and the salubrity of its climate. It has considerable commerce, and one of the best harbors in the United States.

Bristol is a pleasant, wealthy, and commercial town, situated about half way between Providence and Newport.

Pawtucket, situated on Pawtucket Falls, 4 miles N. E. of Providence, is one of the most flourishing manufacturing villages in the United States.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES? In what direction is Rhode Island longest? Which part widest? Which extends farthest east, Rhode Island or New Hampshire? For what is it distinguished? From what does the state take its name? For what is the Island of Rhode Island celebrated? What college in Rhode Island? For what is Providence distinguished? Newport? When are the state officers chosen?

MAP OF NEW ENGLAND. What is the extent of Rhode Island? What its population? What bay in Rhode Island? What island in the southern part of Narragansett bay? What island south of Rhode Island? B. What two points at the entrance of Narragansett bay? Pt. Judith and Sekonnet point on the east. What five counties in Rhode Island? P. K. W. Newport county comprises Rhode Island and several smaller islands in Narragansett bay and the part of the state east of the bay. Bristol county embraces the small part of the state north of Narragansett bay. What canal? Railroads? When, where, and by whom was Rhode Island settled? How will you sail from Providence to Hartford?

CONNECTICUT.

How is Connecticut bounded? What are its Capitals?

Connecticut is a small, healthy and fertile state, and is noted for the extent and variety of its manufactures; for its literary institutions, and for the intelligence, enterprise, and good morals of the people.

VIEW OF HARTFORD.

Connecticut has generally an uneven surface, and abounds in beautiful scenery.

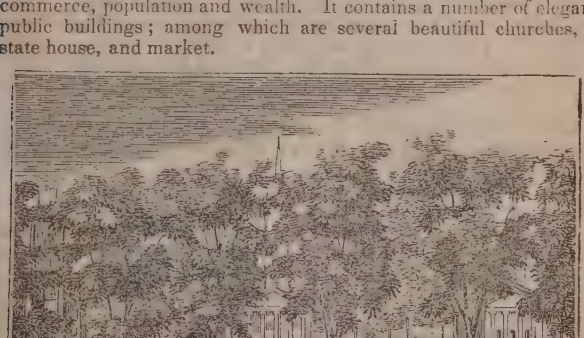
It is well situated for commerce, and carries on a considerable trade with the West Indies, and with the Northern and Southern States.

In proportion to its population, Connecticut is more extensively engaged in manufactures than any other state except Rhode Island. The ingenuity and industry of the people, in this respect, have a reputation throughout the Union. At Middletown are manufactories of cotton, woollen, paper, combs, rifles, &c. At Tariffville, are manufactories of cotton and carpeting. At Norwich, are manufactories of flannel, cotton, leather, paper and iron. At Manchester and Vernon, there are extensive cotton manufactories. At Canton, is a celebrated manufactory of axes. At Enfield, is a manufactory of carpets. Hartford is distinguished for the manufacture of books, chiefly for education. There are also in different parts of the state, extensive manufactories of hats, clocks, combs, block tin ware, and other things. Considerable attention is paid to the culture and manufacture of silk, at Mansfield, Hartford and other places, and the increasing attention that is paid to it, renders it probable that in a few years it will become an important branch of industry.

Connecticut is more amply provided with the means of common education than any other state in the Union, and in no part of the world are the useful branches of education more generally understood. The School Fund belonging to the state amounts to more than two millions of dollars. The income of this fund is appro-

priated by the constitution of the state, to the support of primary schools, and is divided among the different towns in proportion to the number of children between 4 and 16 years of age. In 1843, the number of children was eighty-four thousand, eight hundred and thirty-seven. The amount of money distributed, during the year, was one hundred and eighteen thousand, four hundred and ninety-six dollars.

Chief Towns.—HARTFORD is pleasantly situated on the Connecticut River, 50 miles from its mouth, in the midst of a beautiful and fertile country. During a few years past, it has rapidly increased in commerce, population and wealth. It contains a number of elegant public buildings; among which are several beautiful churches, a state house, and market.



PUBLIC SQUARE, OR GREEN, IN NEW HAVEN.

NEW HAVEN is pleasantly situated on a bay of the same name, 4 miles from Long Island Sound. It is built in squares, with wide and handsome streets, and is not excelled in beauty by any town in the United States. One of the squares is occupied by the state house, the college buildings, several churches and other edifices, which, with rows of elm trees surrounding the spot, render it one of the most beautiful places in the country. The commerce of New Haven is considerable, and is yearly increasing. In addition to Yale College, the city is celebrated for the number of its boarding schools and smaller seminaries for the young of both sexes. Hartford and New Haven are the alternate places for the meeting of the state legislature.

New London is situated on the Thames, 3 miles from its mouth. it has a considerable amount of shipping, and one of the best harbors in New England.

Norwich* is finely situated at the head of sloop navigation on the river Thames, 14 miles N. of New London. It is a beautiful and romantic town, and is rapidly increasing in manufactures and population.

Middletown is pleasantly situated on the Connecticut, 31 miles from its mouth. It has a considerable share of commerce, and is noted for the extent and variety of its manufactures.

Litchfield is 30 miles west of Hartford, in the midst of a fertile and hilly country. The principal village is delightfully situated on an elevated plain, affording extensive and beautiful prospects.

Wethersfield is a pleasant town, noted for the State Prison. Saybrook and Guilford are resorted to in summer, for sea bathing. Stafford is distinguished for its iron works and mineral waters. Berlin and Meriden are celebrated for the manufacture of tin-ware. Bristol, Plymouth, Watertown and Waterbury, for the making of wooden clocks. Danbury for the manufacture of hats. Farmington is a beautiful town. Suffield is noted for the Baptist Literary Institution established there; and Windsor for being the first settled town in Connecticut.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is Connecticut longest? Which part is widest? Which is the principal river in Connecticut? What is its length? For what is Connecticut noted? For what have the people a reputation? What does the School Fund amount to? What can you say of Hartford? New Haven? When is elector's meeting held in Connecticut?

MAP OF NEW ENGLAND. What is the extent of Connecticut? Its population? Which are the three principal rivers in Connecticut? H. C. T. What branch has the Housatonic? Naugatuc. What branch has the Connecticut? Farmington. What two rivers unite at Norwich and form the Thames? Yantic and Shetucket. What eight counties in Connecticut? L. H. T. W. N-L. M. N-H. F. What are the shire towns of each? What large island south of Connecticut? To what state does Long Island belong? A. To New York. How long is it? What three small islands at the eastern extremity of Long Island sound? F. G. P. What island east of Long Island? G. What city near the mouth of the Thames? N-L. When was New London burned by the British? What are the principal towns on Connecticut river? Housatonic? What other towns can you mention in Connecticut What canal? Railroads? Literary institutions? Which is the most populous city? When, where, and by whom was Connecticut settled? How will you sail from Hartford to Albany?

---

*Nor'-rij.

TRAVELS ON THE MAP OF THE EASTERN STATES.

How will you sail from Hartford to Portland? What is the population of Portland? For what is Portland noted? What is meant by commerce? A. The exchanging of the goods or productions of one country for those of another. For what is Maine distinguished? What is the chief occupation of the inhabitants of Maine? How will you sail from Portland to Concord?

For what is New Hampshire noted? For what is it distinguished? What do you mean by *agriculture?* A. The cultivation of the ground to raise various kinds of grain and vegetables. What is meant by *Manufactures?* A. Making things by the hand or machinery, as cloth, paper, knives, &c. What mountains in New Hampshire? How will you sail from Concord to Windsor?

How will you describe Vermont? For what is Vermont noted? What Mountains in Vermont? Which is the oldest settled town in Vermont? For what is Bennington celebrated? Which is the greatest manufacturing town in Vermont? Which is the most commercial town? How will you sail from Windsor to Boston?

How will you describe Massachusetts? For what is Massachusetts distinguished? Which is the oldest settled town in Massachusetts? How many years since Plymouth was settled? What is the population of Boston? When was Boston settled? A. In 1624. How many years since? For what is Boston noted? How will you sail from Boston to Providence?

For what is Rhode Island distinguished? What large Island in the southern part of Narraganset Bay? For what is Rhode Island celebrated? What large Town is situated on Rhode Island? For what is Newport distinguished? In what direction from Newport is Providence? What is the population of Providence? For what is Providence distinguished? How will you sail from Providence to Hartford.

For what is Connecticut noted? What is the population of Hartford? When was Hartford settled? A. In 1635. How many years since? What literary institutions in Hartford? How will you sail from Hartford to New Haven? Describe New Haven. What College in New Haven? What Canal in Connecticut? How will you sail from New Haven to Albany?

MIDDLE STATES.

Which are the Middle States? [See Page 75.] How many of them border on the Atlantic? Which one has no sea-coast? What

lake borders on Pennsylvania? Which is the most northern of these states? Which is the most southern? Which extends farthest east? Which extends farthest west? Which is the largest of these states? How many square miles has Pennsylvania? Which is the next largest? How many square miles has New York? Which is the smallest of the Middle States? Which is most thickly inhabited, or has the greatest number of inhabitants to a square mile? How many inhabitants to a square mile has New York? What large island belongs to New York? Which of these states is longest? Which is most nearly square? Which is most irregular in its shape? The Middle States contain 102,440 square miles, how much larger are they than the Eastern States?

COMMERCE AND INLAND NAVIGATION.

The Middle States occupy an important section of our country. They are distinguished for agriculture, manufactures, and commerce, and for their numerous and extensive canals and railroads.

In general, the soil is fertile, and the climate mild and healthy. Wheat is the most important production; but rye, oats, barley, Indian corn, buckwheat, beans, flax and hemp are raised in large quantities. The climate is peculiarly adapted to the growth of various kinds of excellent fruit. Apples, pears, peaches, &c. are produced in abundance.

These states are rich in minerals. Iron is found in most parts. Copper, lead, limestone and marble exist to some extent; but the most important mineral is anthracite coal. In no part of the world is this valuable material found so abundantly as in Pennsylvania. Bituminous coal is found in large quantities in the vicinity of Pittsburg. Salt springs are numerous, especially in New York. The most noted are at Salina and Syracuse, where more than two million bushels of salt are made annually.

The enlightened zeal which the state of New York has shown in promoting education, is deserving of the highest praise. Common schools are established and supported by law in every town, and ample provision is made for the education of all classes of society. Besides the common schools, there are about one hundred academies and high schools. All the public literary institutions of New York are united in one body, under the name of the University, and are under the superintendence of a body of literary men, called "the Regents of the University of New York."

In Pennsylvania, considerable has been done for the establishment and support of common schools, and many parts of the state are well supplied with the means of elementary instruction.

In New Jersey and Delaware, public attention has been turned to the subject of common schools, and exertions have recently been made for their establishment in every town.

NEW YORK.

How is New York bounded? What is its Capital?

In population, wealth and political importance, New York is the first state in the Union. Its territory is extensive and fertile; and it is remarkable for the rapid growth of its cities, towns and villages.

Its natural advantages for agriculture, commerce and manufactures, are unrivalled. Indeed, it abounds in all that constitutes the prosperity of a people. It has taken the lead in internal improvements, and is distinguished for its numerous canals and railroads;

NEW YORK.

for its navigable rivers and lakes; and for the industry, intelligence and enterprise of its inhabitants.

New York produces in abundance all the staple commodities and luxuries common to the climate. The principal of these is wheat. It is rich in minerals. Limestone, iron ore, marble, &c. are found in large quantities. There are numerous and valuable salt springs; the most important are at Salina and Syracuse where more than two million bushels of salt are produced annually.

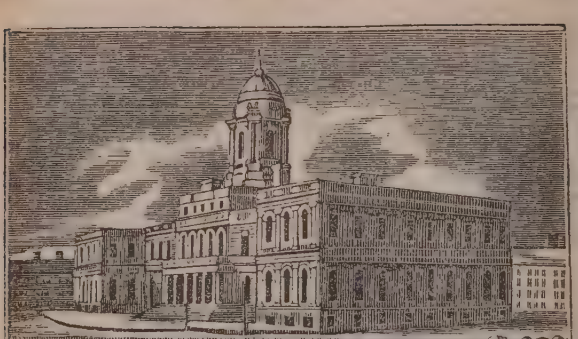
The mineral springs at Ballston and Saratoga are famous throughout the country. During the warm season, they are the resort of the sick, the gay, the fashionable, from various parts of the Union, and they give health to many, and pleasure to all who visit them.

The falls of Niagara, between lake Erie and lake Ontario, are the most stupendous cataract on the globe. The river is three quarters of a mile in width, and falls perpendicularly over a precipice in two columns, to the depth of about 160 feet. The shock causes the earth to tremble for a considerable distance; and a cloud of vapor rises over the spot which is sometimes seen 20 or 30 miles. During the summer and autumn, these falls are visited by persons from different parts of the world.

Cities and Towns.—ALBANY is situated on the west bank of the Hudson, 150 miles north of New York, near the head of tide water. In commerce, population and wealth, it is the second town in the state. It contains a handsome state house, and many other elegant buildings. It is a place of great trade, and is surrounded by a beautiful and populous country, and within a short distance are many thriving villages and towns.

NIAGARA FALLS.

New York is situated on New York or Manhattan island, about 16 miles from the Atlantic, at the junction of the Hudson and East rivers. It is the most populous city in America, and one of the first commercial places on the globe. The city is principally built of brick, and most of the buildings have a neat and many of them an elegant appearance. The finest street is Broadway, which traverses the whole city in a straight line from north to south, and is eighty feet in breadth. It is occupied chiefly by shops and elegant public buildings, and few streets in the world equal it for the splendor, bustle and fashion which it exhibits. The public buildings are numerous; the most noted among them, are the Merchants' Exchange, the Custom House, City Hall, Trinity Church, Hall of Justice, Astor House, &c. The Croton water works, by means of which the city is supplied with an abundance of pure and wholesome water, are among the great works of the age, and stand as a proud monument of the enterprise, liberality and wisdom of its citizens. There is no city, perhaps in the world, which possesses greater advantages of situation than New York, both for internal and external commerce. It is here that merchants and traders resort from all quarters—from the shores of the Atlantic, the confines of the lakes, and the banks of the Mississippi, with a certainty that they can dispose of their own produce, and supply themselves with every article they require. It is here that strangers and travellers assemble as the place of departure to every part of the world. It is at present, and probably will long remain, in a great degree, the central point for the commerce of the United States.



CITY HALL.

Brooklyn, directly opposite to New York, on the west end of Long Island, has grown within a few years to an important city. It is rapidly increasing in population and trade. Its situation is high, and affords many pleasant sites overlooking New York city and bay. In the northeastern part, on a bay called the Wallabout, is the United States' Navy Yard.

Troy is beautifully situated on the east bank of the Hudson, 6 miles above Albany. It is regularly built, and contains many elegant buildings. It has considerable trade, and is distinguished for its manufactures.

Hudson is well situated for trade, 28 miles south of Albany, at the head of ship navigation on the Hudson. It is one of the most important places on the river, and is at present increasing in business and wealth.

Newburg, Poughkeepsie,* Cattskill, Lansingburg and Schenectady, are flourishing and important places. Utica, 96 miles N. W. of Albany, is a thriving place with an extensive inland trade. It is regularly built, the streets are broad, straight and commodious. It is noted for its benevolent and literary institutions, and for the extensive manufactories in its vicinity. The city is nearly the geographical centre of the state.

Rochester, on the Genesee river, is a place of great trade and wealth, and of astonishingly rapid growth. It is well built, and its streets are handsome and regular. It stands on the Erie Canal, 7

* Po-kep'-se.

miles from lake Ontario. It is noted for its manufactures, especially those of flour.

Buffalo is a large and thriving place, at the junction of the Canal with lake Erie. It is the grand emporium of the lake commerce. Its harbor is thronged with steamboats and other vessels, and its streets with travellers, emigrants, and men of business. It is rapidly increasing in population and wealth.

Lockport is a flourishing place on the Canal, 65 miles W. of Rochester. Geneva occupies a fine situation on Seneca lake. Auburn, situated at the outlet of Owasco lake, is a flourishing village. Canandaigua, near the outlet of Canandaigua lake, is a place of considerable trade.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is New York longest? How many states border on it? Lakes? What large river in the eastern part? What branch has the Hudson or North river? M. What two large rivers rise in the southern part? What river rises in Pennsylvania and runs N. into Lake Ontario? S. What towns on the east bank of the Hudson? T. H. P. What towns on the west bank? N. C. A. Where is the military academy of West Point? A. On the west bank of the Hudson, 52 miles north of New York. Which are the three principal towns on the Mohawk? S. U. R. What town near the mouth of the Genesee? R. What is the principal town on lake Erie? What is the population of Buffalo? What literary institutions in New York? At what time is the election of state officers held? For what length of time is the governor chosen? His salary? For what is New York distinguished?

MAP OF NEW YORK. What is the extent of New York? Population? What three rivers empty into lake Ontario? B. O. G. What three in the southern part? S. A. D. Which is the longest river in New York? What lake is connected with lake Champlain? What is the length of lake George? Champlain? What lakes in the interior of New York? O. S. O. C. S. C. and Crooked lake. What river is the outlet of these lakes? How many counties can you mention in New York? Shire towns? How many counties on Long Island? K. Q. S. What separates Long Island from Connecticut? What is the population of New York city? Albany? Utica? Rochester? Rome? Syracuse? Auburn? Owego? Buffalo? What river connects lake Erie and lake Ontario? What is the length of Niagara river? What celebrated falls in it? What can you say of Niagara falls? What large island in Niagara river just above the falls? What battle was fought in Canada near the falls? When was the battle of Chippewa fought? Saratoga? White Plains? Stoney Point? Brooklyn heights? Plattsburg? What canals in New York? Railroads? Where is Croton aque-

duct for conveying water to the city of New York? Its length? [See map of Central States.] Where are the two state penitentiaries of New York? A. At Auburn and Sing Sing. Where are Saratoga and Ballston mineral springs? How will you sail from Albany to Trenton?

NEW JERSEY.

How is New Jersey bounded? What is its Capital?

New Jersey is a small but interesting state. It is noted for its navigable rivers, canals, and railroads, and for its flourishing manufactures.

The face of the country is diversified. It is flat and sandy in the south; uneven and hilly in the middle, and mountainous in the north. The central portions of the state are fertile, highly cultivated, and covered with handsome towns and villages.

New Jersey abounds in valuable garden vegetables, and in apples, pears, peaches, and other fruits of the finest quality, and it always finds a ready market for these in New York and Philadelphia.

The great thoroughfare between the northern and southern states passes through New Jersey, and the advantage which the state enjoys as it regards distance and facilities in transporting goods to market, are not exceeded by those of any district of equal extent in our country.

Towns.—TRENTON, situated at the head of tide waters on the Delaware, 30 miles N. E. of Philadelphia, is a handsome town, and a place of considerable trade and manufactures.

New Brunswick is pleasantly situated on the Raritan, 14 miles from its mouth. It is the most commercial town in the state.

Newark, on the Passaic, 9 miles W. of New York, is one of the most beautiful towns in the United States. It is distinguished for the manufacture of shoes and leather.

Princeton, 11 miles N. E. of Trenton, is situated on the great road between New York and Philadelphia. It is a pleasant town, and contains a number of elegant buildings.

Burlington is pleasantly situated on the Delaware river, 17 miles N. E. of Philadelphia. It is well built, and has considerable manufactures and trade.

Elizabethtown is situated on Elizabethtown creek, in the midst of a beautiful and fertile country. It contains several handsome buildings and has considerable commerce.

Patterson is situated on the Passaic river, 15 miles N. W of New York. It is a flourishing town, and the seat of very important manufacturing establishments.

The Passaic Falls at this place, are the greatest curiosity in the state. The river is 40 yards wide, and falls perpendicularly 70 feet in one entire sheet, presenting a scene of singular beauty and grandeur.

Map of the United States. In what direction is New Jersey longest? Which is the most southern cape? The most northern? Sandy Hook. What bay separates New Jersey from Delaware? What river divides it from Pennsylvania? For what is New Jersey noted? What does it abound in? What literary institutions in New Jersey?

Map of the Central States. What is the extent of New Jersey? Population? What harbors on the coast? What is the length of Delaware bay? Delaware river? What counties can you mention? Shire towns? Canals? Railroads? How many towns can you mention in New Jersey? Which is the largest? N. What is said of Newark? Trenton? When was the battle of Trenton fought? What town on the Passaic, fifteen miles N. W. of New York? What noted curiosity at Patterson? Which is the most northern county? Which the most southern? What bay south of Staten Island? Raritan bay. On how many sides is New Jersey bounded by water? How will you sail from Trenton to Harrisburg?

PENNSYLVANIA.*

How is Pennsylvania bounded? What is its Capital?

Pennsylvania is a large, healthy and fertile state, and is distinguished for its agriculture, manufactures and commerce; for its fine roads, bridges and canals, and for its extensive mines of coal. It enjoys a mild and agreeable climate, abounds in fruit, and may be

---

* The colony of Pennsylvania was founded in 1682, by William Penn, a distinguished philanthropist, belonging to the denomination of Friends. He obtained of Charles I. a grant of the territory now included in the state of Pennsylvania; but believing that this gave him no just right to the country, he purchased the territory of the Indians, whom he considered the just and lawful owners. Shortly after he planted his infant colony, he met the Indians under "the great elm tree," at Kensington, and entered into a treaty of peace, which remained uninterrupted for the space of 70 years.

WILLIAM PENN FORMING A TREATY WITH THE INDIANS.

regarded as one of the most important of the United States.

The middle portion of the state is mountainous; the remainder is generally level or moderately uneven. The soil is fertile, and under a high state of cultivation.

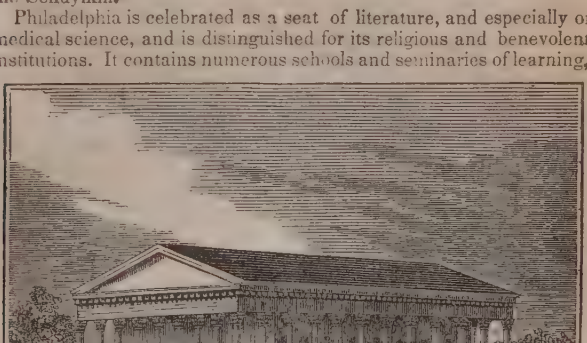
Pennsylvania is the greatest manufacturing state in the Union. All the necessaries of life, and many of its luxuries, are to be found in this state, either the produce of its soil, or the labor of its citizens.

Pennsylvania abounds in all the elements of wealth and power. Public opinion has given it a strong impulse towards manufactures and a gigantic system of internal improvements. New towns and villages are springing up in every direction. Its inhabitants, though composed of all nations, are distinguished for their habits of order, industry and frugality. The passing stranger, as he traverses the state, is struck with the noble roads, canals, railroads, and other public works, with the well cultivated farms, their commodious houses of stone or brick, extensive barns and other buildings of the same materials.

Towns.—HARRISBURG is pleasantly situated on the Susquehannah, 97 miles N. W. of Philadelphia. It is regularly laid out, and handsomely built. The state house occupies an elevation overlooking the town, and is a large and elegant building.

Philadelphia, in the extent, variety, and value of its manufactures, is the first city in the Union. It is pleasantly situated between the Delaware and Schuylkill, six miles above their confluence, and by the course of the river and bay, 126 miles from the ocean. Its commerce is very extensive, and ships of the line can sail up to the city. It is laid out in squares, and is probably the most regular and uniform city in the world. The streets are handsomely paved, broad, and pleasant, crossing each other at right angles, and kept remarkably clean. The houses are neatly built of brick, three stories high, ornamented with marble steps and window sills. The city is adorned with many handsome public as well as private dwellings. But the greatest pride of Philadelphia, is the Fair Mount water works, by which the city is supplied with pure and wholesome water from the Schuylkill.

Philadelphia is celebrated as a seat of literature, and especially of medical science, and is distinguished for its religious and benevolent institutions. It contains numerous schools and seminaries of learning,



GIRARD COLLEGE.

and by the will of the late Stephen Girard, a large sum was left to found and support a college for the education of the poorer classes in society.

Pittsburg is situated at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela, 300 miles N. W. of Philadelphia. It is one of the greatest manufacturing towns in the United States, and is the centre of an extensive trade. In general, the town is well built, but the use of pit coal in the houses and manufactories, gives it a dingy and disagreeable appearance, from its dust and smoke. Its growth has been remarkably rapid, and it is noted for its brass and iron foundries,

INTERIOR OF A COAL MINE.

glass works, and for its inexhaustible mines of coal. By means of the Ohio, it has an easy communication with the Western States and New Orleans, and at the point where the two rivers unite, may be seen a crowd of steamboats which are occupied in plying between this and the various towns below.

Lancaster, 62 miles from Philadelphia, is a pleasant, flourishing, and wealthy town, and is regarded as one of the handsomest in the Middle States. It is surrounded by a rich and highly cultivated country, and carries on a large trade with the interior.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is Pennsylvania longest? How many states border on Pennsylvania? What river forms the eastern boundary of Pennsylvania? What river passes nearly through the centre of the state? What two rivers unite and form the Ohio? What city at their junction? P. What can you say of Pittsburg? Between what two rivers is Philadelphia? D. S. What can you say of Philadelphia? For what is Pennsylvania distinguished? What literary institutions in Pennsylvania?

MAP OF THE CENTRAL STATES. What is the extent of Pennsylvania? Population? What branches has the Delaware river? S. L. What branches has the Susquehannah? J. W. T. What branch has the Alleghany? K. Monongahela? Y. Which is the longest river in Pennsylvania? What counties can you mention in Pennsylvania? Shire towns? Canals? Railroads? What towns on the Delaware? Susquehannah? Ohio? Alleghany? When did the massacre of Wyoming take place? Braddock's defeat? Battle of Germantown? What mountains? What minerals does Penn-

sylvania abound in? A. Coal, iron, lime, and salt springs. When, and by whom was the colony of Pennsylvania founded? How will you sail from Harrisburg to Wilmington?

DELAWARE.

DEEP CUT OF THE CHESAPEAKE AND DELAWARE CANAL.

How is Delaware bounded? What is its Capital?

Delaware is the least populous state in the Union, and the smallest in extent, except Rhode Island.

The northern part of the state is generally hilly, and has a fertile soil; the southern part is level, and unproductive. The commerce of Delaware is small; but its manufactures are considerable.

Wheat is extensively raised in this state, and the flour made here is of a superior quality. The flour mills, near Wilmington, on the Brandywine, are the best and most celebrated in the United States.

The Chesapeake and Delaware Canal crosses the northern part of this state, uniting the two bays. It begins at Delaware City, 46 miles below Philadelphia, and passes westerly 14 miles to Rock Creek, a navigable branch of Elk river. It is traversed by steam boats, packets and merchant vessels. The Deep Cut is a passage through a hill 4 miles long and 90 feet in height, being the deepest

cut of any canal in the world. The Summit Bridge which crosses the canal at this place, is a single arch 255 feet in length.

Near Lewiston is the Delaware Breakwater, an important national work, consisting of two piers,—an ice-breaker 1700 feet long, and a breakwater 2,800 feet long. The work forms an artificial harbor of great extent and importance, and cost about three million dollars.

VIEW OF DELAWARE BAY

Towns.—DÖVER is pleasantly situated between the two principal branches of Jones' Creek, 10 miles from its entrance into Delaware Bay. It is regularly laid out with wide streets, is generally well built, and contains a handsome State House.

Wilmington is situated in the northern part of the state, between Christiana and Brandywine creeks, 1 mile above their confluence. It is the largest and most important town in the state, and is celebrated for its flour mills and other manufacturing establishments.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is Delaware longest? What separates it from New Jersey? What cape has Delaware? Which extends farthest south, Delaware or Ohio? Which state is longest, Delaware or Connecticut? What can you say of Delaware?

MAP OF THE CENTRAL STATES. What is the extent of Delaware? Population? What counties has Delaware? Shire towns? What swamp in the southern part? What and where is the Delaware Breakwater? What is the length of Delaware bay? What canal? What can you say of the Chesapeake and Delaware canal? What railroads? When was the battle of Brandywine fought? How will you sail from Wilmington to Annapolis?

SOUTHERN STATES.

EXPORTS.

Which are the Southern States? [See page 76.] How many are there? Which is the most northern of the Southern States? Which is the most western? How many of them border on the Atlantic? Which is the largest of the Southern States? Which is the smallest? What territory is included in the Southern States?

The Southern States, in extent of territory, far surpass the Eastern or Middle States, and are distinguished for their valuable productions, numerous slaves, and for the amount of their exports.

The Southern States, along the coast, varying from 60 to 200 miles in breadth, are generally low, sandy and barren, except near the rivers and bays. This section abounds in pine forests, and is usually termed "the Pine Barrens." The *interior* is hilly and mountainous, and has a rich and productive soil. The climate, in the eastern and southern part, is warm and unhealthy; in the interior it is mild and salubrious.

Wheat, tobacco, and Indian corn are the principal productions in the northern part; rice, cotton, and sugar in the southern; and pitch, tar, turpentine, and lumber in the eastern part.

The middle and western portions of these states are inhabited principally by farmers, who have few slaves and small estates, depending principally on their own labor for support. The eastern part, or low country, is occupied by planters. These live on large plantations, at a considerable distance from each other, and are supported by the labor of their slaves. They are usually well informed, polite, and remarkably hospitable. Their incomes are large, and they have much leisure to indulge in amusements. Hunting and dancing are favorite diversions, and music is cultivated with much diligence and success. The women are generally well educated, and usually possess refined manners and cultivated minds. Education however, is less generally diffused in the southern than in the northern states, and there is less of intellectual activity and of the spirit of enterprise and improvement.

Gold is the most important mineral. It is found in most of the states bordering on the Atlantic, but more abundantly in North Carolina, Georgia and Virginia. This metal is now found so extensively, that it has become an object of national importance. The government has established branches of the United States' Mint at Charlotte, in North Carolina, and at Dahlonega, in Georgia, for the purpose of coining the gold found in the Southern States. The gold region reaches from Virginia to Alabama. Coal and iron are found in various parts, but more abundant in Virginia than in any other of the Southern States.

MARYLAND.

How is Maryland bounded? What is its Capital?

Maryland, considering its extent and population, is one of the first commercial states in the Union. It is well watered by rivers emptying into Chesapeake bay, affording numerous facilities for inland navigation. In addition to these, the state is largely engaged in internal improvements. When these are completed, Baltimore will be one of the most favorable positions for foreign and domestic commerce in the United States.

The soil is well adapted to the growth of all sorts of grain, and a great variety of fruits. Its exports of flour and other bread stuffs, are immense. The staple production is tobacco.

It is divided into two parts by Chesapeake bay, called the *eastern* and *western* shore. The *eastern*

part is generally level; the *western* part is hilly and mountainous.

Towns.—ANNAPOLIS is a handsome and regular city, pleasantly situated on the Severn river, two miles from its entrance into Chesapeake bay.

A VIEW OF BALTIMORE.

Baltimore is situated on the Patapsco river, 14 miles from its entrance into Chesapeake bay. It has an extensive commerce, both foreign and inland, and may be considered the best flour market in the world. It is divided by a small river into two parts, called the Town and Fell's Point. The latter is the principal seat of commercial business. It is finely built, chiefly of brick, and the streets are neatly paved. It contains many handsome buildings, and two splendid marble monuments—one to the memory of Washington—the other to the memory of those who fell in the battle of North Point, in 1814. The city has had a rapid growth, and is distinguished for the amount of its shipping.

Frederick is pleasantly situated 42 miles W. of Baltimore, in a fruitful tract of country, and is well built. It has a considerable trade in flour and grain.

Hagerstown is a flourishing place, and has considerable inland trade.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is Maryland longest? What bay divides Maryland? On which side of Chesapeake bay is the largest division of Maryland? What river separates Maryland from Virginia? What river empties into the head

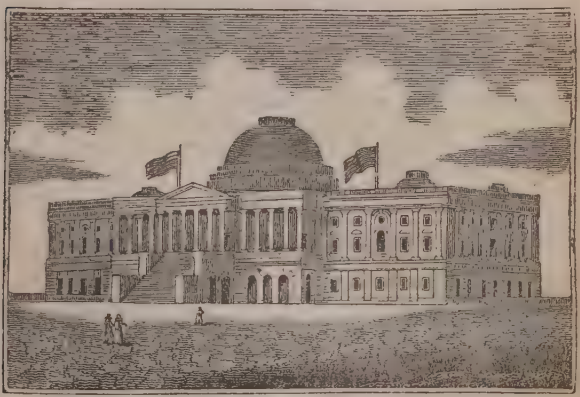
of Chesapeake bay? What literary institutions in Maryland? What can you say of Maryland?

MAP OF THE CENTRAL STATES. What is the extent of Maryland? Population? What is the length of Chesapeake bay? Potomac river? What counties? Shire towns? Canals? Railroads? What towns can you mention? What can you say of Baltimore? When was the battle of North Point fought? What town at the head of Chesapeake bay, burned by the British in 1813? H-d-G. What railroad passes through Havre de Grace? How will you sail from Baltimore to Washington?

DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA.

The District of Columbia is ten miles square, delightfully situated on both sides of the Potomac. The land is finely elevated, and beautifully diversified by hill and dale. It is not a state, but is under

the immediate government of Congress. The territory of this district was given to the United States by Maryland and Virginia, in 1790, for the purposes of a national capital, and in 1800 it became the seat of the general government.



UNITED STATES CAPITOL.

WASHINGTON, the capital of the United States, is situated on the Potomac, 300 miles, by the course of the river and bay, from the ocean. The city is laid out on a regular plan, and when completed, will be one of the most beautiful and commodious cities on the globe. The Capitol, for the meetings of Congress, is situated on capitol square, at the head of Pennsylvania avenue, and commands a delightful view of the city and surrounding country. It is constructed of free-stone, and composed of a centre and two wings. The length of the whole is 350 feet; depth of the wings, 121 feet; height to the top of the dome, 120 feet. The Senate chamber, in the north wing, is a semi-circle of 74 feet in length, and 42 in height. The Representatives' chamber, in the south wing, is also a semi-circle, 95 feet in length and 60 in height. About a mile and a half west of the Capitol, is the President's house, an elegant structure of free-stone, two stories high, with a lofty basement, 180 feet long by 85 wide. Near it are four elegant brick buildings, occupied by the Secretaries or Heads of Departments.

[In August, 1814, Washington was taken by the British, under General Ross, who destroyed the Capitol, President's house, and the public offices. They were soon re-built however, with great splen-

dor. The library of Congress was burnt at this time, and that of Mr. Jefferson was subsequently purchased to replace it.]

Alexandria is situated on the west bank of the Potomac, 6 miles south of Washington. It has an extensive trade, principally in flour. It is a pleasant, regular and well built city.

Georgetown is situated on the Potomac, 3 miles west of Washington. It is a handsome town, and has a considerable trade.

How many square miles in the District of Columbia? What colleges in the District of Columbia? What cities in the District of Columbia? How far is Hartford from Washington? Philadelphia? New York? New Orleans? Boston? Portland? In what direction from Washington are we? How far is Washington from the Atlantic? Georgetown? How long since Washington became the seat of the General Government? How will you sail from Washington to Richmond?

VIRGINIA.

MOUNT VERNON.

How is Virginia bounded? What is its Capital?

Virginia is the largest, and one of the most wealthy, populous and influential states. It is distinguished for its great natural resources, its happy climate, navigable rivers, and the amount of its exports.

The vegetable productions are numerous. Wheat, tobacco, corn, &c. are produced in large quantities. The mineral treasures are

boundless. Extensive gold mines have been discovered. Iron, copper, lead, coal, &c. are found. In the western part are salt springs, from which great quantities of salt are made. The principal works are on the Little and Great Kanawha, where about three million bushels are annually produced.

The Natural Bridge over Cedar Creek, is one of the greatest natural curiosities in the world. It is about 100 feet in length, 60 feet wide, and 250 feet above the surface of the water. There are several remarkable caves—the Blowing cave, Weir's cave, &c.

Towns.—RICHMOND is pleasantly situated at the Falls on James river, 150 miles from its mouth. The town rises gradually from the water, and has a fine, picturesque appearance. Most of the houses are of brick, and many of them are elegant. Its public buildings are very commodious. The capitol is built upon an eminence, and has a commanding and delightful prospect. It has good schools, and convenient houses of public worship for many religious denominations. Its inland, coasting, and foreign trade is extensive, and increasing. It has flourishing manufactures, and by means of the river and canals, the city is connected with a rich and highly cultivated back country, abounding in wheat, corn, hemp, tobacco and coal.

Norfolk, the principal sea-port in the state, is situated on Elizabeth river, 8 miles from its entrance into Hampton Roads. Its harbor is good, and it has more foreign commerce than any other town in the state.

Yorktown, situated on York river, 11 miles from its mouth, is famous for the capture of Lord Cornwallis and his army, 19th October, 1781.*

Mount Vernon is situated on the Potomac, 9 miles below Alexandria. It is memorable for having been the residence of Gen. Washington.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is Virginia longest? Does any part of it lie on the east side of Chesapeake bay? How many states border on Virginia? What two rivers empty into Albemarle sound? R. C. What four into Chesapeake bay? J. Y. R. P. What branch has the Potomac? S. What three empty into the Ohio? L-K. G-K. B-S. What river in the northern part unites with the Alleghany at Pittsburg? M. Which is the longest river in Virginia? What mountains in Virginia? What are the principal towns? What literary institutions? What can you say of Virginia?

MAP OF THE CENTRAL STATES. What is the extent of Virginia? Population? How many counties can you mention? Shire towns?

---

* See Olney's History of the United States, page 176.

Canals? Railroads? Which is the most northern county? B. Most south-western? L. What two counties east of Chesapeake bay? A. N. In what county is Richmond? Norfolk? Fredericksburg? Wheeling? By what rivers is Virginia bounded? When and where was the first settlement made in Virginia? When was the battle of Yorktown fought? Which extends farthest north, Virginia or Delaware? Where is the Natural Bridge? A. In the southern part of Rockbridge county, 156 miles west of Richmond. What can you say of the Natural Bridge? What did Mr. Jefferson say of the passage of the Potomac through the Blue Ridge at Harper's Ferry? A. He said it is one of the most stupendous scenes in nature. Where are the Hot and Warm Springs? A. In Bath county. Where are Madison's and Weir's caverns? A. In Rockingham county. What can you say of that portion of the state lying between the Blue Ridge and Alleghany mountains? A. It is called the "Great Valley Section," and consists of an elevated table-land from 1200 to 1500 feet above the level of the sea, noted for its fertility and singular wildness and beauty. Where is the University of Virginia? When does the annual election of state officers take place? How will you sail from Richmond to Wilmington?

NORTH CAROLINA.

How is North Carolina bounded? Its Capital?

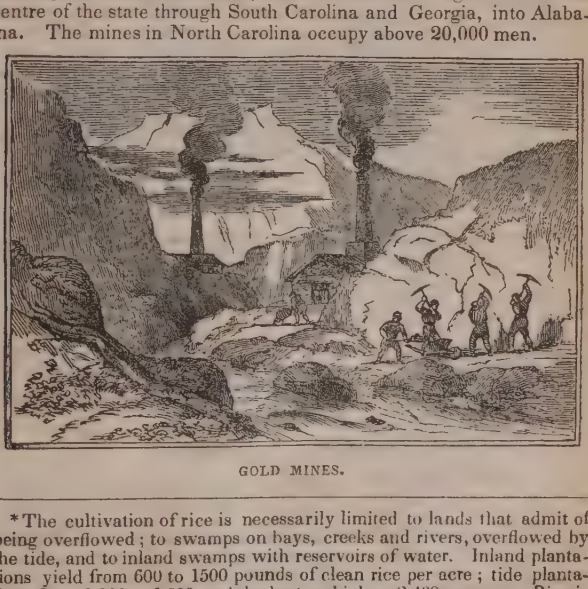
North Carolina is a large state, and is noted for its agricultural productions. It exhibits great diversity of surface, soil, and climate. The country for more than sixty miles from the coast, is a low plain with many inlets and swamps from the sea. This is called the low country, and abounds in pine forests.

The interior is uneven, healthy and productive, and is the most populous part of the state. The western part is mountainous, and remarkable for the purity of its air.

The productions of North Carolina are various. Wheat, rye, barley, oats and flax are cultivated. Indian corn is abundant throughout the whole state; and cotton is raised in considerable quantities. Tobacco, rice, and sweet potatoes abound, and the soil and climate are favorable to the growth of the grape and mulberry.

The coast is lined with sand banks and islands which render access to the bays and sounds extremely difficult. Its commerce is chiefly carried on through the seaports of the neighboring states. The exports are *rice*,* *cotton*, *tobacco*, *pitch*, *tar*, *turpentine* and *lumber*.

North Carolina abounds in iron ore, and is remarkable for its rich mines of gold. The region containing these, embraces an extent of 1000 square miles in this state, and reaches from Virginia across the centre of the state through South Carolina and Georgia, into Alabama. The mines in North Carolina occupy above 20,000 men.



GOLD MINES.

*The cultivation of rice is necessarily limited to lands that admit of being overflowed; to swamps on bays, creeks and rivers, overflowed by the tide, and to inland swamps with reservoirs of water. Inland plantations yield from 600 to 1500 pounds of clean rice per acre; tide plantations from 1,200 to 1,500, and the best as high as 2,400 per acre. Rice is sown in tide lands about the 20th of March; and inland swamps about the second week of April. The land is previously turned up with the plough or hoe, and then drilled by the same instrument into trenches. In these the rice is sown from one to two bushels per acre. The tide planters then flow the fields with water, keeping it on from two to four days. This kills the worm, and starts the grain, which appears five or six days afterwards. It is commonly hoed three times during its growth, and in the second hoeing, the grass is picked up by the hand from the trenches, and the rice is then overflowed from ten to twenty days. As the water is gradually drawn off, the plants branch, and on the number of branch-

There are a great number of mills for grinding. They are driven by steam and water. In some instances, the gold is found in pure particles in the sand; in other parts it is found in mines, or in the form of ore. It usually exists in small grains, but is sometimes found in lumps of one or two pounds weight.

Towns.—Raleigh* is a handsome town, and is pleasantly situated near the central part of the state.

Newbern is the largest town in the state, and has a considerable share of commerce.

Wilmington is the most commercial town in the state. It is situated on Cape Fear river, 36 miles from its mouth.

The towns in this state are small, the inhabitants living mostly on their plantations.

Map of the United States. In what direction is North Carolina longest? What capes on the coast? H. L. F. What sounds? Rivers? What are the principal towns? What mountains in the western part? What is the distance from North Carolina to Gibraltar? What country in Asia in the same latitude as the southern part of North Carolina? What literary institutions in North Carolina? What can you say of North Carolina?

Map of the Southern States. What is the extent of North Carolina? Population? What bays on the coast? Inlets? What counties can you mention? Shire towns? What other towns? Which is the most populous town? What railroads? Canals? What mines in North Carolina? What can you say of the gold mines? What can you say of the coast of North Carolina? What large river in the western part? T. Which is the longest river in North Carolina? How will you sail from Wilmington to Charleston?

SOUTH CAROLINA.

How is South Carolina bounded? Its Capital?

South Carolina is distinguished among the Southern States, for the opulence of her planters, the intelligence and refinement of her citizens, and for her internal improvements, and amount of exports.

---

es depends the size of the crop; each branch producing one ear of from 100 to 300 grains. Three months after sowing, it begins to joint, blossom, and form the ear. It is then overflowed till harvest, which commencesi n the end of August near the sea, and in September is general through the state. Rice was introduced into Carolina from Madagascar in 1693.

* Raw'-le.

CHARLESTON AND HAMBURG RAILROAD.

The coast, for about 100 miles from the sea, is low, flat, sandy and unhealthy. The rivers are bordered with marshes, in which are produced large crops of rice.

The interior is beautifully diversified with hills and dales, and has a rich, fertile soil. The western part is mountainous, and has a cool and healthy climate.

The staple productions are cotton and rice, of which large quantities are annually exported. The culture of these is so profitable that wheat, corn, and other grains, are almost neglected. Tobacco thrives well. The fruits which flourish best are pears, pomegranates, water melons, figs, apricots, nectarines, almonds, olives, apples, peaches and oranges.

Towns.—COLUMBIA is pleasantly situated on the Congaree, near the centre of the state. It is regularly laid out, on an elevated plain.

Charleston is situated on a point of land at the junction of Ashley and Cooper rivers, seven miles from the ocean. It is the principal market for the products of this state as well as a considerable portion of North Carolina. The plan of the city is regular, and many of the streets are handsome. Most of the houses are furnished with three piazzas to each story. It contains many elegant edifices, and its citizens are characterized by hospitality, gayety, and politeness.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is South Carolina longest? What are its rivers? Principal towns? What literary institutions? For what is South Carolina distinguished? What fruits flourish? Which extends farthest south, South Carolina or Arkansas?

MAP OF THE SOUTHERN STATES. What is the extent of South Carolina? Population? South Carolina is divided into Districts instead of Counties. What districts can you mention? In what district is Charleston? What can you say of Charleston? What bay on the coast? L. What sound in the southern part? What entrance? What town on Port Royal island? What canal? Rail-roads? Which is the longest river in South Carolina? Where is Table mountain, the most noted curiosity in the state? When was the battle of Monk's Corner fought? Eutaw Springs? Cowpens? King's Mountain? What fort at the entrance of Charleston harbor? How will you sail from Charleston to Savannah?

GEORGIA.

COTTON AND RICE FIELDS.

How is Georgia bounded? What is its Capital?

Georgia is one of the largest states in the Union, and is rapidly increasing in wealth, population and power. The state is greatly diversified in respect to surface, soil, and climate.

The marshy grounds, overflowed by creeks and rivers, extending fifteen or twenty miles from the coast, constitute the rice plantations. Next to this portion, are the pine barrens, which extend from 60 to 90 miles from the sea.

Beyond these barrens, the country becomes uneven, diversified with hills and mountains, and possesses a strong, rich soil. This section produces cotton, tobacco, wheat, corn, and other kinds of grain.

Melons, citrons, figs, oranges, limes, pears, peaches and other fruits are cultivated. A part of the soil is well suited to the grape vine.

The staple production is cotton, but rice, tobacco, and lumber are important articles of commerce.

The minerals are iron in great abundance, and also copper. The gold region extends in a broad belt through this state, and is becoming an object of great and increasing interest.

The winters are mild and agreeable, and snow seldom falls; but the summers are warm, and in the southern part, unhealthy.

Towns.—MILLEDGEVILLE is pleasantly situated on the Oconee. It is a flourishing town, and has a considerable trade.

Savannah is situated on the river Savannah, 17 miles from its mouth. It is the largest town in the state, and has an extensive commerce.

Augusta is a flourishing town on the Savannah river, 127 miles by land, above Savannah. It is well situated for trade, the produce of the northern part of the state being collected here, to be conveyed to Savannah.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is Georgia longest? What rivers? Principal towns? What mountains in the north-western part? What literary institutions? What can you say of Georgia?

MAP OF THE SOUTHERN STATES. What is the extent of Georgia? Population? What counties can you mention? In what county is Milledgeville? Savannah? Augusta? What islands on the coast? What swamp in the southern part? Okefinokee swamp is of great extent. It abounds in alligators, snakes, frogs, turtles and immense

swarms of musquitoes. What canal? railroads? What rivers form boundary lines? Which is the longest river in Georgia? How will you sail from Savannah to Port Leon?

FLORIDA.

How is Florida bounded? What is its Capital?

Florida is the most southern portion of the United States, and is remarkable for the variety of its vegetable productions, and for its numerous rivers, ponds, lakes and marshes.

The soil near the rivers and lakes, is equal to any in the world; in other parts, however, it is less productive. The climate is soft and delicious, rarely suffering from cold, and constantly refreshed by breezes from the Atlantic and the gulf of Mexico.

Florida is noted for the majestic appearance of its towering forest trees, and the brilliant colors of its flowering shrubs. The pines, palms, cypress, cedars and chestnuts grow to an extraordinary size and height. The laurels, especially the magnolias, are uncommonly striking objects, rising with erect trunks to the height of 100 feet, forming towards the head a perfect cone, and having their dark green foliage silvered over with large milk white flowers, frequently eight or nine inches in diameter. The live oak, so valuable in ship building, grows here to a large size. After forming a trunk from 10 to 20 feet high, and from 12 to 18 feet in circumference, it spreads out its branches, in some instances 50 paces on every side.

Many rich fruits, particularly limes, prunes, peaches, grapes and figs, grow wild in the forests. St. John's river and some of the lakes are bordered with orange groves, and olives are cultivated with success. Fish abound in the rivers and lakes, and game is abundant in the forests.

Florida was formerly a Spanish province. In 1819 it was ceded by Spain to the United States; in 1822 it was erected into a territorial government, and in 1845, admitted as a state, into the union.

Towns.—Tallahasse is a new, pleasant and flourishing town, distinguished for its healthy situation, and for the beauty and fertility of the surrounding country.

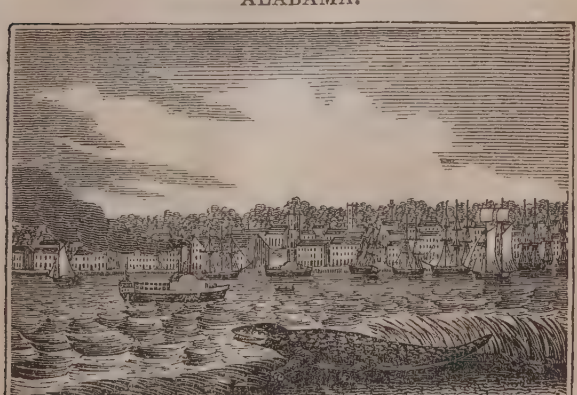
St. Augustine, the oldest town in the United States, is pleasantly situated on the eastern coast, about 18 miles south of the mouth of St. John's river. It is built on a peninsula, and consists of four principal streets. It is distinguished for its dry and healthy atmosphere, and has the advantages of refreshing breezes from the sea, and the fragrance of orange groves. It is the resort of invalids from all parts of the United States.

Pensacola is situated on a bay of the same name, 50 miles east of Mobile. Its situation is pleasant and healthy, and it is rapidly increasing in population and wealth. Its harbor is one of the most safe and capacious in the gulf of Mexico, and has been selected as a naval station by the government of the United States.

Map of the United States. In what direction is Florida longest? What cluster of isles near Cape Sable? What cluster west of Florida Reefs? What cluster of the West India isles south-east of Florida? B. What is St. Salvador, or Cat island noted for? What stream passes between the Bahama isles and Florida? What bays on the coast? P. A. T. What rivers in Florida? For what is Florida remarkable?

Map of the Southern States. What is the extent of Florida? Population? What rivers form boundary lines? P. C. St. M. Which is the longest river in Florida? How is Pensacola situated? Port Leon? St. Augustine? What is said of St. Augustine? For what is Florida noted? How will you sail from Port Leon to Tuscaloosa?

ALABAMA.



VIEW OF MOBILE.

How is Alabama bounded? What is its Capital?

Alabama is a large and newly settled state, and is distinguished for the rapid increase of its population.

It possesses great diversity of surface, soil, climate and productions.

Along the coast, the land is low, level, and well suited to the cultivation of rice. The middle is uneven; the northern parts are broken or hilly, but very fertile and healthy, and embrace the principal settlements.

Cotton is the staple production, and is raised in great quantities. Rice, corn, wheat, rye, oats, &c. are successfully cultivated. The sugar-cane is becoming an object of attention, and it is supposed that the vine and olive would flourish.

Iron ore is found in several places; coal abounds on the Black Warrior and Cahawba, and gold exists in the northeastern part.

The climate is generally healthy, except in the southern part.

Montgomery, situated on a high bluff on the Alabama, at the head of steamboat navigation, is an important and flourishing place. It is generally well built, and the centre of an extensive trade, particularly in that of cotton.

Mobile,* on Mobile river, is a flourishing commercial place. Next to New Orleans, it is the greatest cotton mart of the South. It is situated on a beautiful plain, is well built, and commands a delightful prospect.

Tuscaloosa, Wetumpka, Gainsville, Florence, Huntsville, and Tuscumbia, are thriving towns, and places of some note.

Map of the United States. In what direction is Alabama longest? What bay in the southern part? M. What rivers in Alabama? Principal towns? What mountains terminate in the northern part? What literary institutions? What can you say of Alabama?

Map of the Southern States. What is the extent of Alabama? Population? What counties can you mention in Alabama? In what county is Mobile? Tuscaloosa? Montgomery? Huntsville? Florence? Which is the most populous town in Alabama? What two rivers unite and form the Alabama? C. T. What shoals in Tennessee river? Which is the longest river in Alabama? What

---

*Mo-beel'.

rivers form boundary lines? What railroads in Alabama? How does Alabama compare in size with New York? How will you sail from Tuscaloosa to Natchez?

MISSISSIPPI.

COTTON FIELDS.

How is Mississippi bounded? What is its Capital?

Mississippi is a large, level and fertile state. Its local situation, the fertility of its soil, the temperature of its climate, and the value of its productions, render it an important member of the Union.

The productions are numerous. The most important is cotton, and it employs most of the industry of the people. Rice, corn, sugar, wheat, &c. are successfully cultivated; and plums, peaches, figs and other fruits grow in abundance.

The southern part of the state, for about 100 miles from the Gulf of Mexico, is mostly a level, sandy, pine forest, interspersed with cypress swamps, prairies, marshes, and a few hills of moderate elevation. The remainder of the state is more elevated, and agreeably diversified, and noted for the fertility of the soil.

Towns.—JACKSON is finely situated on a plain, about half a mile square, near the Pearl river. It is a flourishing and healthy place, and noted for its elegant state house and other public buildings.

Natchez has an elevated situation. and is the largest and one of the most flourishing towns in the state. It is surrounded by a populous, fertile. and highly cultivated country, and is the centre of trade for the towns in the western part of the state. Great numbers of steamboats and river craft, are continually arriving and departing here. Its streets are broad. and many of its buildings handsome.

Vicksburg, Columbus, Grand Gulf, Yazoo City, Monticello, Woodville and Port Gibson are flourishing towns.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is Mississippi longest? What are its chief rivers? Principal towns? What rivers form boundary lines? M. P. T. What literary institutions? What can you say of Mississippi?

MAP OF THE SOUTH-WESTERN STATES. What is the extent of Mississippi? Population? What counties can you mention? In what county is Jackson? Natchez? Vicksburg? Which is the largest town in Mississippi? What is its population? Which is the longest river? Its length? Which extends farthest west, Mississippi or Illinois? East? What towns on the Mississippi? What railroads? When is the election of state officers held? For what length of time is the governor chosen? His salary? When does the legislature meet? Sail from Natchez to New Orleans.

LOUISIANA.

How is Louisiana bounded? What is its Capital?

Louisiana is a large, level, and fertile state. It presents the appearance of an immense plain, divided into marshes.* prairies.† pine forests and alluvions.‡

The part bordering on the gulf of Mexico consists of low prairie land and marshes, intersected by numerous bays and rivers. Around the mouth of the Mississippi, for thirty or forty miles, it is a continued swamp, destitute of trees, covered with a species of

---

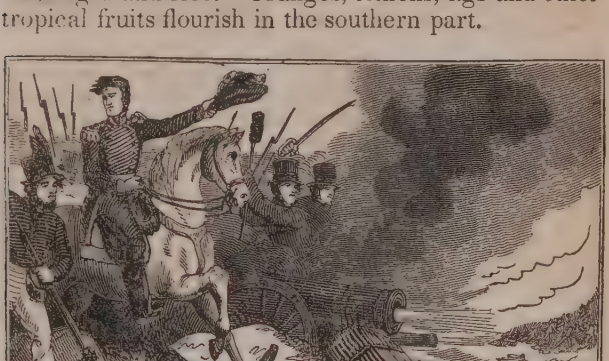
* Marshes, a tract of low, wet land, a swamp.

† Prai-rie, an extensive tract of land, generally level, destitute of trees and covered with tall grass. They usually have a fertile soil, peculiarly suited to the purposes of grazing and feeding immense herds of cattle. Many of the prairies are very large, extending farther than the eye can reach. In Asia, these plains are called Steppes; in South America, Pampas.

‡ Alluvions, level, fertile lands, lying on the margins of rivers, formed there by means of the action of the water.

coarse reed four or five feet high. The most fertile and cultivated portions of the state, are the alluvions on the borders of the Mississippi, Red river and smaller streams.

The agricultural and commercial resources of Louisiana are immense. Its staple productions are cotton, sugar and rice. Oranges, lemons, figs and other tropical fruits flourish in the southern part.



BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS.

A considerable portion of this state is lower than the Mississippi To prevent its being overflowed, levees, or artificial embankments of earth are raised on the sides of the river, from five to forty feet in height. These sometimes are broken away by the stream, and a vast extent of country is deluged with water, and great devastation is produced.

Towns.—New Orleans is situated on the Mississippi, 105 miles from its mouth. It is the grand commercial metropolis of the Mississippi valley. The plan of the city is regular, and its suburbs are adorned with beautiful gardens and orange groves. No city on the globe possesses so great natural advantages for a commercial capital. The Mississippi and its tributaries above this city, have an extent of more than 20,000 miles of waters, already navigated by steamboats, and passing through the richest soils and the pleasantest climates. Its communication with the ocean is easy, being accessible for the

largest ships. Its harbor is constantly crowded with all kinds of maritime and river craft; and often may be seen at one time 1500 flat boats engaged in lading and unlading. Steamboats are coming and departing every hour, and fifty or sixty are frequently seen at the levee together. It is rapidly increasing in population, commerce, and wealth, and bids fair to become the largest city of America, and one of the first commercial cities on the globe.

Baton Rouge* is situated on the east bank of the Mississippi, 110 miles above New Orleans. It is a flourishing place, and is considered the most healthy situation on the river.

Map of the United States. In what direction is Louisiana longest? What are its chief rivers? Which form boundary lines? S. M. P. Which are the principal towns? What literary institutions? What can you say of Louisiana? In what direction from us are the mouths of the Mississippi?

Map of the South-western States. What is the extent of Louisiana? Population? Louisiana is divided into Parishes instead of counties. How many parishes can you mention? Which extends farthest south? In what parish is New Orleans? Natchitoches?† Baton Rouge? What lakes? Bays? When was the battle of New Orleans fought? Which is the most populous city or town in Louisiana? Which the longest river? Which extends farthest west, Louisiana or Missouri? East? How will you sail from New Orleans to Galveston?

TEXAS.

How is Texas bounded? What is its capital?

Texas is a new, interesting and important State. It embraces one of the finest countries in the world. Its soil is of uncommon fertility—its climate, one of alternate spring and summer; and its productions comprise most of those of temperate and torrid zones.

The face of the country is level on the coast, uneven in the interior, and hilly and mountainous in the north-west. Near the rivers and streams, the land is well wooded, but farther back, it spreads out into vast prairies or savannas, which in the vernal season, are covered with thousands of flowers of every size and hue. Texas

---

* Ba'-tn Rozh'. † Nak-e-tosh'.

contains a number of large rivers, and is very favorably situated for commerce, both internal and foreign.

History. Formerly Texas was a province of Mexico. In 1836, the people declared themselves independent, and adopted a republican form of government, similar to that of the United States, and in 1845, it was admitted into the Union.

Towns.—AUSTIN, the present capital has been recently laid out. It is pleasantly situated, and is rapidly increasing in population.

Houston, the former capital, is the largest town in Texas. It was laid out in 1837, and now contains several elegant edifices and about 7000 inhabitants.

Galveston, situated on Galveston island, is the principal sea-port, and promises to become an important commercial place.

In what direction from us is Texas? Which has the highest latitude, Texas or this State? Which do you suppose then has the warmest climate? Which extends farthest south, Texas or Louisiana? What river separates Texas from Louisiana? What rivers can you mention in Texas? What towns? Did you ever see a person who had been to Texas? How many square miles has Texas? Population? In what direction is Texas longest? How will you sail from Galveston to Nashville?

WESTERN STATES.

Which are the Western States? Which is the most northern? Which is the most southern? Which extends farthest east? Which extends farthest west? Which is the largest? Which is the smallest? Which is the longest? Which is the shortest? Which one is most regular in its shape? Which one is most irregular? How many of these are north of the Ohio river? How many west of the Mississippi? Which are the three largest rivers of the Western States?

The Western States all lie in the great valley of the Mississippi.* They are distinguished for their

* The Valley of the Mississippi embraces the vast region lying between the Alleghany and Rocky mountains, watered by the Mississippi and its numerous branches. It extends 20 degrees in latitude and about 30 in longitude. If we except the Amazon, probably no other valley on the globe will compare in size with it; and it probably surpasses all others in the richness and variety of its soil, and its general adaptation to the

COMMENCING A SETTLEMENT.

mild climate, fertile soil, large and navigable rivers, and for their unexampled increase in population, wealth and political importance.

The most striking feature in the geography of these states, is the Prairies, or natural meadows, which embrace so large a portion of their surface. They are destitute of trees, and covered with tall grass and wild flowers. Many of them are celebrated for their richness and beauty. These prairies cover a vast extent of country north of the Ohio and also west of the Mississippi, and afford pasturage to countless herds of buffaloes, deer, and various other wild animals.

---

support and comfort of civilized man. In extent, it is like a continent; in beauty and fertility, it is the most perfect garden of nature. If we glance an eye over this immense region, connected by navigable rivers—if we regard the fertility of soil, the variety of productions, and if we combine those advantages offered by nature, with the moral energy of the free and active people who are spreading their increasing millions over its surface—what a brilliant prospect opens upon us through the darkness of future time! We see arts, science, industry, virtue, and social happiness already increasing in that region beyond what the wildest fancy would have dared to hope, thirty or forty years ago.

The climate of these states is healthful and pleasant, being milder and less subject to changes than in the Eastern or Middle States. These states contain the most extensive section of fertile land in the Union, and the productiveness of the soil fits them for becoming the granary of the whole continent. The productions are various and abundant. The principal are wheat and corn in the northern part; cotton, hemp and tobacco in the middle; and rice, cotton and sugar in the southern part. Fruits of most kinds grow in abundance. Horses, cattle and swine are raised in great numbers, and thousands of barrels of beef and pork are sent to the eastern and southern markets.

EMIGRANTS.

There is probably no country in the world, of equal extent, so finely watered as the valley of the Mississippi. It is completely veined by navigable rivers, which afford every facility for domestic commerce. The number of steamboats on the Mississippi and its tributary streams, is about 400. In addition to these,

about 600 flat boats, or arks, annually descend the Mississippi, besides a multitude of smaller craft. The quantities of produce of various kinds, transported in these to New Orleans, is immense.

Lead is the most abundant of all the metals in these states. The lead mines of Missouri and Illinois are the richest in the world. Bituminous coal is found in various parts. Salt springs are numerous; and no part of the Mississippi valley is remote from a plentiful supply of salt.

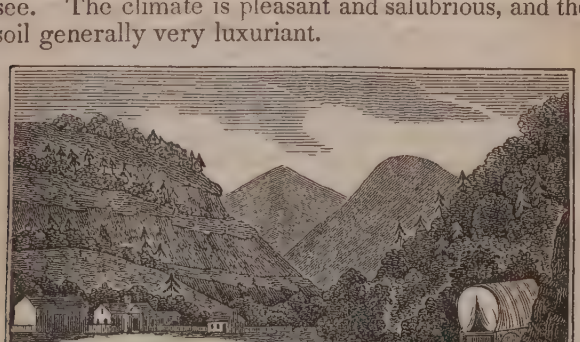
The cause of education in most parts of these states is liberally patronised. The number of common schools is rapidly increasing; higher seminaries of learning, and colleges are fast multiplying, and the zeal that is manifested in their establishment, gives an assurance that this interesting portion of our country will soon be as highly favored with the means of intellectual and moral culture, as it is now with natural resources for the support and comfort of civilized man.

The Western States are remarkable for the remains of antiquity with which they abound. These consist of the ruins of forts or fortifications, mounds of earth, or graves, walls, hearths, &c. To judge from these works, the nation that constructed them, must have been far more civilized, and much better acquainted with the useful arts than the present Indians. From the lofty trees with which they are overgrown, it is concluded a long period must have elapsed—perhaps 1000 years—since the desertion of these fabrics, and the extinction of the people by whom they were erected. They are found in the vicinity of each other, spread over the great plains from the southern shore of lake Erie to the gulf of Mexico, generally in the neighborhood of the great rivers. Their structure is regular, and they have been supposed to warrant the opinion of the existence, in ancient times, of great cities along the Mississippi. The mummies, or dried bodies enveloped with coarse cloth, and found in some of the saltpetre caves of Kentucky, indicate the existence formerly of a race in these parts, different from that of the present Indians, and that had probably become extinct long before the discovery of this continent by Columbus.

TENNESSEE.

How is Tennessee bounded? What is its Capital?

Tennessee is one of the most healthful, pleasant, and interesting states in the Union. It is agreeably diversified with mountains, hills, and valleys, and is noted for its navigable rivers, and for its beautiful and picturesque scenery. The state is divided by the Cumberland mountains into East and West Tennessee. The climate is pleasant and salubrious, and the soil generally very luxuriant.



CUMBERLAND MOUNTAINS.

The great business of the state is agriculture. Cotton, tobacco, corn, wheat and hemp are produced in abundance, and are the staple commodities.

Being remote from the sea, it is not exposed to sudden changes of temperature. The winters are mild, and it has been observed that the season of vegetation lasts three months longer here than in Maine. The climate of East Tennessee is considered one of the most desirable in North America.

The state is rich in minerals. A considerable portion of it is bedded on limestone. Gypsum, copperas, allum, nitre, lead, &c. are found. Coal is supposed to be plentiful. There are several mineral springs, and many valuable salt springs.

The mountains of Tennessee contain a great number of caverns. But few of them have been explored, and little more is known of them than that they abound in nitrous earth. One of them has been descended 400 feet below the surface, and found to consist of a smooth limestone rock with a stream of pure water sufficient to turn a mill.

Among the Enchanted mountains, a name given to several spurs of the Cumberland ridge, are some very singular foot prints marked in the solid limestone rock. These are tracks of men, horses, and other animals, as fresh as if made yesterday, and as distinct as if made in clay or mortar. On the shore of the Mississippi is a similar impression of two human feet in a mass of solid limestone. The tracks of human beings have uniformly six toes on each foot. Walls of faced stone, and even walled wells have been found in many places which are undoubtedly the work of a remote generation. A description of the curiosities of Tennessee would fill a large volume.

Towns.—NASHVILLE is situated on the Cumberland river, 200 miles from its mouth, in the midst of a populous and fertile country. It is the largest and most flourishing town in the state, and carries on an extensive steamboat navigation.

Memphis, the second town in the state, is situated on a fine bluff on the east bank of the Mississippi. It contains a United States' Navy Yard, and is a place of much commercial business.

Knoxville, the principal town in East Tennessee, is situated on the Holston, 22 miles above its junction with the Tennessee river. It is a pleasant and flourishing place.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction its Tennessee longest? How many states border on Tennessee? What are its chief rivers? Principal towns? Its literary institutions?

MAP OF THE SOUTHERN STATES. What is the extent of Tennessee? Population? How many counties can you mention? In what county is Nashville? Knoxville? Memphis? Murfreesboro? Gallatin? Which is the largest town? Its population? Which is the longest river? Its length? What mountains separate Tennessee from North Carolina? What railroads in Tennessee? What curiosities in Tennessee? How will you sail from Nashville to Little Rock?

ARKANSAS.

How is Arkansas bounded? What is its Capital?

Arkansas is a large, fertile and newly settled state, distinguished for its navigable rivers, and the variety of its productions.

The eastern part is a low, level, and unhealthy region, covered with thick forests, and is liable to annual inundation. The remainder is more elevated, and enjoys a healthy climate.

Arkansas has a large portion of land of great fertility, which produces cotton, wheat, corn, rice and tobacco, &c. with a great variety of fruits and vegetables. Cotton and corn are the staple productions.

The country is exceedingly well adapted to the raising of cattle. Wild animals and fowls are abundant, as the buffalo, deer, elk, otter, beaver, wild cat, catamount, wolf, bear, &c., wild geese, turkeys, quails, &c.

A PRAIRIE ON FIRE.

The principal minerals are iron, lead, coal and salt. There are several springs, and about 150 miles northwest of Arkansas, are the famous hot springs. They are much resorted to by invalids, and are efficacious in many disorders, although they exhibit no mineral properties beyond common spring water. The temperature in the driest season, is at the boiling point, but subject to considerable variation. The land around them is called "The land of peace"—and formerly tribes of Indians unfriendly to each other, on arriving at this place, always suspended hostilities.

Towns.—Little Rock is pleasantly situated on the Arkansas river, about 120 miles from its mouth. It is the centre of trade for a large extent of country. Its situation is healthy, and it is fast increasing in population.

Arkansas has an elevated situation on the river of the same name, 60 miles from its mouth. It is one of the oldest settlements west of the Mississippi, commenced by the French in 1685. Emigrants from Canada afterwards arrived, but like all places whose inhabitants live by hunting and the Indian trade, its advancement was tardy. Its present population are principally descendants of French and Indians.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is Arkansas longest? What are its principal rivers? Which is longest? Chief towns? Which is largest? What springs on the Washita*? What can you say of the Hot springs?

MAP OF THE WESTERN STATES. What is the extent of Arkansas? Population? What mountains extend into the northern part? What hills in the central part? How many counties can you mention? In what county is Little Rock? Helena? Ultima Thule? When are the elections for state officers held? How will you sail from Little Rock to Jefferson City?

MISSOURI.

VIEW OF TOWER ROCK ON THE MISSISSIPPI RIVER.

How is Missouri bounded? What is its Capital?

Missouri is a large and interesting state. It abounds in plains and prairies, and is remarkable for the num-

* Wosh-e-taw'.

ber and magnitude of its navigable rivers, and for its rich and extensive mines of lead and coal.

The climate is mild, and the soil exceedingly productive on the prairies and along the rivers. Indeed, a great proportion of the land is of the richest kind, producing corn, wheat, rye, oats, hemp and tobacco in great abundance. Cotton is produced in the warmer districts; and vast numbers of cattle are raised on the prairies. The principal exports are lead and furs.

The most remarkable feature in Missouri is its lead mines, which are estimated to cover an area of about 3000 square miles. They are in the eastern part of the state; the centre of them is about 70 miles southwest from St. Louis. There are about fifty mines, which employ more than twelve hundred laborers, and produce three million pounds of lead annually.

Towns.—Jefferson City is a newly settled town, on the Missouri, 120 miles above its junction with the Mississippi. It is situated on a high bluff shore, in the midst of a beautiful and fertile country.

St. Louis is pleasantly situated on the Mississippi, 18 miles below the mouth of the Missouri, and 1,200 miles above New Orleans. It is the largest and most commercial town in the state, and bids fair to become an immense city. Hunting and trapping parties are fitted out at this place, and great quantities of furs, deer skins, and buffalo robes are here collected. It is a flourishing city, and its situation for trade is one of the best in the world.

Map of the United States. In what direction is Missouri longest? What are the principal rivers? What are the chief towns and how situated? Which extends farthest south, Missouri or Kentucky? West, Missouri or Louisiana? East? What literary institutions? For what is Missouri remarkable? What mines?

Map of the Western States. What is the extent of Missouri? Population? What mountains in the southern part? What mountain between the southern part of St. Francis and Washington counties? What mines near Iron mountain? What counties can you mention in Missouri? In what county is Jefferson city? St. Louis? St. Charles? Booneville? Liberty? From what town do the Santa Fe traders usually start? What four rivers form boundary lines? How will you sail from Jefferson City to Louisville?

KENTUCKY.

How is Kentucky bounded? What is its Capital?

Kentucky is a large, populous and flourishing state; and is distinguished for its mild climate, fertile soil,

extensive manufactures, and for the intelligence and enterprise of its inhabitants.

The face of the country along the Ohio, is hilly; the eastern part is mountainous; the remainder of the state is level or gently undulating.

The principal productions are hemp, tobacco, wheat, corn, rye, barley, &c. Apples, pears, peaches, plums and cherries are abundant. The domestic animals are large and beautiful, particularly the horse.

There are numerous salt springs, from which are manufactured vast quantities of salt, affording a supply not only for this, but for some of the neighboring states. At Harrodsburg, near Kentucky river, is a spring holding in solution Epsom salts. This is much frequented by invalids.

Nearly the whole of Kentucky rests on a bed of limestone, usually about eight feet below the surface. There are every where apertures in this limestone, through which the waters of the rivers sink into the earth. The large rivers of this state, for this reason, are more diminished during the dry season than those of any part of the Union, and the small streams entirely disappear.

The banks of the rivers are natural curiosities. Many of them have worn very deep channels in the calcareous rocks over which they flow. The precipices formed by the Kentucky river are in many places awfully sublime, presenting perpendicular banks of 300 feet of solid limestone

Ancient fortifications and mounds of earth, are found in almost all parts of Kentucky; and in Big Bone valley, 29 miles southwest of Newport, enormous bones and tusks of the Mammoth have been dug up from the depth of twenty feet below the surface.

Kentucky is famous for its stupendous caves. One called Mammoth cave, 130 miles from Lexington, on the road leading to Nashville, is said to be sixteen miles in length, with a great number of avenues and windings, and includes several apartments, the largest of which contains eight acres, and is overspread with one solid arch of limestone 100 feet high. From the earth at the bottom of these caves are manufactured large quantities of saltpetre.

Towns.—Frankfort is a pleasant and handsome town, situated on the Kentucky river 60 miles from its mouth. It has regular streets, and contains an elegant state house and other public buildings. It is a place of considerable business. Steamboats of 300 tons come up to the town when the water is high. A chain bridge crosses the river, which is about 80 yards wide, to the flourishing village of South Frankfort.

MAMMOTH CAVE, KENTUCKY.

Lexington* is delightfully situated on a branch of the Elkhorn river, 22 miles southeast of Frankfort, in the midst of the most fertile part of the state. The town is regularly laid out, and handsomely built, and is distinguished for its manufactures, wealth and refinement. The surrounding country is beautiful, and highly cultivated, and adorned with many handsome villas, and rural mansions.

Louisville, situated at the rapids of the Ohio, is the largest and most flourishing town in the state; and in a commercial point of view, it is the first city of the west, commanding the trade of a great extent of country. It is regularly built and contains many fine buildings, and is distinguished for its increase in population, manufactures and wealth.

Maysville is a flourishing town, and is rapidly increasing in population, commerce and manufactures.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is Kentucky longest? How many states surround Kentucky? What are its principal towns? Which is the largest? Which is next in size? What literary institutions? What can you say of Kentucky? For

---

* Lexington derived its name from the circumstance that some hunters were engaged on the spot in laying out a town in 1775, when a messenger arrived with the news of the battle of Lexington, and they immediately decided to commemorate that event by giving that name to the place. See Olney's History of the United States, page 124.

what is Kentucky famous? What can you say of the Mammoth Cave?

MAPS OF THE CENTRAL AND WESTERN STATES. What is the extent of Kentucky? Population? What are the principal rivers? M. O. T. C. G. S. K. L. B-S. What rivers form boundary lines? What mountains in the south-eastern part? How many counties can you mention? In what county is Frankfort? Louisville? Lexington? Maysville? Paducah? In what direction from us is the mouth of the Ohio? What railroads in Kentucky? When, where and by whom was the first settlement made in Kentucky? How will you sail from Louisville to Cincinnati?

OHIO.

VIEW OF CINCINNATI.

How is Ohio bounded? What is its Capital?

In extent, population, and political importance, Ohio is one of the first states in the Union. It is noted for the fertility of its soil, and the mildness of its climate; and its inhabitants are distinguished for enterprize in agriculture, manufactures, commerce, and internal improvements.

The southern part of the state is uneven and hilly; the remainder is generally level. In some parts there are large prairies, particularly on the head waters of the Sciota and Muskingum.

Ohio produces abundantly every thing which grows in the Middle States. Wheat is the staple production, and flour is exported in vast quantities. Corn, rye, and all other kinds of grain, grow here in great perfection. Scarcely any part of the United States is so productive, or affords so many of the natural means for an easy and comfortable subsistence. Iron ore and pit coal are abundant, and there are numerous salt springs.

The great fertility of the soil, the low price of land, and the mildness of the climate, have attracted emigrants, not only from the Eastern and Middle States, but even from Europe. Indeed, its progress in population, power, resources, and energy, has no parallel in history. The first settlement was made in 1788. Then all was a wilderness, inhabited by savages and wild beasts; now with nearly three millions of inhabitants, her cities, towns, canals, roads, colleges, schools, and other improvements, excite the admiration of the world.

Towns.—COLUMBUS is pleasantly situated on the Sciota river, near the centre of the state. It was laid out in 1812, and has rapidly increased in population.

Cincinnati is pleasantly situated on the north bank of the Ohio, near the southwestern corner of the state. The city rises gradually from the river, and is regularly laid out and handsomely built of brick. The streets are broad, and adorned with many elegant public buildings and private dwellings. It was first laid out in 1789; since which time its growth in population, wealth and trade, has been exceedingly rapid. Immense quantities of flour, pork, tobacco and other produce, are conveyed every year down the river in steamboats to New Orleans. It is the centre of trade for a large extent of country, and is distinguished for its extensive manufactures. It is the largest and most wealthy city of the Western States, and may be regarded as one of the most flourishing in the Union

---

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is Ohio longest? How many states border on it? What are the principal towns? Which is the largest? Its population? What literary institutions? What can you say of Ohio?

MAP OF THE CENTRAL STATES. What is the extent of Ohio? Population? What are the principal rivers? O. M. H. S. L-M. M. M. S. O. Which is the longest river? Its length? What canals? Railroads? How many counties can you mention? Which is the most southern county? After whom are the three north-western counties, bordering on Indiana, named? [See National Preceptor, page 59.] In what county is Columbus? Cincinnati? Cleveland? Zanesville? Toledo? Gallipolis? What is the length and greatest width of lake Erie? When, and where did the battle on lake Erie, called Perry's victory, take place? How will you sail from Cincinnati to Indianapolis?

INDIANA.

How is Indiana bounded? What is its Capital?

Indiana is a large, level, and remarkably fertile state, distinguished for its rich prairies, navigable rivers, and for the rapid increase of its population.

The climate is mild and pleasant. The forests are in leaf early in April; and the multitudes of flowering shrubs put forth their blossoms, and give an indescribable charm to the early spring.

GATHERING WHEAT.

The most astonishing crops of corn, wheat, rye, oats, barley, &c. are produced with but little labor.

Vast quantities of pork, lard, corn, meal, wheat and stock are exported down the Ohio and Mississippi to New Orleans.

In the vicinity of Vevay, the vine is successfully cultivated by some Swiss settlers, and several thousand gallons of wine are annually made, and the quantity is yearly increasing.

There are a number of caves in Indiana. One called Epsom Salts Cave, is on the bank of the Big Blue river. The entrance is in the side of a hill 400 feet in height. The whole floor of the cave is covered with Epsom salt, sometimes in lumps of ten pounds weight, and of the purest quality. About a mile and a half within the cave is a white column of satin spar, fifteen feet in diameter, and thirty feet high, regularly fluted from top to bottom.

Towns.—INDIANAPOLIS is pleasantly situated on the west branch of the White river, in the midst of a very fertile country. It contains many handsome buildings, and is noted for the rapid increase of its population.

Vincennes is one of the oldest towns in the Western States. It is pleasantly situated on the Wabash, 150 miles from its mouth. It is a place of considerable trade, and is accessible to steamboats the greater part of the year.

New Albany is pleasantly situated on the Ohio, a short distance below Louisville in Kentucky. It is the largest town in the state, and is rapidly increasing in population, trade and wealth.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is Indiana longest? What are its principal rivers? Which is longest? Chief towns? What literary institutions? What can you say of Indiana? Of its caves?

MAP OF THE CENTRAL STATES. What is the extent of Indiana? Population? Which extends farthest south, Indiana or Maryland? Which extends farther north, Indiana or New Jersey? How many counties can you mention? In what county is Indianapolis? New Albany? Madison? Evansville? Vincennes? La Fayette? Delphi? Michigan city? Which is the most populous town in Indiana? Where is Vevay? In what county? What is cultivated in its vicinity? What canals in Indiana? Railroads? When did Gen. Wayne defeat the Indians on the banks of the Maumee river? When was the battle of Tippecanoe fought? What two rivers unite and form the Maumee? St. J. St.-M. What city at their junction? What is the population of Fort Wayne? How will you sail from Indianapolis to Springfield?

ILLINOIS.

How is Illinois bounded? What is its Capital?

Illinois is one of the largest, most level, and fertile states in the Union, remarkable for its extensive prairies, and its advantages for inland navigation.

This state is rich both in vegetable and mineral productions; and perhaps no section of our country offers so many inducements to the farmer, the mechanic, and the scholar, as Illinois.

The staple products are corn, wheat, potatoes, tobacco, lead, cattle, horses, and sheep. The number of swine fattened and exported is almost incalculable. Cotton is produced for home consumption, and apples, pears, peaches, plums, grapes, &c. arrive at great perfection.

Coal and iron are abundant; but the most extensive mineral is lead. The mines of this metal near Galena, in the northwestern corner of the state, are among the richest in the world. They occupy a large tract, and have produced in a year sixteen millions pounds of lead. Salt springs are common.

LOG HUT AND WHEAT FIELD; MOUNT JOLIET IN THE DISTANCE.

Illinois abounds in prairies, those beautiful plains so common in the western country. In spring and summer they appear like seas of verdure. The grass, three or four feet high, and often overtopped by fragrant blossoms, is waved by the winds like the rolling billows of the ocean. Without a tree in sight, except the thick forest which bounds them as the beach limits the sea, they stretch away beyond the power of vision. They are usually as level as the unruffled lake, and without the dreariness, present all the uniformity of the Arabian deserts.

Towns.—SPRINGFIELD is pleasantly situated in the midst of a beautiful and fertile country. It contains a number of elegant buildings, and is rapidly increasing in population.

Chicago is one of the most important and flourishing places in the State. It is the centre of a large and growing trade. Its harbor and wharves present the appearance of one of the Atlantic cities. Steamboats, ships, and other vessels, are constantly arriving with emigrants, goods, &c., and departing with the produce of the country.

Alton, the great commercial emporium of the western part of the State, Quincy, Nauvoo, Peoria, Beardstown, Naples, and Jacksonville, are all flourishing places.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is Illinois longest? Which part is widest? What are its principal rivers? Which is longest? How many rivers form boundary lines? What are the chief towns? How situated? What literary institutions? What is said of Illinois? What minerals? What does Illinois abound in? Describe a prairie.

MAP OF THE WESTERN STATES. What is the extent of Illinois? Population? What are the principal rivers? W. L. W. O. M. K. S. I. R. What counties can you mention? Which is the most southern county? In what county is Springfield? Alton? Chicago? Nauvoo, the Mormon city? Peoria? Which is the most populous town? Which is the most southern town? In what direction from us is Cairo? Where is Galena? For what is it distinguished? A. For being the metropolis of the great lead region. What can you say of the lead mines around Galena? What canals? What can you say of the canal to connect the Illinois river with lake Michigan? A. It is one of the most important works of the kind in the United States. What railroads? How will you sail from Springfield to Detroit?

MICHIGAN.

How is Michigan bounded? Its Capital?

Michigan is a large, level, fertile and healthy state, distinguished for its advantages for commercial pursuits, and for the rapid increase of its population.

In most parts the soil is of surprising depth and richness, producing wheat, corn, oats, barley, peas, apples, pears, grapes, &c. in abundance. It is abundantly supplied with wild game, water fowl, and fish of the finest quality. The tide of emigration is fast setting into the state, and it bids fair soon to become an important member of the Union.

MACKINAW.

Towns.—DETROIT is beautifully situated on Detroit river, 18 miles from Lake Erie, and 7 from Lake St. Clair. It is regularly laid out, with spacious streets, on an elevation of about 40 feet above the river, of which it commands a delightful view. It contains many handsome buildings, and is rapidly increasing in population and business. It is advantageously situated for commerce, and is a place of importance in the fur trade. A number of steamboats and lake vessels are constantly plying between Detroit and Buffalo, Cleaveland, Chicago, and other places on the lakes.

Mackinaw is a military post, situated on an island in the straits which connect Lake Huron and Lake Michigan. The town is on the south side of the island, and consists of two streets. It is much resorted to by fur traders, and during the summer months is visited by thousands of Indians. On a cliff, 300 feet above the town, is the fort. Its elevated situation affords a very extensive view of lake Huron and Michigan.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. What lakes border on Michigan? What strait connects lake Michigan and lake Huron? What

river or strait connects lake Superior and lake Huron? A. St. Mary's river. It is sixty miles long, and general width, three-fourths of a mile. What famous rocks on the south shore of lake Superior? What literary institutions? What can you say of Michigan?

MAP OF MICHIGAN AND WISCONSIN. What is the extent of Michigan? Population? What bays in and around Michigan? How many counties can you mention? In what county is Detroit? Ypsilanti? Jackson? Adrian? Sault St. Marie? What falls at Sault St. Marie? Which is the largest town in Michigan? What rivers in Michigan? Railroads? What islands in lake Michigan? Lake Huron? St. Mary's river? How much longer is lake Superior than lake Michigan? Which extends farthest south, Michigan or Connecticut? How will you sail from Detroit to Milwaukie?

WISCONSIN.

How is Wisconsin bounded? What is its capital?

Wisconsin is a large and newly settled state. It is distinguished for the great variety of its natural scenery—rivers, lakes, hills and plains; and is noted for its fertile soil, great mineral resources, and for the rapid increase of its population.

Its mines of copper in the northern part, and those of lead in the south-western, are among the richest in the world. Its forests abound in game, and its rivers in fish. In the numerous lakes and marshes wild rice grows in abundance

Towns.—MADISON is beautifully situated on a peninsula between the 3d and 4th of the "Four Lakes." It is regularly laid out, and is noted for its central square, elegant state house, and the beauty of its surrounding scenery.

Milwaukie is the most important place in the state. It is well built—is rapidly increasing in population—and as it contains the only good harbor between Chicago and Green Bay, it is likely to become a place of great commercial importance.

The other principal towns are Green Bay, Sheboygan, Racine, Southport, Prairie du Chien, Cassville, Fond du Lac, &c.

MAP OF THE UNITED STATES. In what direction is Wisconsin longest? What rivers? Chief towns? Which part do you imagine is warmest? Why? What does it abound in?

MAP OF MICHIGAN AND WISCONSIN. What is the extent of Wisconsin? Population? What lakes in Wisconsin? What river connects lake Winnebago to Green Bay? How near do Fox and

Wisconsin rivers approach each other? What counties can you mention? In what county is Madison? Milwaukie? Green Bay? Prairie du Chien? How will you sail from Prairie du Chien to Iowa city?

IOWA.

How is Iowa bounded? What is its capital?

Iowa embraces an interesting tract of country—beautiful in appearance, and of uncommon fertility. It is noted for its extensive prairies, mild climate, its inexhaustible mines of lead, coal and iron, and for the rapid increase of its population.

Iowa was organized in 1838 as a territory, and in 1846 admitted into the Union as a state. Several Indian tribes still reside in it; among which the Sioux are the most numerous and powerful.

Towns.—Iowa City was laid out in 1839. It is noted for its beautiful situation, the regularity of its streets, its promenade, and the fertility of the surrounding country.

Burlington is pleasantly situated on the Mississippi, in a fertile district, and has considerable trade. It was laid out in 1834, and is in a flourishing condition.

Dubuque,* situated in the centre of the mining district of Iowa, is at present the largest town in the territory, and promises to be a place of great commercial importance.

Map of the United States. In what direction is Iowa longest? What are its principal rivers? Chief towns, and how situated? [See maps of South Western States and Wisconsin.] In what county is Iowa city? Burlington? Dubuque? In what lake does the Mississippi rise? Which extends farthest south, Iowa, or this State? Which has the highest latitude, or in other words, which is farthest north, Iowa city or this place?

INDIAN TERRITORY.

In what direction from us is the Indian Territory?

This Territory embraces a large extent of country, noted for its numerous rivers, its extensive forests, mild climate and abundance of game.

The United States' government set apart this Territory for the future residence of those Indians who have emigrated from the States east of the Mississippi. The present population is not far from 75,000.

* Du-book'.

INDIAN COUNCIL.

The tribes that have made the greatest advances towards civilization, are the Cherokees, Choctaws, Creeks, and Shawnees. A number of missionaries reside among them and have exerted a happy influence on their habits, manners, and moral condition.

In what direction is Indian Territory longest? Which extends farthest north Indian territory or this State? Which do you imagine has the warmest climate? What Desert in the western part of this territory? By what is this Desert traversed? Did you ever see a Buffalo? An Indian? What Indian tribes can you mention in the Territory? What mountains form a part of the boundary line between I. Ter. and Mexico? What peaks among the Rocky mountains? In which part of the Territory should you prefer to reside?

NEBRASKA TERRITORY.

In what direction from us is Nebraska Territory?

This is an extensive region, remarkable for its large rivers and immense prairies. It is inhabited by Indians and wild animals, with the exception of a few posts held by troops of the United States.

For the most part, this country is a plain more or less covered with grass, and in many places very fertile. The richest and most valuable lands are found on the margins of the rivers, which are usually covered with well timbered forests. At a short distance, however

DROVE OF WILD HORSES.

the trees disappear, and the soil becomes dry and barren. Indeed, some parts of this territory, especially towards the Rocky mountains, are almost a moving sand, and may be likened to the Great Sahara or African Desert.

Perhaps no other country in the world furnishes so great a variety of wild game as this territory; and on this account it has been termed the paradise of hunters. Countless numbers of buffaloes, elk, deer, and other wild animals, traverse the vast prairies. In some instances, ten thousand buffaloes are seen in one herd. As the grass fails in one place, they travel in a body to another; and when moving, the ground trembles to a great distance, and their bellowing and noise may be heard for miles.

Wild horses are found in droves on the prairies, particularly in the southern part. They are hunted by expert riders on trained horses, and are caught by throwing a noose over the neck, which is done with surprising dexterity.

The most formidable animal in these regions, and the one most dreaded by the hunters, is the grisly bear. He is found in the western parts and inhabits the Rocky mountains.

Bands of hunters and trappers from the United States and Canada, range these vast regions for furs and skins. Some of these become so attached to their roving and adventurous manner of living, that they are unwilling to spend a day in the settlements after they have disposed of their furs and skins, and supplied themselves with necessaries.

In what direction is Nebraska Territory longest? What rivers can

you mention? What three unite and form the Missouri? What is the length of the Missouri to the gulf of Mexico? To the Mississippi? A. 2800 miles. In what lake does the Yellowstone rise? E. What hills in Nebraska Territory? What tribes of Indians? What animals? Where is the "North Pass," through the Rocky mountains? South Pass?

OREGON TERRITORY.

In what direction from us is Oregon Territory?

This is an extensive region, distinguished for its mild climate, fertile soil, its heavy forests of pine, and for the number and variety of its animals.

This territory is naturally divided into three regions—the low, the middle and the high, which differ materially in climate, soil and productions. Most of the vegetables of the northern states succeed well. Horses and neat cattle will subsist in most parts, without fodder, through the winter. The size of the trees are represented as truly astonishing. A pine, near Astoria, was 46 feet in circumference, 10 feet from the ground, and more than 300 feet in height. Others from 200 to 280 feet in height, and from 20 to 40 feet in circumference, are not uncommon.

Game of almost every kind, is here abundant. Thousands of buffaloes, deer, &c. roam the forests. Beaver are numerous, and the rivers abound in the finest salmon.

Formerly, this extensive region was inhabited by various tribes of Indians. But during a few years past, great numbers of whites from the United States have emigrated thither, and formed settlements in various parts of the territory. The principal are Oregon City, Wallametta, Walla Walla, Astoria, &c. Fort Vancouver, on the Columbia, 90 miles from its mouth, is the principal seat of the British fur trade, formed by the Hudson Bay Company. It is strongly fortified, and contains a number of substantial buildings. Besides this, the Company have several other trading posts.

The territory of Oregon, for many years, was claimed both by the United States and Great Britain. But a treaty was concluded July 17, 1846, establishing the 49th parallel of latitude as the boundary between the two governments. The navigation of the Columb a river was at the same time declared free to citizens of the United States—to the Hudson Bay Company, and to British subjects trading with the same.

The capital is Oregon City, situated at the falls of the Willamette river, in a fine fertile valley, which is represented as the best grazing and wheat country in the territory.

The Columbia river forms the principal harbor. Between Cape Disappointment and Point Adams, at its mouth, it is 7 miles wide. The channel, however, is narrow, and the navigation difficult.

INDIAN WAR DANCE.

In what direction is Oregon Territory longest? What rivers can you mention? Mountains? Tribes of Indians? What settlements? What capes on the coast? What large island? What separates Vancouver's island from the territory? For what is Oregon distinguished?

UPPER CALIFORNIA.

In what direction from us is Upper California?

Upper California comprises one of the finest portions of North America. It is remarkable for the fertility of its soil, and the salubrity of its climate. It abounds in fish and game of every description, and is noted for the great variety of its vegetable productions.

Formerly it belonged to Mexico, but the inhabitants have declared their independence and established a government of their own. The interior has been but partially explored. The principal harbor on the coast is the bay of St. Francisco, which is sufficiently spacious to contain all the navies in the world. The inhabitants consist of about 6000 whites, many of whom are from the United States, and 20,000 Indians. Monterey is the capital, situated on a spacious bay of the same name, and is noted for its healthy climate. San Diego, St. Francisco and Pueble de los Angelos are the chief towns.

What large lake in the northern part? What large bay on the coast? What can you say of the bay of St. Francisco? What river empties into it? What is the capital?

BRITISH AMERICA.

In what direction from *us* is British America?

British America comprises an immense territory. In its natural features, it is exceeding diversified. Lakes, rivers, bays and gulfs occupy a large portion of its surface. Throughout the whole of this vast region, the winters are long and severely cold, and the summers short and exceedingly warm.

British America is mostly inhabited by Indians, among whom the whites have established trading houses for the purpose of procuring furs and skins. Wild animals abound, as bears, deer, beaver, moose, wolves, oxes; and water-fowl are found in immense numbers and variety.

The French originally settled Canada, and named the country New France. In 1759, it was conquered by the British, and in 1763 it was ceded by the former to the latter; and from that time it has formed a part of the British dominions.

British America is divided into Canada, New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, New Britain, Newfoundland, and several islands in the gulf of St. Lawrence.

CANADA.*

In what direction from *us* is Canada? What is its Capital?

Canada is an extensive country, remarkable for the grandeur of its lakes and rivers, and for the variety of its climate and productions.

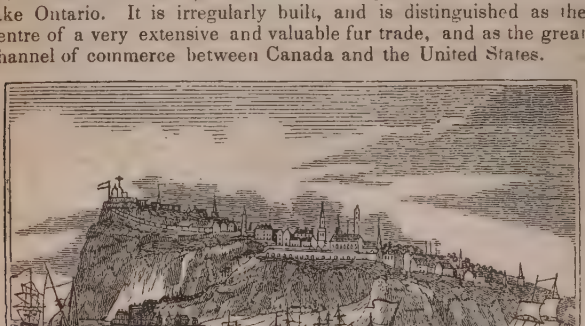
The western part, formerly called Upper Canada, has generally a level surface, and a pleasant and healthy climate, though subject to extremes of heat and cold. In the settled portion along the St. Lawrence, lakes Erie, Ontario and St. Clair, the soil is excellent, and yields abundant crops of grass, wheat, Indian corn, flax, &c. The inhabitants are mostly of English descent, and many of them emigrants from the United States.

The eastern part, formerly called Lower Canada, has an uneven surface, being intersected by parallel ranges of mountains from the sea-coast. Much of the soil is fertile. Though the winters are long and severely cold, the summers are warm and vegetation is rapid, and the products of the soil rise quickly to maturity. The principal settlements are in the valley of the St. Lawrence. From Montreal to Quebec, the margin of the river, for about one mile in breadth,

*In 1791, Canada was divided into two provinces, called Upper and Lower Canada. These continued separate and distinct until Feb. 1841, when they were again united, as formerly, under one government.

presents the appearance of one continued village. More than three fourths of the inhabitants are of French descent called "Habitans," who speak the French language and are Catholics. The remainder are English, Scotch, Irish, and their descendants. The most noted curiosity in this part of Canada are the falls of the Montmorenci, seven miles below Quebec. Near its entrance into the St. Lawrence, it passes over a rock, and descends in one sheet to the depth of 240 feet, presenting a grand and sublime spectacle.

Towns.—MONTREAL is situated on an island of the same name, in the river St. Lawrence, 180 miles above Quebec, and 200 below lake Ontario. It is irregularly built, and is distinguished as the centre of a very extensive and valuable fur trade, and as the great channel of commerce between Canada and the United States.



QUEBEC.

Quebec is situated on a promontory, at the confluence of the river St. Charles with the St. Lawrence, about 400 miles from the ocean. The city is divided into two parts, the Upper and Lower Town, by a line of steep rocks. It has a deep, safe and capacious harbor, sufficient to contain 100 sail of the line. It is so strongly fortified, both by nature and art, as to be deemed impregnable.

Kingston is pleasantly situated on lake Ontario, 190 miles from Montreal. It is regularly laid out, and noted for its safe and convenient harbor, and flourishing trade. It is the principal station for the British shipping on the lake.

QUESTIONS.

What lakes between Canada and the United States? W. R. S. H. St-C. E. O. What river connects lake Ontario to the gulf of

St. Lawrence? Its length? What large river empties into the St. Lawrence near Montreal? o. What river connects Lake Champlain to the St. Lawrence? s. [See map of New England States.] What other rivers can you mention? What towns? What part of Canada extends farthest south? Which extends farther south, Canada or Vermont? In what direction from us is Quebec? Kingston? If we were at Kingston, how many ways could we go to New York by water? What noted curiosity near Quebec? What falls in the river Niagara? Through what must the waters of lake Superior pass to reach the ocean? By whom was Canada first settled? When was it taken and ceded to the British? When was Canada divided into two provinces? What were these provinces called? When was it again united under one government? What proportion of the inhabitants of the eastern part are French? What are they called? What appearance is presented in the valley of the St. Lawrence between Montreal and Quebec? Which do you think has the coldest climate, Quebec or this place? Why? What is the extent? Government? Religion? State of society? How will you sail from Kingston to St. Johns in New Brunswick?

NEW BRUNSWICK.

In what direction from *us* is New Brunswick?

New Brunswick extends from Maine to the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and is noted for its extensive forests and valuable fisheries.

The climate, like that of Canada, is subject to great extremes of heat and cold, but is generally healthy. It is mostly a level province, and has generally a fertile soil.

The principal articles of export are *fish* and *timber*.

Chief Towns.—FREDERICKTON, the capital of New Brunswick, is situated on the river St. Johns, 80 miles from its mouth, at the head of sloop navigation. It is regularly laid out, and contains a number of elegant buildings.

St. Johns, situated on the river St. Johns, 3 miles from its mouth, is the largest and most flourishing town in the province. It has a good harbor and an extensive commerce.

MAP OF NEW BRUNSWICK. What rivers in New Brunswick? What bay on the south? What large island east? P.E. How many counties can you mention? What is its extent? Population? What is the government? State of society?

NOVA SCOTIA.

In what direction from *us* is Nova Scotia?

Nova Scotia is a narrow peninsula, 300 miles in length, and is noted for its valuable minerals of coal, gypsum, copper and iron.

It has a cold, damp climate, and in most parts a thin and unproductive soil. The principal exports are *fish*, *lumber* and *plaster of Paris*.

Chief Towns.—HALIFAX, the capital, is situated on Chebucto bay, near the centre of the province. It has a spacious and commodious harbor, and is the principal naval station of Great Britain in North America.

Liverpool and Annapolis are places of considerable trade.

What cape south of Nova Scotia? What separates Prince Edward's isle from New Brunswick and Nova Scotia? What separate Cape Breton isle from Nova Scotia? The island of Cape Breton belongs to the province of Nova Scotia. What counties can you mention? What is the extent? Population? Government? What bay between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick? For what is the Bay of Fundy remarkable? A. For its tides, which rise from 40 to 60 feet, and so rapid that animals are often overtaken and drowned.

NEW BRITAIN.

ESQUIMAUX INDIANS, SNOW HUTS, &C.

In what direction from *us* is New Britain?

New Britain is a cold, barren and desolate region. It includes Labrador, East Main, and North and South Wales, and is inhabited by various tribes of Indians, among whom the English have erected *forts* and *trading houses*, for the purpose of procuring *furs* and *skins*.

Wild animals abound in these regions; the principal of which are *moose*, *deer*, *otters*, *bears*, *beavers*, *martins*, *foxes*, *hares*, &c. During the short summer, the numerous lakes and rivers are covered with sea-fowl, which come from the south.

The method of travelling in New Britain, is in *canoes of birch bark*, which are so light that they can easily be conveyed from one stream to another. In these, the fur traders travel thousands of miles, with their furs and skins.

The *Esquimaux Indians inhabit the coast, and are small, dull, and extremely filthy, living principally on seals and whales. The †Knisteneau inhabit the interior, and are little known.

What large bay in New Britain? What bay south of Hudson's bay? 1. What lakes? Rivers, and where do they empty? What islands in the northern part? What Indians inhabit the northern part and coast of Labrador? What other tribes can you mention? What animals? What is the mode of travelling? What mountains extend through the western part? What missionary stations on the coast of Labrador? What strait between Labrador and Newfoundland? 2.

* Es'-ke-mo. † Nis'-te-no.

NEWFOUNDLAND.

BANKS OF NEWFOUNDLAND, COD FISHERY.

In what direction from *us* is Newfoundland?

Newfoundland is a large, cold and barren island, celebrated for the cod fisheries on its coast, which are the most valuable in the world.

The interior of the island has never been explored. Its shore is bold and rocky, and abounds in fine harbors. It is estimated that more than 3000 vessels and 100,000 men are annually employed in the fisheries.

St. John's, the capital, has a good harbor and considerable trade.

MAP OF NEWFOUNDLAND. What bodies of water around Newfoundland? What bays? Capes? What is its extent? Population? Government? State of society? What do you know of the interior? What bank east of Newfoundland? Its length? Width? How are cod-fish taken, with a hook or seine?

PRINCE EDWARD'S.

Prince Edward's, formerly St. John's, is a fine, fertile and level island. It is inhabited by Scotch Highlanders, and people of French origin, called Acadians.

What separates Prince Edward's Isle from New Brunswick and Nova Scotia? What cluster of Isles N. E. of it? What island east? What is the capital? Charlotte Town.

CAPE BRETON.

Cape Breton is generally a fertile and healthy island. It abounds in timber and coal mines, and its coasts in fish. It is politically united to Nova Scotia, and sends two members to the House of Assembly. Sydney is the principal town.

Map of Nova Scotia. What divides Cape Breton nearly into two equal portions? A. An arm of the sea, called the Bras d'Or. What is the extent of the island? Population? What towns?

BERMUDA ISLANDS.

In what direction from us are the Bermuda Islands?

The Bermudas consist of about 400 small islands; most of which are barren and uninhabited. Only eight possess any importance. They enjoy almost perpetual spring. The trees never lose their verdure, and the leaves only fall when new ones begin to appear. The air is so pure that sick people go there from the United States, for the recovery of their health. Georgetown, on St. George's isle, is the principal town.

Map of North America. In what ocean are the Bermudas? To what government do they belong? What is their population? Which has the pleasantest climate, the Bermudas or this state?

---

*RUSSIAN POSSESSIONS.

In what direction from us are the Russian Possessions?

The Russian Possessions comprise a cold dreary region but little known, inhabited by Indians and Esquimaux, whose pursuits are hunting and fishing. They sell their furs to the Russian traders, and receive in payment, fire arms, tobacco and other articles. The Russians have established a number of trading factories along the coast, the principal of which is New Archangel.

Questions.—What Straits separate the Russian Possessions from Asia? What Cape east of Bhering's Straits? What Cape in Asia opposite to Cape Prince of Wales? E. What Sounds on the coast? Bay? Inlet? How high is Mount St. Elias? Mount Fairweather? Which is farthest north, the Russian Possessions or *this* state?

---

*Roo'-shan.

GREENLAND.

In what direction from *us* is Greenland?

Greenland is one of the coldest and most barren countries on the globe, exhibiting little except rocks, and mountains of ice and snow. It belongs to Denmark, and is principally valuable for the whale fishery on its coast.

The Moravians have established several missionary stations here, for the purpose of instructing the natives in the principles of religion, and imparting to them the blessings of the gospel.

Formerly Greenland was supposed to be a part of North America; but late discoveries render it probable that it is a vast island.

GREENLAND, SEAL, WHITE BEAR AND BOATMEN.

The principal animals are the white bear, seal, walrus, reindeer, fox, and dog. The latter are used for drawing sledges.

The Greenlanders are small in stature, and are a weak, indolent, and superstitious race. The population is supposed to be 20,000.

What cape south of Greenland? What missionary station near cape Farewell? L. What towns or settlements in Greenland? What separates Greenland from North America? What sounds at the northern extremity of Baffin's Bay? S. W. There is a vast mine of sea coal on Disco island. What is the principal animal? Did you ever see a white bear? What can you say of the Greenlanders?

MEXICO.

How is Mexico bounded? What is its Capital?

Mexico is a large, rich, and populous country, and is noted for the fertility of its soil, for its valuable productions, and for its numerous and extensive mines of gold and silver.*

The surface is very irregular. The shores are low and flat; but the interior rises into a lofty plain, or table land, 6 or 8,000 feet high, and 1,700 miles in length.

The most valuable productions are *maize wheat, coffee, sugar, indigo, tobacco, cotton, logwood, mahogany, cochineal,* and most kinds of *tropical fruits.*

The climate varies with the elevation; and the inhabitants designate these variations by appropriate names; the *low portion* near the coast, is called the *hot country;* the *middle regions,* the *temperate country;* and the *higher regions,* the *cold country.*

GREAT SQUARE, MEXICO.

Mexico, when discovered by Europeans, was the seat of a powerful empire, and inhabited by a brave and warlike people who were acquainted with many of the arts, and had made considerable advances in civilization. Many remains of their monuments and buildings

*The mines of Mexico produce annually about twenty millions of dollars. The three principal mines are Guanaxuato, Zacatecas, and Catorce.

still exist. The most celebrated among them is the Pyramid of Cholula, 70 miles east of Mexico. It consists of four stories or terraces, and is 177 feet high, and 1,423 feet broad. It is built of unburnt bricks. On the top of the Pyramid was a temple in which they offered human sacrifices to the sun.

This vast country was conquered by the Spaniards under Fernando Cortez in 1521. It was called New Spain, and remained a Spanish Province till 1821, when the nation declared itself independent, and established a republican form of government.

Towns.—Mexico is the most ancient, and one of the most populous cities in America. It is situated near lake Tezcuco, in a delightful valley, which is 230 miles in circumference, and elevated more than 7,000 feet above the level of the ocean. It is regularly built in the form of a square, of four miles on each side. It is distinguished for the width and regularity of its streets, the splendor of its public edifices, and for its mint, at which more money is coined than at any other in the world.

Guanaxuato is a large and flourishing city, 150 miles N. W. of Mexico. The ground on which the city is built, is about 7,000 feet above the level of the sea. It is distinguished for gold and silver mines.

La Puebla is situated on a large plain, 70 miles S. E. of Mexico. The city is regularly laid out, and contains many elegant buildings. The ground on which it stands is elevated more than 7,000 feet above the level of the ocean. It is famous for its manufactures of earthen ware, iron and steel.

*Zacatecas is situated in a mountainous country, 240 miles N. W. of Mexico. It is one of the most celebrated mining places in Mexico.

Vera Cruz, the principal port on the Gulf of Mexico, is a place of great trade. It is unhealthy, and has a poor harbor.

Acapulco is the principal port on the Pacific. It is distinguished for its excellent harbor, but is a miserable, unhealthy town.

BALIZE SETTLEMENT.

This comprises a small territory in Mexico, on the east side of the Peninsula of Yucatan. It is owned by the British, and was established for the purpose of cutting logwood and mahogany.

It extends along the Bay of Honduras about 150 miles, and is inhabited by Negroes and Indians, with a few whites.

Balize, the capital, is situated on a river of the same name. It contains about 250 houses, built of wood. It is the only seaport in the Settlement, and its exports annually amount to about one million and a half of dollars.

In what direction from us is Mexico? What rivers empty into the

---

Zac-a-te'-cas.

Gulf of California? Pacific? Gulf of Mexico? What mountains? Volcano? Lakes? How many cities and towns can you mention? What is the extent of Mexico? Population? Form of government? Prevailing religion? State of society?

CENTRAL AMERICA, OR GUATIMALA.

How is Guatimala bounded? What is its Capital?

Central America, or Guatimala, is a rich, populous, and fertile country, noted for its warm climate, numerous volcanoes, and for its beautiful and picturesque scenery.

The most valuable productions are *grain*, *cochineal*,* *honey*, *cotton*, *sugar-cane*, *indigo*, *allspice*, and tropical *fruits*. The bay of Honduras is celebrated for its *logwood* and *mahogany*. Cattle and sheep are abundant.

CUTTING LOGWOOD LUMBER IN THE FOREST.

This is generally a mountainous country, and is remarkable for its

* Cochineal is an insect, which affords a most beautiful crimson tint. It feeds upon the *Nopal* or *Cactus Cochinilifer*, and is gathered by the natives. It is used in giving red colors, especially crimson and scarlet, and for making carmine. From Guatimala and Mexico, cochineal is annually exported, to the amount of two and a half millions of dollars.

volcanoes; more than twenty are constantly burning. Eruptions and earthquakes are common.

This country was conquered by the Spaniards under Pedro de Alvarado in 1524, and continued a Spanish province till 1821, when it declared itself independent of Spain, and established a republican form of government.

Towns.—St. Salvador is pleasantly situated in the midst of a fine valley, and is surrounded by a country of great fertility. Its inhabitants are chiefly employed in the indigo trade.

New Guatimala is the most populous city, and is situated in a delightful valley, nearly one mile above the level of the sea.

Old Guatimala, the former capital, was destroyed in 1830 by an earthquake. It is rebuilding, and contains several thousand inhabitants.

The other principal towns are Cartago and Leon. The chief sea ports are *Truxillo and Omoa.

In what direction from us is Central America, or Guatimala? What lake in Guatimala? N. What river is the outlet of lake Nicaragua? St. J. What bay in the northern part? H. Which has the greatest latitude, or which is farthest from the equator, Leon or *this* place? Is the climate warmer or colder in Guatimala than in *this* state? What is the extent of Guatimala? [See map of West Indies.] Population? Form of government? Religion? State of society?

WEST INDIES.

Where are the West Indies situated?

The West Indies comprise one of the most important and valuable groups of islands on the globe. They are distinguished for the fertility of their soil, the value of their productions, the amount of their exports, and for their numerous slaves.

These islands produce sugar, cotton, coffee, indigo, allspice, ginger, cocoa, tobacco; also, tropical fruits, as oranges, lemons, limes, pomegranates, citrons, pine apples, melons, &c. Maize, yams, and sweet potatoes are extensively raised for food. The mountains abound in valuable trees, as cedar, mahogany, lignum-vitæ, &c.

There are but two seasons, the *wet* and the *dry*. The climate is extremely warm and unhealthy during the summer months, from May till December; but during the remainder of the year, the weather is serene and pleasant, and the temperature cool and delightful—thus constituting one of the most healthy and agreeable

---

* Tru-keel'-yo.

SUGAR MILL.

climates on the globe. During the months of August and September, these islands are subject to dreadful hurricanes, which often do extensive injury, also to earthquakes and violent thunder.

More than three-fourths of the population are African slaves. The white inhabitants are mostly planters, and are generally wealthy, and noted for frankness, generosity, and hospitality.

The West India islands are usually divided into the Greater and Little Antilles—the Bahamas, and the Caribbean islands. Except Hayti, they all belong to some European power—principally to Great Britain, France and Spain.

A TABULAR VIEW OF THE PRINCIPAL WEST INDIA ISLANDS.

Bahamas.

Islands.	*Belonging to*	*Sq. miles.*	*Pop.*	*Chief Towns.*
Bahama Providence Turks *Guanahani	G. Britain.	5,424	20,000	Nassau.

Great Antilles.

Cuba	Spain	43,380	900,000	Havanna.
†Hayti	Independent	29,500	700,000	Cape Henry.
Jamaica	G. Britain	6,250	380,000	Kingston.
Porto Rico	Spain	3,700	390,000	St. Juan.

* The first land discovered by Columbus, Oct. 12, 1492.
† Formerly called Hispaniola, or St. Domingo.

Caribbean Islands.

Trinidad	G. Britain	1700	25000	Port of Spain
Gaudaloupe	France	675	127600	Basse Terre.
Martinique	France	370	95000	St. Pierre.
St. Lucia	G. Britain	225	16000	Carenage.
Barbadoes	G. Britain	166	102500	Bridgetown.
Tobago	G. Britain	140	16000	Scarborough.
St. Vincent	G. Britain	130	23000	Kingston.
Grenada	G. Britain	110	22500	St. George.
Santa Cruz	Denmark	100	31000	Santa Cruz.
Antigua	G. Britain	93	35000	St. John's.
Tortola	G. Britain	90	11000	Road Harbor.
St. Thomas	Denmark	40	5000	St. Thomas.

Cities.—HAVANA, the capital of the island of Cuba, is one of the largest and most flourishing cities in America, and is considered as the key of the West Indies. It carries on an extensive commerce, and has one of the best harbors in the world, capable of containing 1000 vessels without either cable or anchor. The entrance into the harbor is so narrow as to admit only one vessel at a time. It is strongly fortified, and adorned with numerous churches and other elegant edifices.

Kingston, the largest city of Jamaica, is pleasantly situated, contains many handsome buildings, and has an extensive trade.

In what direction from us are the West India islands? Which is the most northerly group of the West India islands? B. Which is the most northerly island? A. Which is the most easterly of the West India islands? B. Which is the most southerly island? T. Which is the most westerly? C. What towns on the island of Cuba? [See Map of West Indies.] To whom does Cuba belong? What is its population? Its capital? What towns in Hayti? What is its population? Capital? To whom does Jamaica belong? Its capital? To whom does Porto Rico belong? What is its capital? What cluster of islands lie about midway between Porto Rico and Nova Scotia? B.

South America.

South America is one of the richest, most fertile, and picturesque divisions of the globe. It surpasses all others in the size and grandeur of its rivers, and in the height and extent of its mountains; and is remarkable for the variety of its animal, vegetable and mineral productions.

It is naturally divided into three great sections—the western, middle, and eastern. The western consists of a broad, mountain plain, elevated about 12,000 feet above the level of the sea, crowned by the more lofty tops and peaks of the Andes. The middle section embraces the interior from north to south. It is a great expanse of country, composed of marshy or sandy plains, furrowed by three immense rivers, and their numerous branches. The eastern section, embracing the eastern part of Brazil, consists of an elevated region, but of less extent than the western.

South America is noted for the varieties of its climate. These arise principally from the vast difference in the degrees of elevation between the highest and lowest lands. In the middle section, or low country near the equator, the temperature is that of perpetual summer. The trees, plants and shrubs are constantly clothed in verdure—flowers blossom, and fruits ripen throughout the year. The declivities and plains of the mountains enjoy a cool, delightful climate, and the temperature is that of perpetual spring. On the lofty and snowy summits of the mountains, perpetual winter reigns as severe as in the frozen regions of the north.

The majestic rivers of South America leave far behind them those of the old world, both by the length of their course and in the vast amount of water they convey to the ocean. The largest of these is the Amazon. It is formed by a great number of rivers which rise in the Andes, the largest of which is the Ucayale. It flows into the Atlantic under the equator. The width of the mouth is stated by some writers at 150, and by others at 180 miles. Boat navigation commences at Jaen, and it is said that vessels of 400 or 500 tons, may sail from the mouth throughout almost its whole extent. Its depth 1500 miles from the ocean, is stated at from 30 to 40 fathoms. The banks are covered with immense and impenetrable forests, where the foot of man has rarely or never trod, but where multitudes of wild and ferocious animals roam undisturbed. Here are found a great variety of venomous serpents, and birds of the most beautiful plumage and song, and apes of the most fantastic appearance. The waters swarm with alligators, turtles, and a great variety of fish. The second river in South America is the La Plata. Its majestic course is full as broad as that of the Amazon, and its immense opening at its mouth might be considered as a gulf. At the distance of 200 miles from the sea it is 30 miles in width.

The vegetable kingdom in South America is noted for its variety and abundance. Among the trees, the most remarkable is the palm, of which there are eighty-seven varieties, which are equally distinguished for their beauty and size, and for their various uses, furnishing wine, oil, wax, and sugar. Besides these, the cocoa, banana, cinchana and a multitude of others abound, common to the tropical and temperate climates.

The potato, cocoa, vanilla and maize are native plants, and the

soil yields a great number of medicinal plants and dye stuffs, and resinous trees. The plantations of Guiana yield all the productions of the West Indies. Cayenne produces spices and Paraguay matte or tea. Almost every variety of grain is cultivated, and flowering shrubs exist in the greatest abundance. The most delicious fruits, as oranges, citrons, pine apples, pomegranates, pears, apples, figs, grapes, &c. grow almost spontaneously in the greatest plenty.

In the animal kingdom, the Jaguar, or American tiger, the puma, or cougar, and the ocelet, are the principal beasts of prey. The lama, guanaco and vicuna, of the sheep kind—the tapir and peccary, of the hog kind, are peculiar to the countries on the Andes. The alligator or caymen attains to a length of 15 feet or more, and there are numerous serpents of monstrous size. The birds are numerous and noted for the brilliancy of their plumage, and the sweetness of their song. The condor is the largest bird of flight known in the world. In the great grassy plains, or pampas, in the United Provinces and Brazil, roam numberless herds of wild horses and cattle, sprung from those brought to the country by Europeans; the latter are so numerous that they are killed merely for their hides.

The mineral kingdom abounds in the most precious productions. The diamond mines of Brazil are the most prolific in the world, and the extensive mines of gold, silver, platina and mercury, excel those of any other part of the globe. In Chili there is scarcely a mountain without gold, or a river without golden sand. Iron, lead, tin, copper, salt, &c. are abundant, but are little sought after.

South America formerly was divided into provinces, most of which were under the government of Spain and Portugal. But these have become independent of these powers, and with the exception of Brazil, have established republican forms of government. Considerable attention is paid to education. Several universities have been founded, and information has been extensively diffused by means of books and newspapers.

The population* of South America is composed of Whites, Indians, Negroes. Mestizoes, Mulattoes, and Samboes. The higher classes of the whites are well educated and wealthy, but dissolute in their morals; the lower classes are ignorant, indolent and generally vicious.

SOUTH AMERICA.

How is South America bounded?

New Grenada?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Venezuela?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Equador?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?

* The Whites that are born in America, are called Creoles—those born in Spain, Chapatones. The mulattoes are descendants of whites and negroes, and the mestizoes of whites and Indians;—and the Samboes of negroes and Indians.

Guiana ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Peru ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Bolivia ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Brazil ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Paraguay ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Uruguay ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Buenos Ayres ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Chili ?	Capital ?	Chief Towns ?	Rivers ?
Patagonia ?	———	—— ———	Rivers ?

RIVERS.

Where does Port Desire river rise, in what direction does it run, and where does it empty ? Rio Negro ? Rio Colorado ? Saladillo ? Dulce ? Salado ? Vermejo or Grand ? Pilcomayo ? Paraguay ? Uruguay ? Parana ? San Francisco ? Parnaiba ? Tocantins ? *Xingua ? Tapajos ? Madeira ? Puras ? Javary ? Amazon ? Negro ? Caqueta ? Putumayo ? Napo ? Essequibo ? Orinoco ? Magdalena ? Cauca ?

ISLANDS.

Where is the island of Trinidad ?
Where is the island of Joannes or Marajo ?
Where are Martin Vas and Trinidade ?
Where are the Falkland Isles ?
Where is the island of Tierra del Fuego ?
Where is Staten Land ?
Where is the island of Chiloe ?
Where are the Juan Fernandez Isles ?
Where is the island of St. Felix ?

CAPES.

Where is Cape or Point Gallinas ?
Where is Cape St. Roque ?
Where is Cape Horn ?
Where is Cape Blanco ?
Where is Cape North ?
Where is Cape Frio ?
Where are Cape St. Maria and Cape St. Antonio ?
Where is Cape Corientes ?
Where is Cape Blanco ?

STRAITS.

Where is the strait of Magellan ?
Where is the strait of Le Maire ?
Where is Cockburn Channel ?

* Zin'-gua.

LAKES.

Where is Lake Titicaca?
Where is Silver Lake?
Where is Lake Oberava?
Where is Lake de-los-Palos?
Where is Lake Maracaybo?

BAYS.

Where is Blanco Bay?
Where is the Bay of Paranagua?
Where is the Bay of All Saints?
Where is the Bay of Choco?

GULFS.

Where is the Gulf of Venezuela?
Where is the Gulf of Darien?
Where is the Gulf of Panama?
Where is the Gulf of Guayaquil?
Where is the Gulf of Penas?

MOUNTAINS.

How far do the Andes extend?
Where is Mount Sorata, the highest peak of the Andes?
Where is Mount Chimborazo? Mount Chillan?
Where is Cotopaxi, the highest volcano on the globe?

NEW GRENADA.

How is New Grenada bounded? What is its capital?

New Grenada is a large, populous, and interesting State. It is distinguished for its elevated plains, lofty mountains, and for the great variety of its climate and productions.

The population is comprised chiefly in the valleys between the mountains, which are extremely fertile, producing cotton, grain, coffee, tobacco, and the various tropical fruits in abundance. The mountains are rich in mineral treasures. The gold and silver mines yield about two millions of dollars annually. There are mines of copper, tin, and lead; and on the coast is a valuable pearl fishery.

The most noted curiosity in New Grenada, is the cataract of Te-quén da-ma, in the river Bogota, or Funza, 15 miles from Bogota. Above the falls, the river is more than 400 feet wide, but is suddenly compressed to 35 or 40 feet in width, and at two bounds plunges down a descent of more than 600 feet, into an abyss below.

The natural bridge of Iconanzo, on the route from Bogota to Popayan, extends across a chasm more than 360 feet in depth, at the bottom of which flows a rapid torrent.

Cities.—Bogota is situated in the midst of a fertile plain, 8000 feet above the level of the sea. It is handsomely built, and contains many elegant edifices; among which, are a cathedral, university, government palace, and numerous churches and convents.

Carthagena, the principal port of the republic, is strongly fortified, and has an excellent harbor and considerable commerce. It is generally well built, and contains several handsome churches and convents.

In what direction from us is New Grenada? What cities can you mention in New Grenada? What rivers? In what direction is New Grenada longest? If we were at Bogota, the capital, to-day, in what direction would the sun be from us at 12 o'clock? Could we reach home by land? How? The Isthmus of Darien is 15 miles wide; how long would it take you to cross it, if you should travel 3 miles an hour? Under what form of government is New Granada? What is the prevailing religion? State of society? What is the extent? Population?

VENEZUELA.

How is Venezuela bounded? What is its capital?

Venezuela consists mostly of a vast plain, watered by the Oronoco and its numerous branches.

The climate is warm throughout the year, and the soil remarkably fertile, producing sugar, coffee, indigo, cotton, and tobacco, and tropical fruits in abundance. The plains, or llanos, as far as the eye can reach, are covered with tall grass, on which graze vast herds of horses, oxen, and mules. The hides of these animals constitute one of the principal articles of the commerce of the country.

Cities.—Caraccas is pleasantly situated in a valley, about 12 miles from the coast. Its streets are broad, well built, and cross each other at right angles. In 1812, the city was mostly destroyed by an earthquake, and about 12,000 persons buried beneath its ruins. It is mostly rebuilt, and contains many elegant edifices. La Guayra, the port of Caraccas, has an extensive trade.

In what direction from us is Venezuela? In what direction is Venezuela longest? Do you think the R. Oronoco resembles the figure 6? What lake and gulf in the N. W. part? What cities can you mention in Venezuela? Rivers? If you were at Esmaralda to-day at 12 o'clock, in what direction would your shadow fall?

Under what form of government is Venezuela? What is the prevailing religion? State of society? What is the extent? Population?

EQUADOR.

DISTANT VIEW OF THE CITY OF QUITO AND SURROUNDING MOUNTAINS

How is Equador bounded? What is its capital?

Equador embraces the most interesting portion of South America. It is remarkable for its lofty mountains, its elevated plains, and its climate of perpetual spring.

Two ridges of the Andes extend through the western part, between which is one of the finest plains on the globe. It is about 30 miles in width, and at an elevation of more than 9000 feet above the level of the sea. Perpetual spring reigns in this delightful and magnificent valley; vegetation never ceases; and the meadows and trees are crowned with constant verdure.

Cities.—Quito is one of the finest cities in the world. It is situated on the eastern slope of Mount Pichincha, and is adorned with several magnificent churches and convents. It has two celebrated universities; and its inhabitants are noted for their vivacity and politeness.

Guayaquil, situated on a Gulf of the same name, has a good harbor, and is one of the most flourishing commercial cities in America.

In what direction from us is Equador? What noted mountains in Equador? Chimborazo, Cotopaxi, Antisana, and Pichincha. What cities in Equador? Rivers? Which do you think would be the most pleasant place of residence, *this State*, or Equador? In what direction is Equador longest? If we were at Omaguas, could we sail to any place in this State? How? Under what form of government is Equador? What is the prevailing religion? State of society? What is the extent? Population?

GUIANA.

How is Guiana bounded? What are its Capitals?

Guiana is a level, warm, and fertile country, remarkable for the variety of its valuable productions. The principal settlements are along the coast; the interior is in possession of native Indians.

Guiana is overspread with the most luxuriant vegetation, abounding in the finest woods, in fruits of every description, and in an infinite variety of both rare and useful plants. The chief productions are sugar, coffee, cotton, cocoa, maize, indigo, &c.

The fruit trees are in great variety, and the fruits they yield of the most exquisite delicacy and flavor. The orange and lemon trees are in bloom throughout the year, and loaded with ripe and ripening fruit. Wild animals and beasts of prey are numerous. Among these the jaguar, and couger are the most powerful and ferocious. In the rivers are found the alligator, the tapir, and the manati, or sea cow. There are numerous kinds of serpents; of these, the boa, or aboma is the largest. It is an amphibious snake, from 30 to 40 feet in length. It is perfectly indifferent as to its prey, and destroys, when hungry, any animal that comes within its reach. The vampire bat is also found in Guiana, and grows to an enormous size, measuring about thirty-two and a half inches between the tips of the two wings. It sucks the blood of men and cattle when they are fast asleep. After it is full, it disgorges the blood, and begins to suck afresh, until it reduces the sufferer to a state of great weakness.

Guiana is divided into three parts;—the western is owned by the English, the eastern by the French, and the middle by the Dutch.

Cities.—Georgetown, or Stabroek, the capital of English Guiana, is situated at the mouth of the Demarary river.

Paramaribo, the capital of Dutch Guiana, is pleasantly situated on the Surinam river, 18 miles from the sea.

Cayenne, the capital of French Guiana, is situated on an island of the same name. It has a good harbor, which is well defended by a castle.

In what direction from us is Guiana? How is Guiana divided? What are its capitals? Where are the principal settlements? Who possess the interior? For what is Guiana remarkable? What can you say of the fruit trees? Of the animals? Describe the Vampire Bat. What is the Government of Guiana? How far is it from Georgetown to Monrovia? What naval action took place N. E. of Guiana, and when?

---

†PERU.

How is Peru bounded? What is its Capital?

Peru is a large country, distinguished for the richness of its mines, its valuable productions, and the great varieties of its climate.

The western part, between the Andes and the Pacific, 40 or 50 miles in width, consists mostly of sandy, barren plains. The middle portion, lying between the two great ridges of the mountains, consists of table lands, 8000 feet above the level of the sea. Perpetual spring reigns in this region, and vegetation blooms throughout the year. The part east of the mountains, consists of immense plains, or *pampas*, covered only with grass.

The most important productions are cotton, grain, cocoa, sugar, coffee, and Peruvian bark. It has mines of gold, silver, copper, ‡mercury, and lead.

Peru at the present time is divided into two States, called North Peru and South Peru. The capital of the former is Lima; that of the latter, Cuzco.

Cities.—§Lima is situated on a small river in the midst of a spacious and delightful valley, 7 miles from the Pacific. It enjoys a perpetual summer climate, and is distinguished for the magnificence of its public buildings, and the rich ornaments of the churches. It was founded by Pizarro, in 1535. Callao is the port of Lima.

Cuzco, 550 miles S. E. of Lima, was the ancient capital of the Peruvian Empire, founded in 1043, by Manca Capac, the first Inca of Peru. It was taken by the Spaniards under Pizarro, in 1534. It

---

* Es-se-kee'-bo. † Ber-bees'.

‡ Peru is the only country in America that produces mercury, or quicksilver.

§ Lee'-ma.

contained a magnificent temple of the sun, and other edifices, decorated with gold, and adorned with the idols of the various nations subdued by the Incas. The city still preserves many monuments of its ancient grandeur.

In what direction from us is Peru? What large river rises in Peru and empties into the Atlantic? What other rivers in Peru? What mountains extend through the western part of Peru? A. What cities on the Pacific? What towns among the Andes? What towns east of the Andes? Which is the most northerly city in Peru? Which is the most southerly? Under what form of government is Peru? What is the prevailing religion? State of society? What is the extent? Population?

BRAZIL.

How is Brazil bounded? What is its Capital?

Brazil is a country of vast extent, and one of the richest regions of the earth. It is greatly celebrated for its beauty and fertility, and is distinguished for its navigable rivers, for the variety of its animal and vegetable productions, and for its mines of gold, silver and diamonds.

The climate of Brazil, for the most part, is that of perpetual summer, and the luxuriance of its vegetation is unequalled. The chief products are sugar, tobacco, indigo, corn, the most delicious fruits, and various kinds of dye woods. Agriculture is in a backward state. Cattle are raised in immense numbers. The great farms contain from 2 to 40,000 head, which are killed chiefly for their hides. Mining is an important branch of industry.

Viewed from the sea, Brazil appears rugged and mountainous; but on a nearer approach, its appearance is highly romantic and picturesque, clothed as it is with the most luxuriant vegetation, its hills covered with thick woods, and its valleys with verdure.

The interior is an immense wilderness, overspread with impenetrable forests, which abound in beautiful and useful wood, adapted for dyeing, cabinet work and ship building. The woods are filled with aromatic plants and flowering shrubs. Wild animals are numerous, and birds of the most brilliant plumage. In the interior, are vast herds of wild cattle and horses, which are hunted only for their skins. The forests swarm with insects. Serpents are numerous, some of which are from 25 to 40 feet in length.

Were we to examine all parts of the globe, we probably should not find a pleasanter country than Brazil—one blessed with a more gen-

BRAZILIAN FOREST.

ial climate or a more fertile soil—more happily diversified with wood and water, or with abundance of navigable rivers, or more famed for its precious produce of gold and diamonds. It comprises within its limits nearly all the most valued productions of the earth. Cotton, sugar, coffee, rice, &c. abound in the northern part, and wheat and other grains, fruits, &c. in the southern parts and mountainous districts.

Brazil is more particularly celebrated for its gold and diamonds, which abound in the higher regions of the interior, and are chiefly found in the beds of the mountain torrents where the stream is most rapid, or among the gravel or pebbles of the deep valleys.

The white population is principally in the southern part, and along the coast. The remainder is inhabited by Indians, who are extremely hostile to the whites.

The western part of Brazil is called Amazonia, which embraces the interior of South America. It is inhabited entirely by Indians, of whom little is known.

Cities.—Rio Janeiro is well situated for trade, and is distinguished for its fine harbor and extensive commerce. The town is well built, and adorned with numerous churches and convents.

Pernambuco is a flourishing place, and has a large trade, principally in cotton.

In what direction from us is Brazil? In what direction is Brazil longest? What towns can you mention in Brazil? Rivers? Which part of Brazil do you imagine is warmest? Why? If we were at Almeida to-day, in what direction would our shadows fall at 12

o'clock? How many States border on Brazil on the west? Under what form of government is Brazil? What is the prevailing religion? State of society? What is the extent? Population?

BOLIVIA.

How is Bolivia bounded? What is its Capital?

Bolivia resembles Peru in climate, soil, and productions. It is famous for its silver mines, particularly those of Potosi, which are the richest on the globe.

Bolivia was formerly included in the province of Buenos Ayres. In 1825 it was erected into a state, and named after Bolivar, the distinguished South American General.

The silver mines of Potosi, so celebrated throughout the world, were accidentally discovered in 1545, by a Peruvian Indian named Hualpa, or Hualco, as he was pursuing some wild goats up the mountain. Arriving at a steep place, he laid hold of a bush to assist him in his course, but the shrub, unable to support his weight, was torn up by the roots, and disclosed to the hunter a rich mass of silver. For a time, Hualpa concealed the knowledge of his discovery even from his friends. But his sudden and abounding wealth soon excited their suspicions, and they at length induced him to reveal the secret to them. A quarrel happening between him and his Indian associates, Hualpa made known the existence of the mine to his master, who was a Spaniard. From the time of the first discovery to 1803, these mines yielded 1,476,372,174 dollars in silver, besides a large amount in gold.

Cities.—Chuquisaca, or La Plata, is pleasantly situated in the western part. It is generally well built and noted for its beautiful scenery.

Potosi is situated on a declivity of the mountain which contains the celebrated mines of Potosi. The streets are narrow and irregular. The houses are built of stone or brick, of only one story, with balconies of wood, but without chimneys. The city contains a college, several monasteries and convents and 19 churches, and a mint. Potosi is the centre of trade between the United Provinces and the Pacific, and is noted for the gaiety and dissipation of its inhabitants.

In what direction from us is Bolivia? What extensive Desert in the western part? A. What seaport on the coast? C. or Port ——. What town among the Andes? L-P. What town on the Pilcomayo? C. On the Vermeja? T. What town in the interior? C. Under

what form of government is Bolivia? What is the prevailing religion? State of society? What is the extent? Population?

BUENOS AYRES.

How is Buenos Ayres bounded? What is its Capital?

This is an extensive country, distinguished for its majestic rivers, vast plains, and the variety of its valuable productions.

The northern and western parts of this vast region are mountainous and unproductive, and inhabited principally by Indians. The central and southern parts consist of immense plains called Pampas, similar to the Prairies in the United States. They are about 1500 miles in length and 500 in breadth, exhibiting the appearance of a vast sea of coarse grass.

BUENOS-AYRES.

Innumerable herds of wild cattle, horses, ostriches and other animals occupy these plains. The inhabitants are the Gauchos, who are of Spanish origin, but who lead a life of wild independence, living on horseback, and the Pampas Indians, who lead the same kind of life as the Gauchos, with whom they are perpetually at war. Armed with his *lasso*, or leather strap, the Gaucho or Indian rides on horseback, and with great dexterity throws it round the neck of a wild horse, bull, or other animal which he wishes to take, and by a sudden jerk, throws the animal to the ground, and gallops off with his booty.

The productions are numerous, consisting of most kinds of grain, sugar, wine, tobacco, and the various fruits of the torrid and temperate zones. There are rich mines of gold, silver, copper and lead. The principal exports are hides, tallow and beef.

Cities.—Buenos Ayres is pleasantly situated on the La Plata, one hundred and eighty miles from its mouth. It is regularly built, and is rapidly increasing in commerce and population. It is strongly fortified, and celebrated for the mildness and salubrity of its climate. The La Plata is here 30 miles wide, but the navigation is dangerous, owing to rocks and shoals, and frequent storms.

Mendoza is pleasantly situated on the Andes, and the most convenient route over the mountains passes through it. Tucuman and Cordova are celebrated for their universities.

In what direction from us is Buenos Ayres? What towns can you mention in Buenos Ayres? Rivers? Lake? In what direction is Buenos Ayres longest? Which part of Buenos Ayres is warmest? Why? Which part of the United States is warmest? Why? If you wished to travel from Buenos Ayres to Valparaiso, what mountains must you cross? What does Buenos Ayres in Spanish signify? A. Good air. If you were at Tucuman, what would you do in order to return to this place? Under what form of government is Buenos Ayres? What is the prevailing religion? State of society? What is the extent? Population?

PARAGUAY.

How is Paraguay bounded? What is its capital?

Paraguay is a small, level, and fertile State, remarkable for its healthy climate, and for the variety and value of its productions.

The vast plains of Paraguay abound in immense herds of wild cattle, and the forests are filled with birds of the most beautiful plumage. Tropical fruits, corn, wine, sugar, rice, indigo, and various drugs, are produced in abundance. But the most noted production in this state is Matte, or Paraguay tea, which is used in most parts of S. America as the tea of China is with us.

Paraguay declared its independence in 1813, and soon after, was governed by Dr. Francia, under the title of Dictator. He ruled with absolute sway until his death in 1840. He prohibited all intercourse with the rest of the world, and if foreigners entered the country, they were detained in prison. He lived without pomp or parade, and labored to promote the happiness of his subjects. He established lyceums and schools; and all the inhabitants were taught read-

ing, writing, and arithmetic. Every person was obliged to work at some occupation, and idleness and beggary were unknown. In consequence of this policy, the state increased in wealth and population, and enjoyed the blessings of peace and tranquillity, while the surrounding countries were torn and distracted by civil wars and other intestine commotions. Since the death of Dr. Francia, Paraguay has abandoned her former policy of exclusiveness, and invited all nations to commercial and other friendly intercourse.

Cities.—ASSUMPTION is situated in the midst of a fertile country. The climate is temperate and healthy, and throughout the year the trees are either in foliage or loaded with fruit. It contains several elegant edifices.

Conception and Villa Rica are the next most important towns.

In what direction from us is Paraguay? Between what two rivers is it situated? What towns in it? In what direction is it longest? When did it become independent? What singular herb in Paraguay? What use is made of Matte? Under what form of government is Paraguay? What is the prevailing religion? State of society? What is the extent? Population?

URUGUAY.

How is Uruguay bounded? What is its capital?

Uruguay is a small State, formerly known under the name of the Banda Oriental. It is generally level and fertile, and the climate healthy.

On account of its favorable situation for commercial pursuits, this country was highly prized both by Brazil and Buenos Ayres, and great exertions made by each to obtain possession of it. After a war of several years, in which both governments became exhausted, it was declared independent of both, under the name of the "Oriental Republic of the Uruguay."

MONTE VIDEO, the capital, is situated 120 miles east of Buenos Ayres, on the La Plata. It is a well built city, with wide and regular streets, and has one of the best harbors on the river, which is here 80 miles wide. It has a considerable trade, principally in hides, tallow, and dried beef.

In what direction from us is Uruguay? Which do you think is the largest, Uruguay or this State? How much? In what direction is Uruguay longest? Which do you suppose is warmest, Maldonado or this place? Why? If we were at Monte Video, in what direction would the sun be from us at 12 o'clock? In which State should you prefer to live, Paraguay or Uruguay? Why? Under what

form of government is Uruguay? What is the prevailing religion? State of society? What is the extent? Population?

CHILI.*

How is Chili bounded? Its Capital?

Chili consists of a long, narrow tract, lying between the Andes and the Pacific. It is one of the most healthy, fertile and beautiful countries in the world.

Chili has numerous mines of *gold*, *silver*, *copper*, *tin* and *iron*; and produces *grain*, *sugar*, *cotton*, *oil*, *wine* and *fruits* in abundance.

In some parts of Chili it seldom or never rains; but the country is well watered by means of the numerous small rivers which flow from the Andes into the Pacific. Among the Andes in Chili are fourteen volcanoes which are in a constant state of eruption. Earthquakes frequently happen, which often do extensive injury.

The *Aricanians*, an independent tribe of warlike Indians, inhabit the southern part of Chili. They are distinguished for their love of liberty, bravery and humanity.

Towns.—SANTIAGO was founded in the year 1541. It is situated in the midst of a beautiful plain, about 90 miles from Valparaiso. Its houses are built of brick, and only one story, on account of earthquakes. It has considerable trade. Its inhabitants are distinguished for gayety and hospitality.

Valparaiso, the port of Santiago, is the most commercial city in Chili. It has an excellent harbor, and considerable trade.

In what direction from us is Chili? What towns on the Pacific? What remarkable summit of the Andes in Chili? Mount Chillan. How high is Mount Chillan? What island near the southern part of Chili? c. What extensive Desert north of Chili? A. On what river is Santiago situated? A. On the river Maypo. Under what form of government is Chili? What is the prevailing religion? State of society? What is the extent? Population?

PATAGONIA.

How is Patagonia bounded?

Patagonia is a cold, inhospitable region, of which little is known except the coasts. It is inhabited by various tribes of Indians, who are said to be of gigantic size.

* Chee'-le.

In what direction from us is Patagonia? What are the three principal rivers of Patagonia? S-C. P-D. R-N. What straits separate it from Tierra del Fuego? What two gulfs on the eastern coast? What three gulfs on the western coast? G. P. C. What Archipelago on the western coast? What peninsula? Under what form of government is Patagonia? What is the prevailing religion? State of society?

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF SOUTH AMERICA.

How will you sail from Chagres to Panama?
How will you sail from Panama to Assumption?
What singular *herb* do you find here?
How will you sail from Assumption to Cuzco?
What can you say respecting Cuzco?
How will you sail from Cuzco to Bogota?
What curiosity will you find near this place?
Why are there no large rivers that empty into the Pacific ocean?
What river empties into the Atlantic by several mouths? o.
Through what waters must the Blanco river pass to reach the Atlantic?
In what direction from us is Cape Horn?
Suppose you were at Cape Horn *to-day*, at 12 o'clock, in what direction would your shadow fall?
Are the seasons in South America the same as ours? Why?
Which has the greatest latitude, or which is farther from the Equator, Cape Horn or this place?
Which part of South America do you suppose is warmest, the southern or northern part of it? Why?
What prevents South America from being a continent by itself?

SOUTH AMERICAN ISLANDS.

These consist of several groups. The most noted among them, are Terra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, South Georgia, Sandwich Land, South Shetland, and South Orkneys. They are utterly dreary and desolate, buried in ice and snow, and in most cases, uninhabited by a single human being. Their shores, however, abound with the sea elephant, fur seal, and with legions of sea birds of gigantic size, the most remarkable of which are the penguin and albatross.

These islands are frequented by vessels from Stonington and other ports in New England, for the purpose of procuring seals, the furs of which are remarkably fine and valuable. These islands are indented by numerous bays, which form many excellent harbors.

MAP OF THE WORLD. In what direction from Patagonia are the Falkland Islands? Terra del Fuego? S. Georgia? Sandwich Land? South Orkneys? South Shetland Isles? Should you like to live on any of these islands? Why not?

Europe.

Europe is the smallest of the five grand divisions of the globe, but is distinguished for the number, learning, bravery and enterprise of its inhabitants—for the superior cultivation of the soil—for the flourishing condition of the arts, sciences and commerce, and for its power and influence over other parts of the world.

It is much noted for the salubrity of the air, and the fruitfulness of its soil. Instead of those uncultivated and extensive wastes which are met with in other portions of the earth. it presents extensive fortified cities, adorned with magnificent edifices, large and populous towns, and innumerable villages.

It is well watered by its numerous rivers, and remarkable for its bays, gulfs, and inland seas, and for its great natural advantages for commercial pursuits.

It produces most kinds of grain, beautiful garden plants, abundance of fruits, such as oranges, lemons, figs, almonds, olives, pomegranates and dates; also flax, hemp, tobacco, madder, and the best of wines, and a great variety of wood for house and ship building. It yields most kinds of metals and minerals of superior excellence, and in great abundance.

In no part of the world are manufactures carried to such perfection as in several European countries, especially in Great Britain, France and Germany The inhabitants work up not only European but also foreign products, and supply all the wants and luxuries of

life. Commerce is extensively carried on, promoted by well constructed roads, railways and canals, and extends to all quarters of the world.

Europe is the seat of arts and science. To her belongs the honor of discovering the most important truths; of producing the most useful inventions, the finest productions of genius, and the improvement of all the sciences.

Literature has reached a higher degree of perfection in Europe than in any other part of the globe. There are numerous universities and colleges which provide for the higher branches of education. These are generally on a much larger scale than those in the United States. The common branches of education, however, are much neglected, and not so generally diffused among the great mass of the people as in this country. A great proportion of the poor are unable to read or write. Germany, France and England are most noted for proficiency in literature and science, and Prussia, Scotland, Switzerland, Denmark, Norway and Sweden, for the encouragement of elementary schools and the general diffusion of knowledge.

GEOGRAPHICAL AND HISTORICAL TABLE,

Countries.	Pop. on sq. m	Present Sovereign.	Born.	Began to reign.	Religion.
Russia,	22	Nicholas I.	1796	1825	Greek Church.
Austria,	105	Ferdinand,	1793	1835	Catholic.
Turkey,	46	Mahmoud II.	1785	1808	Mahometan.
France,	146	Louis Philippe,	1773	1830	Catholic.
Sweden,	13	Oscar II.	1799	1844	Protestant,
Spain,	57	Isabella II.	1830	1833	Catholic.
Norway,	6	Oscar II.	1799	1844	Protestant.
Prussia,	94	Fred. William III.	1770	1797	Protestant.
Great Britain,	141	Victoria,	1819	1837	Protestant.
Naples,	152	Ferdinand II.	1810	1830	Catholic.
Portugal,	90	Donna Maria,	1819	1826	Catholic.
Ireland,	203	Victoria,	1819	1837	Catholic.
Bavaria,	111	Louis I.	1786	1825	Catholic.
Sardinia,	146	Charles Amadeus,	1800	1831	Catholic.
Belgium,	216	Leopold I.	1790	1831	Catholic.
Holland,	208	William I.	1772	1813	Protestant.
Denmark,	72	Frederick VI.	1768	1808	Protestant.
Hanover,	87	William IV.	1765	1830	Protestant.
Roman States,	162	Pius IX.	1788	1846	Catholic.
Wirtemburg,	172	William I.	1781	1816	Protestant.
Saxony,	161	Frederic Augustus	1797	1830	Protestant.
Baden,	167	Chas. Leop. Fred.	1790	1830	Protestant.
Tuscany,	174	Leopold II.	1797	1824	Catholic.
Greece,		Otho,	1815	1832	Greek Church.

Questions.—How many square miles does Europe embrace? [See Map of the World.] What is the population of Europe? Which has the greatest number of inhabitants, South America, Europe, or Africa? How happens it that Europe, being so much smaller, contains so many more inhabitants than either of these other divisions? In which of these divisions do you imagine the land is best cultivated? Which do you think has the best roads and bridges? In which are the people most learned?

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF EUROPE.

How is Europe bounded?

Portugal?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Spain?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
France?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Belgium?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Holland?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Germany?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Denmark?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Switzerland?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Italy?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Austria?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Turkey?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Greece?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Prussia?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Russia?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Sweden?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Norway?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
England?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Scotland?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Ireland?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?

RIVERS.

Where does the river Ebro rise, what course does it run, and where does it empty? Guadalquiver? Guadiana? Tagus? Douro? Minho? Garonne? Loire? Seine? Rhine? Rhone? Saone? Po? Tiber? Danube? Drave? Save? Pruth? Dniester? Bog? Dneiper? Donetz? Don? Volga? Ural? Ousa? Petchora? Mezene? Dwina? Onega? Duna? Niemen? Vistula? Oder? Elbe? Weser? Ems? Tornea? Glomma? Thames? Severn? Shannon?

LAKES.

Where are Lakes Ladoga and Onega?
Where are Lakes Wenner and Wetter?
Where are Lakes Constance and Geneva? **A. In Switzerland.**

GULFS.

Where is the Gulf of Venice?
Where is the Gulf of Taranto?
Where is the Gulf of Genoa?
Where is the Gulf of Lyons?
Where is the Zuyder Zee?
Where is the Gulf of Bothnia?
Where is the Gulf of Finland?
Where is the Gulf of Riga?
Where is the Gulf of Onega?
Where is the Gulf of Salonica?
Where is the Bay of Biscay?

SEAS.

Where is the Caspian Sea?
Where is the Sea of Azoff?
Where is the Black Sea?
Where is the Sea of Marmora?
Where is the Archipelago?
Where is the Mediterranean?
Where is the Irish Sea?
Where is the North Sea?
Where is the Baltic Sea?
Where is the White Sea?

STRAITS.

Where is the Strait of Constantinople?*
Where are the Dardanelles?
Where is the Strait of Otranto?
Where is the Strait of Messina?
Where is the Strait of Bonifacio?
Where is the Strait of Gibraltar?
Where is the Strait of Dover?

CHANNELS.

Where is the British Channel?
Where is St. George's Channel?
Where is Bristol Channel?
Where is North Channel?
Where is the Skager-rack?
Where is the Cattegat?

*The Strait of Constantinople, the ancient Bosphorus, connects the Black Sea with the sea of Marmora. The Dardanelles connect the sea of Marmora with the Archipelago.

ISLANDS.

Where are the Luffoden Islands?
Where is Iceland?
Where are the Faroe Islands?
Where are the Shetland and Orkney Islands?
Where are the Hebrides or Western Islands?
Where are the Isle of Man and Anglesey?
Where are Guernsey, Jersey, Alderney, Sark and Wight?
Where are the Scilly Islands?
Where are Belle Isle and the Isle of Rhe?
Where are Ivica, Majorca, and Minorca?
Where are Sardinia, Corsica, and Elba?
Where are the Lipari Islands?
Where is the Island of Sicily?
Where is the Malta or Melita?
Where is the Island of Candia?
Where are Cyprus and Rhodes?
Where are Negropont, Scio, Samos, Patmos?
Where are the Ionian Islands?
Where are Zealand and Funen?
Where are Gothland, Aland, and Oland?

PENINSULAS.

Where is the Peninsula of Crimea?
Where is the Peninsula of Morea?*

MOUNTAINS.

Where are the Dofrafield Mountains?
Where are the Pyrenees?
Where are the Alps?
Where are the Appenines?
Where are the Carpathian Mountains?
Where are the Balkan Mountains?
Where are the Ural Mountains?
Where are the Cevennes?
Where are the Sierra Noveda, Toledo, and Cantabrian Mountains?

VOLCANOES.

Where is Mount Etna?
Where is Mount Vesuvius?
Where is Mount Hecla?

CAPES.

Where is the North Cape? Cape Naze? Land's End? Lizard Point? Cape Clear? Cape La Hogue? Cape Ortegal? Cape Finisterre? Cape St. Vincent? Cape Spartivento? Cape Matapan?

*Morea, the southern part of Greece.

BRITISH EMPIRE.

In what direction from us is Great Britain? What is its Capital?

The British Empire is the most extensive, and with the exception of China, the most populous on the globe. It is distinguished for its great political influence, for the extent of its commerce and manufactures, for its vast and powerful navy, for its well disciplined army, and for the enterprise, intelligence and activity of its inhabitants.

The British Empire comprehends the kingdoms of England, Scotland, and Ireland, with the principality of Wales; Gibraltar and the island of Malta in Europe; the greatest part of Hindostan and the island of Ceylon in Asia; the Cape of Good Hope, Sierra Leone, several forts on the coast of Guinea and the islands of St. Helena and Mauritius in Africa; British America and Honduras in North America; Jamaica, Barbadoes and several other West India islands; English Guiana in South America; New South Wales in Australia; Van Dieman's Land, and other islands in various parts of the globe.

In what direction from Great Britain is Hindostan? Canada? Cape of Good Hope? Honduras? Van Dieman's Land? Guiana? Malta? Jamaica? Gibraltar? It is said that the sun is always shining on some part of the British empire,—how can that be? How is the kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland divided? In what part of the island of Great Britain is England? Scotland? Wales? What sea and two channels lie between Great Britain and Ireland? Which extends farthest south, Great Britain or Ireland? North? In what direction is Great Britain longest? Ireland?

ENGLAND.

How is England bounded? What is its Capital?

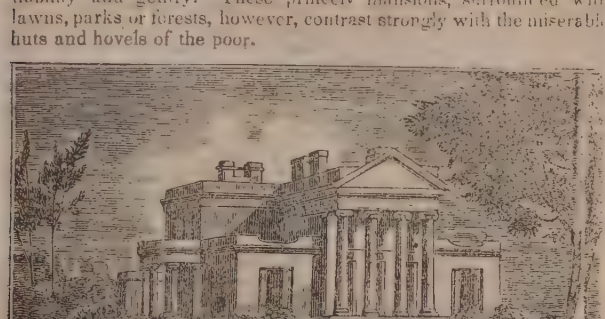
England is a populous and highly cultivated country, distinguished for its extensive commerce, numerous canals and railways, and for the extent, variety and value of its manufactures.

The surface of England is agreeably diversified with hills and plains, and abounds in beautiful scenery. In some parts, plains clothed in the richest verdure, watered by copious streams, and pasturing innumerable cattle, extend as far as the eye can reach; in others, gently rising hills and bending vales, fertile in grain, waving

with woods, and interspersed with flowery meadows, offer the most delightful landscapes of rural opulence and beauty.

The coast is indented with bays and harbors which present every facility for foreign commerce. Canals and railways are numerous and furnish an easy communication throughout all parts of the interior, for the vast inland trade of the kingdom.

The country abounds in excellent roads and substantial bridges, and is noted for the number and magnificence of the seats of the nobility and gentry. These princely mansions, surrounded with lawns, parks or forests, however, contrast strongly with the miserable huts and hovels of the poor.



AN ENGLISH GENTLEMAN'S COUNTRY SEAT.

The climate is moist, cool and variable, but not subject to extremes of heat or cold. Agriculture is carried to a high degree of perfection. The chief products are wheat, barley, oats, peas, beans, hops, &c. The mineral productions are numerous and exceedingly valuable. The most important are coal, copper, iron, tin and lead.

England has several famous mineral springs, which, during the warm season, are thronged by crowds of the fashionable, idle, gay and dissipated. The hot springs of Bath, and Bristol, the waters of Cheltenham, Harrowgate, Tunbridge and Epsom, are among the most celebrated.

England is justly celebrated for its literary institutions, and learned men. The universities of Oxford and Cambridge are an honor to the country and Europe. The higher classes spare no expense in the education of their children, but until recently, little or no provision has been made for the instruction of the poor. Among her eminent scholars, are Bacon, Boyle, Newton, Locke, Davy, Shakspeare

Milton, Spencer, Pope and Dryden, who rank among the first of any age or nation.

The government is a limited, hereditary monarchy. The sovereign power is vested in a king or queen, and a parliament. The latter consists of a house of lords, who are hereditary, and a house of commons, who are chosen by the people. The established religion is Episcopacy, and the sovereign is the supreme head of the church.

Character.—The English are intelligent, industrious and enterprising, and strongly attached to freedom and their native country. The learned are distinguished for sound sense and extensive knowledge, the merchants for integrity and wealth, the mechanics for skill and industry, and the sailors and soldiers for bravery and discipline.

Cities.—London, the metropolis of the British Empire, is situated on both sides of the Thames, 60 miles from its mouth. It is the most populous city in Europe; and in commerce, manufactures, and wealth, it is the first city on the globe. Among the public buildings, St. Paul's Cathedral, Westminster Abbey, the Tower, and the Bank of England, are noble edifices. The city is connected by six elegant bridges across the Thames, and one tunnel, or road under the river.

LONDON.

It presents a striking contrast of wealth and poverty, of intelligence and ignorance, and of morality and vice. It contains a number of spacious squares and parks, and is distinguished for its numerous literary, scientific and charitable institutions.

Greenwich, five miles below London, on the Thames, is noted for its naval hospital for disabled seamen, and for its Royal Observatory, from which longitude is reckoned. Windsor, 22 miles west of Lon-

don, on the Thames, is celebrated for its beautiful scenery, and its royal castle, the summer residence of the English sovereign.

Liverpool, situated near the mouth of the Mersey, is the second town in the kingdom, in commerce and wealth. It is the principal seat of the trade with the United States, and by means of canals and railways, is connected with all the great manufacturing towns in the interior. It is well built, and is celebrated for its immense docks, and its numerous lines of packets to all the principal foreign ports.

Bristol, situated on the Avon, is the third commercial town in England. The first regular line of steam packets between Great Britain and New York, was established here in 1838. It has numerous manufactures, and is noted for its charitable institutions.

Manchester, the second city in population, is famous for cotton manufactures, Birmingham for hardware, Sheffield for cutlery, Kidderminster for carpets, Leeds, Wakefield, Norwich and Exeter for woollens, Worcester for porcelain, Oxford and Cambridge for their universities, Portsmouth and Plymouth for being the great naval stations of the kingdom, York for its cathedral, Newcastle for its trade in coals, and Bath the most elegant city in the kingdom, for its mineral waters.

MAP OF EUROPE. In what direction from us is England? In what direction is England longest? Which extends farthest west, England or France? What cape south-west of England? What towns can you mention?

MAP OF ENGLAND. What is the extent of England and Wales? Population? What two capes southwest of England? What islands near Land's End? s. What islands in the British channel belong to England? Jersey, Guernsey, Alderney, Sark and Wight. How wide is the strait of Dover? What is the population of London? Manchester? Liverpool? Leeds? In what direction from London is Oxford? Cambridge? Dover? Chester? Bristol? Southampton? York? What places are connected by railroads? What is the government? Religion? State of society? When was the battle of Hastings fought? Blackheath? Wakefield? Bosworth? How do England and Wales compare in size with Virginia? How many of the United States are larger than England and Wales?

WALES.

How is Wales bounded? What are its chief towns?

Wales is a mountainous country, and is noted for its deep vallies, roaring torrents, and frightful precipices, and its picturesque scenery.

The climate is cold, but healthy, and the valleys fertile. The chief wealth consists in its minerals. It abounds in coal, iron, cop-

per and lead. There are few cities or large towns; but in all parts there are numerous quiet and pleasant villages, and the country is scattered over with whitewashed cottages, remarkable for neatness, with vines, roses and honeysuckles around them.

Wales was formerly an independent kingdom. In 1283, it was conquered by Edward I. and annexed to England. The oldest son of the king of England is styled Prince of Wales.

Character.—The Welch are the descendants of the ancient Britons, who fled from England at the time of the Saxon invasion. They are industrious, frugal, virtuous and hospitable, and strongly attached to freedom and their country.

Cities.—Caernarvon is a handsome and well built town, noted for its good harbor, and ancient castle in which Edward II. was born. Pembroke is situated on Milford Haven, the most capacious and secure harbor in Great Britain. Merthyr Tydvil, situated in the midst of numerous iron foundries and furnaces, is the most populous town in Wales.

In what direction from us is Wales? In what direction is Wales longest? What island in the Irish sea near Wales? How is Anglesey connected to Wales? A. By the Menai bridge, consisting of immense iron chains, connecting arches of masonry 560 feet apart. Which extends farthest south, Wales or Ireland? What towns can you mention in Wales? What bays on the coast? What rivers rise in Wales? Where do they empty?

SCOTLAND.*

How is Scotland bounded? What is its capital?

Scotland is a cold, rough and mountainous, country, noted for its numerous rivers and lakes, and for the grandeur and wildness of its scenery.

It is divided by the Grampian hills into two parts; the Highlands in the north, and the Lowlands in the south. The former consist chiefly of bleak mountains, covered with a low shrub called heath, or heather, and well adapted for pasturage. The latter are agreeably diversified with hills and plains, and in general, highly cultivated.

The chief productions are grain, cattle, sheep, fish, coal, iron and lead. The manufactures are important and flourishing. The principal articles are cottons, linens, woollens and iron ware.

The coast of Scotland is lined with numerous islands. The Hebrides or Western Islands are about 300 in number, and contain

* Scotland, anciently called Caledonia, was united with England in 1603.

about 70,000 inhabitants, who subsist by fishing, raising cattle, killing sea-fowl, and gathering their eggs from the rocks. In Staffa, one of

FINGAL'S CAVE IN STAFFA.

these islands, is a remarkable cavern, of great extent, called Fingal's cave. It is supported on each side by ranges of columns, and roofed by the bottoms of such as have been broken off. On the north of Scotland, are the Shetland and Orkney islands. Many of these are barren, precipitous rocks, and present the most sublime scenery. Vast numbers of sheep are kept on these islands, and wool and fish are exported. Scotland abounds in lakes, called lochs. Loch Lomond, the largest, is about thirty miles in length, and is one of the most beautiful sheets of water in Europe. Loch Katrine is smaller, and is remarkable for the beauty and grandeur of its scenery.

Scotland is noted for its excellent system of education. Schools are established throughout the country, and the people, especially in the Lowlands, are among the best educated in Europe. There are four universities, viz. Edinburgh, Glasgow, Aberdeen, and St. Andrews, and these have produced some of the ablest scholars of modern times.

Character.—The Scotch are a grave, serious and reflecting people. They are temperate, hardy, industrious, and enterprising, and are distinguished for their general education and morality. Many of them have been eminent in the sciences, and rank among the most celebrated philosophers, historians and poets of Europe.

Cities.—EDINBURGH is a large, well built and interesting city. It is situated about two miles from the Frith of Forth, on an eminence, and makes a grand appearance. The castle is built on a rock of

great height, and looks down upon the city, commanding a most extensive and beautiful view. It has few manufactures, and is chiefly distinguished as the seat of science and literature. It carries on a considerable trade through Leith, its seaport, situated two miles distant, on the Frith of Forth.

Glasgow, the most populous city in Scotland, is distinguished for its manufactures and commerce. It is well built, and by means of canals has an extensive communication with the interior. Greenock is the port of Glasgow.

Paisley and Perth are noted for the manufactures of cotton and linen, Aberdeen for its university and ship building, Falkirk for its cattle fairs, Carron for its iron works, and Gretna Green, as the place where runaway lovers from England are married, and Melrose for its abbey.

Map of British Isles. In what direction from us is Scotland? What rivers and hills separate Scotland from England? What channel separates Scotland from Ireland? What rivers can you mention? Towns? Which is the largest city? In what direction from Edinburgh is Glasgow? Perth? Ayr? Dundee? Stirling? Dunbar? What islands north-west of Scotland? What mountains? Lakes? What is said of Loch Lomond? Loch Katrine? What places are connected by railroads? Canals? What is the extent of Scotland? Which is the largest, Scotland or this state? What is the population? Religion? State of society? How will you go from Edinburgh to Dublin?

IRELAND.

How is Ireland bounded? What is its Capital?

Ireland is a beautiful, fertile and populous island, agreeably diversified with hills and plains. It has a mild, moist climate and is noted for its lakes, and extensive peat bogs.

Ireland is famous for its potatoes, which are excellent and abundant, and form the principal article of food for the poorer classes. Oats, barley, wheat, grass and flax are extensively cultivated. Grazing and the dairy are important branches of industry, and produce the best beef and butter in Europe. Immense numbers of cattle are exported to England. The chief articles of manufacture are linens and muslins.

Among the natural curiosities of Ireland, the Giant's Causeway is the most noted. It consists of several hundred thousand columns of basaltic rock, rising from 2 to 400 feet above the surface of the water.

There are mines of lead, copper and cobalt. Iron ore is abun-

GIANT'S CAUSEWAY.

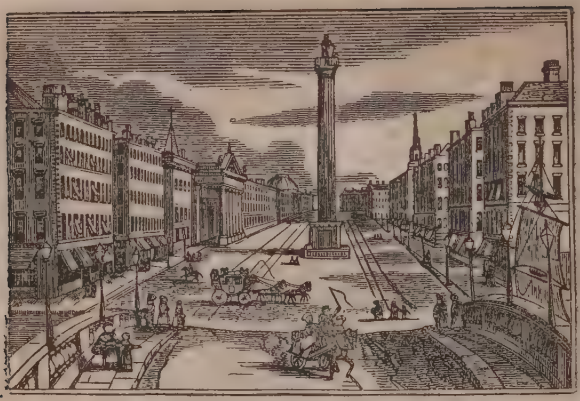
dant, and mineral springs numerous. There is a great deficiency of wood. Turf is the common fuel. The coast has many fine harbors, and is well adapted to commerce.

The condition of the Irish peasantry, in most cases, is wretched in the extreme. They live in a state of abject poverty and ignorance, oppressed by the great landlords and their agents, compelled by the government to pay one tenth part of their produce to the clergy of the church of England, whom they never hear and after supporting their own clergy, the Roman Catholic, they have but little left for themselves or families to subsist upon, except a few potatoes, and a small quantity of oat bread and milk. Industry is thus discouraged; beggars are numerous, and the poor peasant has nothing to encourage him, and regards poverty as his inevitable lot.

Character.—The Irish are brave, quick witted, active, and hospitable. They are distinguished for benevolence, and politeness. The higher classes resemble those of Great Britain, and are exceeded by none in intelligence, military skill, and generous hospitality.

Cities.—DUBLIN is situated on both sides of the Liffey, about seven miles from the Irish sea. In extent and population, it is the second city in the British Empire. Many of its streets are broad, well built, and its public edifices are numerous and magnificent. It contains a number of fine and spacious squares, and its harbor is one of the most beautiful in Europe.

Cork is the first commercial city in Ireland. It is noted for its safe, capacious, and strongly fortified harbor, and for its exports of salted provisions.



VIEW IN DUBLIN.—NELSON'S MONUMENT.

Limerick, Waterford, Belfast and Galway, are noted for trade and linen manufactures, Kildare for horse races, and Ballinasloe for cattle fairs.

Map of British Isles. What separate Ireland from Great Britain? What rivers in Ireland? Lakes? Which is the largest city? Its population? In what direction from Dublin is Cork? Limerick? Belfast? Waterford? Londonderry? Newry? Galway? Kilkenny? Sligo? Dingle? What is the government of Ireland? What is the chief ruler styled? Lord Lieutenant. The Religion? State of society? What is the extent? Which is largest, Ireland or this state? What is the population? How will you sail from Dublin to Christiana?

SWEDEN AND NORWAY.

The kingdom of Sweden and Norway comprises a vast peninsula, remarkable for its mountains, extensive forests of pine, numerous rivers and lakes, and for its valuable mines.

Sweden and Norway were united into one kingdom in 1814. Although under the control of the same sovereign, each state has its own particular constitution, its own laws, and national legislature.

What bodies of water around this great peninsula? What is the width of the isthmus that connects it to Russia, or in other words, what is the distance between the northern extremity of the Gulf of Bothnia and the Arctic Ocean? A. 200 miles. What mountains between Sweden and Norway? In what zones is the kingdom of Norway and Sweden?

NORWAY.

How is Norway bounded? What is its Capital?

Norway is a cold, barren, and mountainous country, and abounds in sublime and romantic scenery. Its chief wealth consists in its fisheries, mines of iron, copper, lead and silver, and in its immense forests of pine, which furnish large quantities of lumber for exportation.

Norway is the most mountainous country in Europe except Switzerland. The soil is, generally, unfit for cultivation. The climate is subject to great extremes. The cold is severe in winter, and the heat excessive in summer, but of short duration.

Near the coast of Norway, is the terrific whirlpool, called the Maelstrom.* It can be heard at a great distance, and is so violent that every thing which comes near it, is drawn in, and dashed in pieces.

THE MAELSTROM.

* Mawl'strum.

Character.—The Norwegians are honest, industrious, frugal, brave and hospitable, and passionately attached to freedom and their native country. They are generally well instructed in the common branches of education, and every man is his own tailor, carpenter, smith, &c. In consequence of their temperance and the purity of the air, they live to a great age.

Cities.—Christiana is pleasantly situated at the northern extremity of the bay of Christiansfiord. It contains a university, a cathedral, and several churches, and is noted for its excellent harbor. It has much trade, chiefly in lumber and iron.

Bergen, the former capital, is well built, and carries on a considerable trade in lumber, tar and dried fish. It has a cathedral, castle, and several churches. It is noted for its sheltered situation and frequent rains.

Drontheim, anciently the residence of the Norwegian kings, is well built, has a good harbor, and considerable trade.

In what direction from us is Norway? In what direction is Norway longest? Which has the greatest extent, Norway or this state? Population? In what does the chief wealth of Norway consist? What is the face of the country? Soil? Climate? For what is the coast of Norway remarkable? What is the character of the people? Is Norway an independent kingdom? When was it ceded to Sweden? What mountains between Norway and Sweden? Which is the most northern cape? Southern cape? What noted curiosity near Frederickshall? A. An immense cavern which has been estimated at eleven thousand feet in depth. What towns can you mention? Which is the largest? Rivers? Which is longest? What islands on the coast? What is the Government? Religion? State of society? How will you sail from Christiana to Stockholm?

SWEDEN.

How is Sweden bounded? What is its Capital?

Sweden is a large, thinly settled, and generally level country, abounding in lakes, rivers and forests. Its chief wealth consists in its mines of iron, silver, copper and lead, and in its extensive pine forests, which furnish lumber, pitch, tar and turpentine for exportation.

Sweden, like most northern countries, has but two seasons. Spring and autumn are scarcely perceived. Winter continues about nine months, during which the cold is excessive. Summer continues about

three months, and commences so suddenly that the vallies which before were covered with snow, become green in a few days. Seeds rapidly spring up and arrive at maturity in the space of seven or eight weeks.

Character.—The Swedes are polite, brave and hospitable, and are distinguished for their general education, morality and love of freedom.

Cities.—STOCKHOLM stands on seven rocky islands in the strait which connects lake Malar with the Baltic. The form of the city is an oblong, and presents a view highly beautiful and romantic. It contains a magnificent royal palace, and many other elegant edifices. It has a safe and commodious harbor, and an extensive trade.

Gottenburg, situated at the mouth of the Gotha, is next to Stockholm in commerce population and wealth. It is a handsome city, and is the seat of the Swedish East India Company. It has several manufactories, schools, and an extensive commerce.

Upsal, formerly the metropolis of Sweden, is noted for its university, Carlscrona for being the station of the Swedish navy, Fahlun, for its copper mines, Dannemora for its iron mine, and Sa'a for its silver mine. Tornea has a good harbor, and is a noted resort for the Laplanders, Norwegians, Swedes and Russians, to barter their furs and skins for other articles.

In what direction from us is Sweden? In what direction is Sweden longest? Which part of Sweden do you think, has the warmest climate? Why? How many seasons are there in Sweden? How much longer is winter generally than summer? What are the principal rivers of Sweden, and where do they empty? Chief towns, and how situated? What lakes? What is the extent of Sweden? Population? Government? Religion? State of society? How will you sail from Stockholm to Tornea?

LAPLAND.

In what direction from us is Lapland?

Lapland comprises the northern part of Norway, Sweden and Russia. It is a cold, and desolate region, and thinly inhabited.

Nearly the whole country is a mass of mountains, intermixed with lakes and marshy forests. It is covered with snow two-thirds of the year.

Lapland abounds in iron and other minerals. A few kinds of grain are cultivated, in the southern part. Among the various animals, the reindeer is most valuable, and is to the Laplander what the

LAPLANDER TRAVELLING.

camel is to the Arab. It is his chief support. It serves him as a beast of burden. When harnessed to a sledge, it draws him and his goods from place to place, at the rate of 80 or 100 miles a day. Its milk and flesh supply him with food, and its skin with clothing.

In the northern part, during winter, the sun does not appear above the horizon for about seven weeks, and in summer, does not set for the same length of time.

VIEW OF NORTH CAPE AT MIDNIGHT IN SUMMER.

Character.—The Laplanders are between four and five feet in height, strong, hardy and active. They are of a dark complexion, with black hair. They are under no regular government, and remove about from place to place, with their herds of reindeer. In summer, they live in tents, and in winter, in low, rude huts, formed of poles and stones, covered with birch twigs and earth, having a hole at the top for the smoke to escape. They are ignorant and superstitious, having neither writing nor letters, but only a few hieroglyphics. Their religion is a mixture of Christianity and paganism. Notwithstanding the dreariness of their country, they prefer it to every other.

Towns.—KOLA is the capital of Russian Lapland, and Tornea of Swedish Lapland.

Which is the most northern country in Europe? In what direction is Lapland longest? What ocean, sea and gulf, border on Lapland? To what government does the eastern part nominally belong? The southern? Western? Do these governments exercise any authority over the Laplanders? Why not? What constitutes the chief support of the Laplanders? What different uses do they make of the reindeer? What towns or settlements? Under what kind of government do they live? Their religion? State of society? Why do the Laplanders prefer their own dreary country to all others? How will you sail from Tornea to St. Petersburg?

RUSSIAN EMPIRE.

In what direction from us is the Russian Empire?

In extent of territory the Russian empire surpasses all others on the globe. It embraces nearly half of Europe, more than one-third of Asia, and the northwestern part of North America. Though of modern origin, its resources are unbounded. its power vast, and it holds the first rank among military nations.

What part of Europe does the Russian Empire embrace? What part of Asia? North America? In what direction is the Russian empire longest? What proportion of the earth's circumference does the Russian empire encompass? A. More than one half. What countries lie between the eastern and western limits of the empire? What title is given to the emperor of Russia? A. Czar, and sometimes he is styled the "Autocrat," which means absolute sovereign. Which part of the Russian empire, the European, the Asiatic, or North American, extends farthest south?

RUSSIA IN EUROPE.

How is Russia bounded? What is its Capital?

Russia is the largest, and one of the most level countries in Europe, and is distinguished for its vast plains and majestic rivers.

In a country so extensive, is found almost every variety of climate and production. The southern parts are mild and productive; the northern are cold and mostly covered with immense forests of pine.

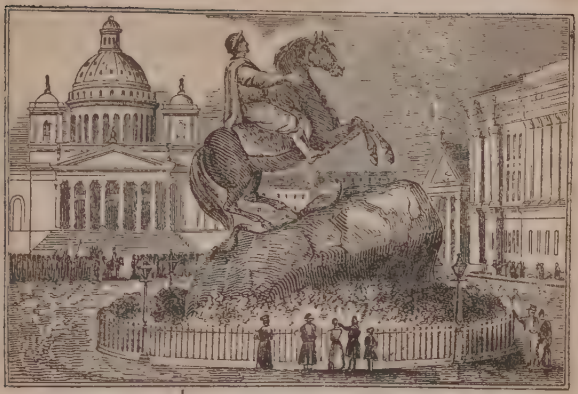
The commerce of Russia is very extensive, and by means of its numerous rivers and canals, an internal communication is opened throughout all parts of the interior, reaching from the Black and Caspian seas, to the Baltic and Arctic ocean.

The principal articles of export are tallow, flax, hemp, wheat, iron, timber and tar. Furs, gold, silver, iron, copper, of great amount and value, are brought from Siberia. At Kiatka, the Chinese merchants meet the Russians, and numerous caravans proceed into the interior of Tartary, while Persia is visited across the Caspian.

Agriculture and manufactures, though yet in a rude state, are improving. The seal and sturgeon fisheries of the Caspian and Black seas, and of the river Volga are very extensive and productive. The raising of cattle is the chief business of the husbandman. There are valuable mines of silver, copper, and especially iron; also gold and platina. Considerable attention is paid to education. The government of late, has made exertions to introduce schools for the instruction of the lower classes. There are seven universities, and numerous seminaries, highly endowed and patronized, for the promotion of literature and science.

The military force of Russia is great, and is the subject of anxiety and terror to Europe. The regular army amounts to nearly a million of men, besides a considerable navy, both on the Baltic and Black seas. The real strength of the Russian army, however, consists not so much in its numbers, as in the passive and iron valor of its infantry, and the rapid and skillful movements of its cavalry, the Cossacks, Baskirs, and other tribes of Tartars.

Character.—The Russians are, in general, a well formed and courageous race of men, with tolerably fair complexions. They are divided into four classes: 1st, the nobility; 2d, the clergy; 3d, the common people; and 4th, the peasants, or as they are more usually called, the serfs or boors. The latter are generally in a state of abject poverty and ignorance, and are the property of the crown, or of individual nobles.



STATUE OF PETER THE GREAT.

Cities.—St. Petersburg was founded in 1704, by Peter the Great It is situated on both sides of the river Neva, at its entrance into the gulf of Finland. It is a magnificent city, and surpasses all others of Europe, in the splendor of its streets and edifices.

Moscow, the ancient capital, is one of the most populous cities of Europe. It is situated on the river Moskwa, and is the centre of the internal trade of Russia. It was burned in 1812, to prevent its falling into the power of the French. It has since been rebuilt, and is more magnificent and regular than before. It contains many splendid palaces and public edifices. The principal curiosity of Moscow, is its enormous bell, weighing 443,000 pounds. It is the largest in the world, and has never been removed from the pit in which it was cast.

Odessa is a well built and flourishing place, and is the centre of trade for all southern Russia. It is the second commercial city in the empire, and is noted for its exportation of wheat.

Cronstadt, situated on an island in the gulf of Finland, 20 miles from St. Petersburg, is noted for its extensive fortifications, docks, arsenals, &c. It is the principal station of the Russian navy, and forms the chief defence of the capital.

Archangel, situated on the Dwina, four miles from the White sea, is noted for being the most northerly seaport in Europe. Riga, situated on the Duna, five miles from its mouth, is distinguished for its extensive commerce, Zula, for its manufacture of fire arms, and Astrachan for its extensive trade and sturgeon fisheries.

Novgorod, the great, situated near lake Ilmen, is one of the most ancient cities of Russia. It was once a powerful city, the proud capital of the north, and held wide sway over the regions round the Baltic. It was said of it, "who can resist God and the Great Nov-

gorod." It is much reduced, and few objects convey more melancholy impressions of fallen grandeur. New Novgorod, or the little, situated at the junction of the Oka and Volga, is the great commercial link between Europe and Asia. It is a handsome city, and is noted for its great fairs, for the sale of the various products of Europe and Asia.

In what direction from us is Russia? What five seas around Russia? C. A. B. B. W. What two large rivers empty in the Caspian sea? V. U. What into the sea of Azoff? D. Black sea? D. B. D. D. Baltic? V. N. D. White sea? O. D. M. Arctic Ocean? P. Which is the longest river in Russia? The next longest? What lakes? L. O. I. T. What connects lake Ladoga to the gulf of Finland? A. The river Neva. What gulfs? What chain of mountains between Russia and Siberia? What is their length? Between Russia and Georgia? Their length? How many towns can you mention, and where are they situated? When was Azoff taken from the Turks by Peter the Great? When was Charles XII. defeated at Poltava, by Peter the Great? When was Moscow taken by the French? What is the government of Russia? Religion? State of society? What is the extent of Russia in Europe? Population? What is the population of the Russian empire? How will you sail from St. Petersburg to Warsaw?

POLAND.*

In what direction from us is Poland? What was its Capital?

Poland was formerly one of the most powerful kingdoms in Europe. It was divided between Russia, Prussia and Austria, and in 1795, ceased to be an independent nation.

---

* Poland was formerly a large, powerful, and independent kingdom but for many centuries past, it has been remarkable for its miserable condition. It contained 284,000 square miles, and about 15,000,000 inhabitants. In 1772, it became distracted by internal dissensions. This furnished Russia, Austria, and Prussia, with a pretence for interference. They accordingly took possession of a large portion of the country, and divided it between them. In 1793, they interfered a second time, and dismembered a second portion. In 1795, they interfered a third time, and divided the remainder of the country between them. Thus by an act of the grossest injustice, Poland was blotted out of the list of kingdoms. In 1815 the Congress of Vienna erected a small portion of the central part of ancient Poland—containing 47,000 square miles, and 2,800,000 inhabitants—into a state, by the name of the "Kingdom of Poland," and placed it under the government of the emperor of Russia,

Although Poland has ceased to constitute an independent and single state, still the country is distinctly separated from those which surround it, by national character, language and manners. It is still the land of the Poles, although its detached fragments have become Russian, Austrian or Prussian provinces. The present population is about 15,000,000.

Poland is one of the most level countries in Europe and derives its name from "*Pohlen*," a Sclavonic word, which means *a plain*. It forms indeed a part of that immense, unvaried plain, which, covers the northern portion of all the countries of central Europe, and expands in Russia to its greatest breadth, exceeding 1200 miles.

The climate of Poland is cold and moist, and the soil exceedingly fertile, and so well adapted to the growth of grain that the annual export has been estimated at sixteen million of bushels.

Character.—The Poles are divided into two classes, the nobles and peasants. The former are tall, robust and handsome, brave, frank, gay, courteous in their manners, and hospitable to strangers. The latter are ignorant, indolent, servile, and but slaves to the nobles.

Warsaw, the late capital, is a walled town of great strength. It is favorably situated for commerce, and possesses an extensive inland trade. It presents a melancholy appearance, exhibiting a singular contrast of wealth and poverty, of luxury and want, which pervade every part of this unhappy country.

The Republic of Cracow.

This small republic was formed in 1815, by Russia, Austria, and Prussia. It consists of Cracow, the ancient capital of Poland, and a small surrounding territory. It comprises an area of about 500 square miles, and 100,000 inhabitants.

Cracow, on the Vistula, is an ancient city. It is noted for its great square, its cathedral, churches, monasteries and convents. Almost every building, however, bears the mark of ruined grandeur. A remarkable monument has been erected here, to the memory of Kosciusko. It consists of a mound 300 feet high, and 275 feet in diameter at the base.

---

who in consequence, added to his title, "king of Poland." A Polish constitution was soon issued by the emperor Alexander, consisting of 165 articles, which, if faithfully executed, would have promoted the welfare of Poland. But these articles were basely violated by the Russians, and the most unjust cruelties were inflicted on the brave Poles. At length, on the 29th of November, 1830, an insurrection broke out at Warsaw, and quickly extended throughout the kingdom and other parts of ancient Poland. A powerful Russian army immediately invaded the country, and after a short but severe struggle for independence, the Poles were subdued; and by a proclamation of the emperor Nicholas, in 1832, Poland was incorporated with Russia, and has since formed an integral part of that mighty empire.

The salt mine of Wieliczka,* the largest and most remarkable in the world, is about seven miles south-east of Cracow. It belongs to Austria.

In what direction from us is Poland? What was Poland formerly? What is it now? What is the length of the Vistula? What cities on it? How will you go from Warsaw to Berlin?

PRUSSIA.

VIEW IN BERLIN.

How is Prussia bounded? What is its Capital?

Prussia was formerly a small state of Germany; but by gradual accession of territory, it has become one of the first kingdoms in Europe.

It consists of two divisions, viz. the eastern, as represented on the map of Europe, and the western, situated on both sides of the Rhine, adjoining Holland and Belgium.

Prussia is generally a level country, with numerous lakes, rivers, and marshes. The climate is healthy and the soil in most parts fertile. Grain and cattle are the chief productions. The most noted

---

* We-lich' ka.

mineral production is *amber*, which is found on the shores of the Baltic.

Its foreign commerce is not extensive, but its inland trade is considerable. The principal manufactures are linens, woollens, and articles of iron and steel.

Prussia is particularly distinguished for its system of popular education. Public schools are established by the government, throughout the kingdom, to which every parent is required to send his children.

Character.—The Prussians are intelligent, brave, industrious, and fond of military parade. The army of Prussia is famous for its discipline, and almost every man in the kingdom, is required to serve in it as a soldier, for three years.

Cities.—BERLIN, situated on the river Spree, a small branch of the Elbe, is one of the most magnificent cities in Europe. It is distinguished for its splendid edifices, its numerous literary institutions, its university, and for the extent of its manufactures.

Dantzic, formerly the grand emporium of Poland, is situated on the Vistula, five miles from its mouth. It is a large, populous, wealthy and strongly fortified city, and is noted for its extensive commerce.

Breslau, the capital of the province of Silesia, is a well built, populous and fortified city, distinguished for its manufacture of linen.

Mag'-de-burg, situated on both sides of the Elbe, is one of the most strongly fortified cities in Europe. It has an extensive trade, and a great variety of manufactures.

Kon-ings-burg, on the river Pregel, formerly the capital of Prussia, is a large and handsome city, noted for its inland and foreign trade.

Cologne,* in the western part of the Prussian dominions is an old and rather decayed town on the Rhine, noted for its trade, and manufacture of Cologne water.

In what direction is Prussia longest? Of how many portions does it consist? Which is the largest portion? Which are the four principal rivers of the eastern portion? E. O. V. N. What is the length of each? Which one of the western portion? R. How many towns can you mention in each portion? Which is the most populous? [See map of Central Europe.] What is the extent of Prussia? Population? Government? Religion? State of society? How will you sail from Berlin to Vienna?

AUSTRIA.

How is Austria bounded? What is its Capital?

Austria was formerly a small state, but its limits

*Co-lone'.

have been increased by treaty and conquest, until it has become a large, populous and powerful empire.

The Austrian empire comprises nearly one-third part of what was once called Germany, the northern part of Italy, styled the kingdom of Lombardy and Venice, the kingdom, of Hungary, and a considerable portion of Poland, now called the kingdom of Gallicia.

The whole empire, with the exception of the mountain borders, enjoys the happiest climate, and is fitted to produce grain of different kinds, wine, silks, and other valuable productions in the highest perfection. The soil in most parts is excellent. The kingdom of Lombardy and Venice, on account of its fertility and high cultivation, has been styled "the garden of Europe."

The mineral productions of Austria are various. Hungary is distinguished for its rich mines of gold and silver; Illyria for its mines of mercury or quicksilver; and Gallicia, for those of salt. Besides these, iron, copper, lead and tin are found in various parts.

The salt mine of Wie-licz-ka, seven miles south-east of Cracow, is the largest in the world, and has been worked 600 years. The principal mine is more than a mile in length, about 1000 feet broad, and 1500 feet deep. The quantity of salt produced yearly at these mines, is valued at $800,000. The mine exhibits a spacious plain, with lofty vaulted roofs, supported by columns of salt, which have been left standing by the workmen. This mine formerly belonged to Poland, but in the first partition of that unhappy country, in 1772, it came into the possession of Austria.

Character.—The inhabitants are composed principally of four distinct races, Sclavonians, Germans, Hungarians and Italians, all differing in language and habits. In Hungary, Gypsies are numerous. The Austrians are generally industrious, patient and persevering, and noted for vivacity and fondness of music.

Cities.—Vienna, situated in a fertile plain, on the south bank of the Danube, holds a high rank among the cities of Europe for science, arts, commerce and refinement. It contains many elegant palaces, churches, and other public buildings. The Prater near the city, is a celebrated place of amusement, consisting of a grove laid out with promenades and avenues.

Prague, the capital of Bohemia, situated on the Muldau, a branch of the Elbe, is a large and strongly fortified city, and contains several ancient palaces. It has the oldest university in Germany, founded in 1348. It has been the scene of numerous battles and sieges, and exhibits but the remnants of its former magnificence and splendor.

Venice is situated at the head of the gulf of Venice, on 72 small islands, connected by 500 bridges. It was formerly the capital of a republic of the same name, and the greatest commercial city on the globe. Though much reduced, it is still one of the most magnificent and remarkable cities of Europe. It has canals instead of streets—boats instead of cars—and gondolas instead of coaches.

THE RIALTO IN VENICE.

Milan, the capital of the kingdom of Lombardy and Venice, situated in a rich and beautiful plain, watered by the Po, is a noble and magnificent city. Its cathedral is the finest specimen of Gothic architecture in existence.

Buda, the capital of Hungary, is noted for its palaces and baths; Pest for its university and several literary institutions. These two cities are united by a bridge of boats across the Danube, and together form the most important city in Hungary.

Lemburg, the capital of Gallicia, is noted for its inland trade; Brunn, the capital of Moravia, for its strong citadel and manufactures of cloth, velvet and plush; and Toplitz for its warm springs.

Trieste, situated on the gulf of Venice, in Illyria, has a spacious harbor, is strongly fortified, and is the principal seaport of the Austrian empire.

In what direction is the Austrian Empire longest? Of what does it consist? What is the principal river in Austria? D. What branches has the Danube? D. S. T. What mountains in Austria? How many towns can you mention? Which is most populous? What town in the northern part, memorable for the imprisonment of La Fayette? O. In what direction from Olmutz is Prague, capital of Bohemia? Austerlitz? When was the battle of Austerlitz fought? What is the extent of Austria? Population? Government? Religion? State of society? What mines in Austria? What can you say of the salt mines of Wieliczka? How will you sail from Vienna to Hamburg?

GERMANY.

How is Germany bounded? What are its capitals?

Germany is an extensive country, situated in the centre of Europe. It is distinguished for its great political influence, the general fertility of its soil, and healthiness of its climate, and for the number of its learned men, public libraries and literary institutions.

The political system of Germany is very complicated. At present it comprises thirty-five states and four free cities; the principal of which are the following, viz.

States.	*Titles.*	*Capitals.*
1. Austria,	Empire,	Vienna.
2. Bavaria,	Kingdom,	Munich.
3. Wirtemberg,	Kingdom,	Stuttgard.
4. Saxony,	Kingdom,	Dresden.
5. Hanover,	Kingdom,	Hanover.
6. Baden,	Grand Duchy,	Carlsruhe.

7. Prussia in the north-western part. The four free cities are Hamburg, Frankfort, Bremen and Lubec.

These states and free cities are independent, each in its own territory, but for the purpose of mutual defence and protection, they have formed a union, styled "The Germanic Confederation." The states are bound to defend each other in case of foreign invasion, and pledged not to make war upon each other, but to submit their differences and disputes to the decision of the Federative Diet, a body composed of plenipotentiaries and delegates from the different states. The Diet meets at Frankfort-on-the-Mayne. The emperor of Austria is president of the Diet.

The northern part of Germany is remarkably level. There commence those vast plains that extend through Prussia, Poland, and the south of Russia. The southern part is hilly and mountainous.

The products of German industry are of great amount and variety. Agriculture is in an improved state—manufactures are numerous, and the working of its mines of gold, silver, copper, tin, zinc, lead and coal, is an important branch of industry, and a great source of national wealth.

The forests of Germany are very extensive, and are supposed to cover one-third of its surface. They furnish immense quantities of timber, and give shelter to numerous wild animals, among which is the wild boar, the bear, wolf, &c.

The commerce of Germany is extensive, and its inland trade considerable. In all the principal towns, fairs are held, at which all kinds of merchandize are exhibited for sale in the open air. These are attended with much festivity. Many of the most important and

valuable inventions originated in Germany. The city of Mentz claims the invention of printing; Cologne, of gunpowder; and Nuremburg, of watches.

BAVARIA.

Bavaria, in the south-eastern part, is one of the most important states in Germany. It is noted for the rapid advancement of the people in general improvement. A school is established in every parish, to which every parent is obliged to send his children from the age of six to fourteen years.

Munich, the capital, is a splendid city, noted for its literary institutions and museum of antiquities. Nuremburg is distinguished for its watches, toys, &c.

WIRTEMBERG.

Wirtemberg, in the southern part, is one of the most fertile, best cultivated and populous districts in Germany, and one of the best educated kingdoms in Europe.

Stutgard, the capital, is noted for its magnificent palace; Ulm for its strong fortress; and Halle, for its salt works.

BADEN.

The Grand Duchy of Baden, in the south-western part, has a mild climate and fertile soil. It exports grain, wine, timber iron, &c. Education has received great attention, of late, and knowledge is very generally diffused.

Carlsruhe, Karlz-ro'-a, is a small, neat handsome town, built in the form of an open fan. Manheim is a flourishing place, and one of the most elegant towns in Germany.

SAXONY.

Saxony is the smallest kingdom in Europe, and one of the best educated. Agriculture and mining form the chief occupation of the people. Sheep are raised in great numbers, noted for the fineness of their wool. The climate is mild, the level districts fertile, and the mountains rich in minerals. Its commerce and manufactures are extensive.

Dresden, on the Elbe, is one of the finest cities in Germany. It is noted for its public buildings, libraries and galleries of paintings. Leipsic is the grand centre of commerce, not only for Saxony, but for all Germany. It is famous for its great fairs, held twice a year, at which immense quantities of books and other articles are sold.

HANOVER.

Hanover is a small kingdom. The northern part consists principally of an immense plain. In the southern part, are the Hartz

mountains, noted for their picturesque scenery, extensive caverns, and valuable mines of gold, silver, copper, iron and lead. Brocken, the most celebrated summit, is much visited by travellers.

Hanover is well fortified and pleasantly situated on a branch of the Weser. It has some manufactures and is noted for its superb palace. Gottingen is distinguished for its university; and Emden, at the mouth of the Ems, for being the principal port.

THE FREE CITIES.

The four free imperial cities of Germany, are Hamburg, Frankfort-on-the-Mayne, Bremen and Lubec. These are the remnants of the Hanse towns and imperial cities, that illustrious confederacy called the Hanseatic league, which once comprised 85 of the most considerable commercial cities in Europe, and during the middle ages acted a most conspicuous part in the improvement of the European system.

Hamburg, situated on the Elbe, seventy miles from its mouth, is the first commercial city in Germany. Its manufactures are extensive, and its port is visited by ships of almost all nations.

Frankfort-on-the-Mayne, twenty miles above the entrance of that river into the Rhine, is noted for its fairs and extensive trade. It is the seat of the Federative Diet, or Congress of the German princes.

Bremen, on the Weser, is generally well built, and has an extensive trade.

Lubec, on the Trave, eight miles from the Baltic, has considerable trade, and is noted for having been at the head of the Hanseatic league.

Into how many states is Germany divided? Which are the principal, and their capitals? In what part is Hanover? [See map of Central Europe.] Bavaria? Saxony? Wurtemburg? Mecklenburg? Baden? To what government does Westphalia and the Rhine belong? P. What is the extent of Bavaria? Population? Government? Religion? State of society? Hanover? Saxony? Which is the longest river in Germany? What is the length of the Danube? Elbe? How does the Weser compare in length with the Hudson river? Is there any river in this state as long as the Rhine? Can you go by water from Hamburg to Berne?

SWITZERLAND.

How is Switzerland bounded? What is its Capital?

Switzerland is the most mountainous country in Europe. It abounds in the most sublime and picturesque scenery, and is noted for the freedom of its political institutions.

Switzerland is composed of twenty-two cantons, or districts, each of which is an independent state, but for national security they are united together under the name of the "Helvetic Republic," and governed by a general diet, or assembly. The diet meets alternately at Berne, Zurich, and Lucerne. Neufchatel belongs to Prussia.

Switzerland is full of wonders, stupendous mountains, dreadful precipices, tremendous rocks, shining glaciers, awful chasms; Mont Blanc, rearing its majestic head far above the clouds, with here and there a quiet lake and peaceful valley. These are its characteristic features.

Switzerland has almost every variety of climate and soil. The valleys are warm and fruitful, and nothing can be more delightful than the summer months in this country. The chief productions are grain, wine, and various kinds of fruit. The raising of cattle is the principal occupation of the Swiss farmer. The manufacture of cotton goods is carried on to some extent, and that of watches is an important feature of national industry.

Among the native animals of Switzerland, are the ibex, with its huge horns, the chamois, the Alpine marmot, the bearded vulture, and the Alpine spaniel. The latter are kept by the monks of St. Bernard, for the preservation of those unfortunate travellers who are so often lost in crossing the pathless snows of those dangerous mountains.

Character.—The Swiss are well educated, hardy, industrious, brave, and temperate. They are honest in their dealings, faithful to their word, and ardently attached to liberty and their country.

BERNE.

Cities.—BERNE, situated on the river Aar, a branch of the Rhine,

contains many elegant edifices. It is noted for the width and neatness of its streets, and the beauty of the surrounding country.

Geneva is situated on the south-western extremity of the lake of Geneva, or lake Leman, at the efflux of the Rhone. It is the most celebrated city in Switzerland. The views from it embrace the most magnificent mountain scenery, the towering points of the distant Alps, covered with snow, including Mont Blanc, its lofty front reaching above them all. It is noted for its literary institutions, and its extensive manufacture of watches.

Basle, Bale, on the Rhine, is noted for its university, and for being the place where the art of making paper was invented; Lucerne, situated at the northern extremity of a lake of the same name, for its picturesque scenery; and Lausanne for its beautiful situation, and the refinement of its inhabitants. In the latter city, Gibbon wrote his history of "The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire."

In what direction from us is Switzerland? What mountains in it? What lakes? [See map of Central Europe.] What two large rivers rise in Switzerland? A. R. How many towns can you mention? For what is Switzerland distinguished? What is its extent? Which is largest, Switzerland or this state? What is its population? Government? Religion? State of society? How will you go from Berne to Copenhagen?

DENMARK.

How is Denmark bounded? What is its Capital?

Denmark is small, level and fertile kingdom, with a mild, moist but healthy climate. It is noted for its favorable situation for commercial pursuits, and its exports of grain and cattle.

Denmark consists principally of the peninsula of Jutland and the islands of Zealand and Funen, with the duchies of Holstein and Lauenburg, in Germany. It has some foreign possessions, among which are Greenland, Iceland and the Faroe islands.

Great attention is paid to education. Common schools are established throughout the kingdom, and supported at the public expense, in which the children of the poor, are taught the rudiments of their native language. There are two universities on a large scale, one at Copenhagen, and the other at Kiel. The former has one of the best botanic gardens in Europe. Denmark has produced some celebrated men in literature and science.

Character.—The Danes are an honest, well educated, and industrious people. The higher classes are fond of magnificence and show, and the lower are distinguished for neatness in dress, cheerfulness and hospitality.

Cities.—COPENHAGEN, situated on the eastern shore of the island of Zealand, is one of the best built cities in Europe. It has a good harbor, and an extensive commerce, and is noted for its vast docks and fortifications.

Altona, situated on the Elbe, two miles west of Hamburg, is distinguished for its commerce and manufactures. Elsinore is situated on the island of Zealand, twenty miles north of Copenhagen, at the narrowest part of the sound, or entrance to the Baltic. All foreign ships that pass this place, are obliged to pay a heavy toll, or duty, as a remuneration to the Danish king for the light-houses on the coast.

ICELAND.

Iceland is a large, cold, mountainous and dreary island. It abounds in natural wonders. Mount Hecla is one of the most celebrated volcanoes on the globe. Its eruptions are numerous and dreadful. It has been known to throw stones, lava and ashes from its crater to a vast distance. The Geysers, or hot springs, at the foot of the mountain, throw up columns of boiling water to the height of 100 feet, accompanied with a noise like that of cannon.

The Icelanders are simple and hospitable in their manners; honest, temperate and industrious in their habits; and better educated than the common people of most European countries. They have no schools, but the children are taught by their mothers. Families usually spend their evenings in listening to reading. They enjoy but few of the comforts of life, and subsist almost entirely on animal food, chiefly fish; but notwithstanding, they are a contented and happy people. Their commerce is small. The exports consist of sulphur, hides, eider down and fish; the imports, of grain, timber, and other necessaries.

The Faroe islands, twenty-five in number, seventeen of which are inhabited, lie about midway between Scotland and Iceland. Each of these, is a lofty mountain. They produce agate, jasper, and zeolites. Vast numbers of sea-fowl frequent the rocks and precipices, the taking of which, furnishes a perilous employment for the inhabitants.

In what direction from us is Denmark? Of what does Denmark consist? What is the strait called between the island of Zealand and Sweden? A. The Sound. Between Zealand and Funen? A. The Great Belt. Between Funen and the peninsula of Jutland? A. The Little Belt. What canal connects the Baltic to the North Sea? A. The canal of Kiel. What towns can you mention? What islands belong to Denmark? What towns in Iceland? Volcano? Which is largest, Iceland or Denmark? Most populous? What is the government of Denmark? [See map of Central Europe.] Religion? State of society? How will you sail from Copenhagen to Amsterdam?

HOLLAND.

How is Holland bounded? What is its Capital?

Holland is a small, populous and commercial kingdom. It is distinguished for its numerous canals, extensive manufactures, and for the industry and perseverance of its inhabitants.

Holland is the most level country in Europe, and resembles a large marsh that has been drained. The surface is lower than the level of the sea at high water, and to prevent its being overflowed, high mounds, or dikes, have been erected along the shore.

The soil is remarkably fertile, and in a high state of cultivation; and produces wheat, madder,* tobacco, hemp, flax and rich pasture. Cattle are numerous, and the butter and cheese are justly celebrated. The climate is cold and moist, but generally healthy.

Canals are numerous and serve the same purpose as roads in other countries. In summer, the common mode of travelling is in covered boats on canals; and in winter, when frozen, the people travel over them in sleighs and on skates.

The Dutch were formerly the most commercial nation in the world, and Holland was styled the mart of Europe. Their trade, although much diminished, is still very flourishing and extensive.

Character.—The Dutch are honest, patient, intelligent, and persevering, and remarkable for their industry, frugality and neatness. Every class of people, seems comfortable; and a man, woman, or child, in rags, is seldom, or never seen. Bankruptcy is rare.

Cities.—The Hague, thirty miles south-west of Amsterdam, is one of the handsomest cities in Europe. It is noted for the beauty of its streets, the stateliness of its buildings, the pleasantness of its situation, and the politeness of its inhabitants.

Amsterdam situated on an arm of the Zuider Zee, is the richest, most populous and commercial city in Holland. It is well built, and is noted for its stadt-house, or state-house, now the royal palace, which is one of the noblest edifices in the world. The city is intersected by numerous canals, and is the seat of extensive manufactures.

Rotterdam, situated on the river Maese, ten miles south of the Hague, is next to Amsterdam in commerce, wealth, and population. It is noted as the birth-place of the celebrated Erasmus, and contains a statue erected to his memory.

Leyden is a handsome and flourishing town, distinguished for its university; Harlem, for its great organ and manufactures; Dort, the

*Madder, a plant much used in dyeing red.

ancient capital of Holland, is noted for the synod held there in 1618, styled the synod of Dort, which condemned the tenets of Arminius.

In what direction from us is Holland? What river in the southern part of Holland? How does the Rhine compare in length with the longest river in this state? How many cities can you mention in Holland? Which is the most populous city? [See Central Europe.] Which is largest, Holland or this state? Which is most populous? How does the mode of travelling in this state differ from that in Holland? Which has the greatest latitude, Amsterdam or this place? In what direction from Amsterdam is the Hague? Groningen? Arnheim? Rotterdam? What is the government of Holland? Religion? State of society? How will you sail from Amsterdam to Antwerp?

BELGIUM.*

How is Belgium bounded? What is its Capital?

Belgium is a small, new and populous kingdom, distinguished for the fertility and high cultivation of its soil, the mildness of its climate, and for the extent, variety, and value of its manufactures.

Belgium is, in general, a level country, and one of the most beautiful and interesting in Europe. It is filled with cities connected by spacious canals, watered by several large rivers, and contains numerous places, memorable in the history of modern warfare.

Much attention has, of late, been given to the cause of popular education. Schools are established in every village, and the common people are among the best educated in Europe. There are four universities, viz. at Brussels, Ghent, Louvoine, and Liege, all of which are in a very flourishing condition.

---

* Belgium, formerly called the Austrian Netherlands, within a few centuries has undergone many changes. In 1713, it was ceded by Spain to Austria. In 1795, it was conquered by the French and incorporated into the kingdom of France In 1814, after the downfall of Bonaparte, the Congress of Vienna annexed it to Holland, or the United Provinces, and these two countries formed the kingdom of the Netherlands. This union was effected by the "*Holy Alliance*," without the consent of the two nations, and it never obtained the cordial acquiescence of the Belgians, who became so dissatisfied at length with their political condition, that they broke out into an open insurrection in August, 1830, and on the 4th of October made a declaration of their independence, which has been acknowledged by the "five great powers of Europe," viz. France, Great Britain, Russia, Austria and Prussia.

Character.—The Belgians are an honest, industrious, neat and ingenious people. They are noted for their skill in agriculture, manufactures, and for their perfection in certain branches of the fine arts, especially painting.

Cities.—Brussels, situated on the Senne, a branch of the Scheldt, is one of the finest cities in Europe. It is noted for its handsome squares, regular streets, and its park, interspersed with rows of trees, and beautiful lawns; adorned with fountains and statues, and surrounded by magnificent edifices. The city is distinguished for its manufactures of lace, camblets and carpets.

Antwerp is a large, well built, and strongly fortified city on the Scheldt, twenty-five miles north of Brussels. It is the greatest commercial city in Belgium. The largest vessels can ascend the river to this place, and by means of numerous canals, penetrate into the centre of the town, and there deposit their cargoes. It contains many elegant edifices. Its cathedral 441 feet high is one of the finest Gothic structures in the world, and is adorned with the choicest pictures of the great Flemish masters, Rubens and Vandyke.

Ghent is a noble city, noted for its manufactures, and for the treaty of peace signed here in 1814, between the United States and Great Britain. Tourney is distinguished for its manufactures of carpets and porcelain; Waterloo for the famous battle fought there in 1815; Namur for its cutlery and fire-arms; Mons for its coal-mines, and Ostend for its fortifications.

In what direction from us is Belgium? What rivers in Belgium? The Meuse and Scheldt. In what direction from Brussels is Antwerp? Liege? Waterloo? When was the battle of Waterloo fought? Which is the largest, Belgium or this state? Most populous? What is the government of Belgium? Religion? State of society? How will you sail from Antwerp to Paris?

FRANCE.

How is France bounded? What is its Capital?

France is a great and powerful kingdom, distinguished for its military power, central situation, vast resources and population, and for its great political influence.

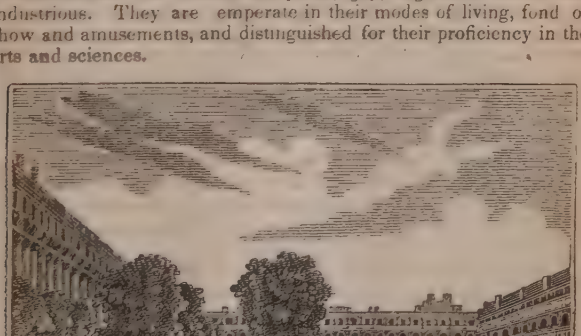
It is one of the most beautiful and fertile countries in Europe. Its surface is generally level, its climate mild, and its productions numerous and abundant, comprising the necessaries, and most of the luxuries of life.

The French surpass most other nations in agriculture and manufactures; and their learned men, their literary and scientific institutions, their libraries and museums, are celebrated throughout the civilized world.

The chief products of the soil are wheat, Indian corn, barley, vines, mulberries, the sugar beet, and in the southern part, olives, figs and oranges. Vineyards abound and wine is the common drink of the people; the annual produce is about 900 million gallons.

France, with regard to internal economy, is one of the richest and most flourishing countries in the world. Its commerce is extensive, colleges and schools are numerous, and the literary and scientific collections of Paris, are the most splendid in Europe.

Character.—The French are polite, gay, ingenious, active and industrious. They are emperate in their modes of living, fond of show and amusements, and distinguished for their proficiency in the arts and sciences.



PALAIS ROYAL, PARIS.

Cities.—Paris is pleasantly situated on both sides of the Seine, 112 miles from its mouth. It abounds in magnificent edifices, palaces, promenades, public gardens, fountains, monuments and places of amusement. Among its public buildings, are the royal palaces of the Tuileries, Louvre, Luxembourg, Palais Royal, the cathedral of Notre Dame, the church of St. Genevieve, the Hospital des Invalides, the Exchange, and Jardin des Plants. For splendor, magnificence and gayety, and for the extent and value of its libraries, and literary and scientific institutions, it exceeds any other city in the world.

In the neighborhood of Paris, are several interesting and beautiful places; among which, are Versailles, distinguished for its magnificent palace; St. Cloud, for its gardens, fountains and groves, and for being the favorite residence of Napoleon; and Fontainbleau, for its stately palace in the midst of a forest of 30,000 acres, the hunting seat of the monarchy.

Lyons, at the junction of the Rhone and Saone, is the second city in France, in commerce, industry, population and wealth. Its cathedral, hotel de ville, squares, fountains, and statues, are scarcely surpassed. It has long been noted for its manufactures of silks and gold and silver stuffs.

Marseilles is a rich and flourishing city. It is the principal seaport on the Mediterranean, and noted for its extensive trade. Bordeaux is distinguished for its manufactures, and its vast export of wines; Brest for being the chief naval station on the Atlantic, as Toulon is on the Mediterranean. Rouen is famous for its manufactures, commerce, and magnificent cathedral; Lille, for its trade and strong fortress; Dunkirk for its harbor and fortifications; Calais for its communication with England, and Strasburg for its trade, and the elegant and lofty spire of its cathedral, 574 feet high, being the highest in the world.

Havre, at the mouth of the Seine, is the seaport of Paris. It is strongly fortified, and is the chief seat of trade between France and the United States. Montpelier is noted for the salubrity of its climate; Toulouse for being once the capital of the Goths, and Avignon for being once the residence of the pope.

France has colonies in the West Indies, Guiana, Pondicherry in Hindostan, the island of Bourbon, and Algiers. The island of Corsica, in the Mediterranean, belongs to France. Its soil is fertile, its mines valuable, and beautiful coral is found on its coast. Bastia is the capital. Ajaccio is distinguished as the birth place of Napoleon Bonaparte.

In what direction from us is France? What are the six principal rivers of France? G. L. S. R. R. S. The Saone unites with the Rhone at Lyons. What mountains separate France from Spain? How long are the Pyrenees? What mountains in the south east part? What bodies of water border on France? What countries border on France? What cities can you mention in France? What is the population of Paris? What can you say of Paris? Population of Lyons? Marseilles? Bordeaux? Rouen? Strasbourg? What seaport at the mouth of the Seine, and for what is it noted? What important island in the Mediterranean belongs to France? c. What is the extent of France? Population? Government? Religion? State of society? How will you sail from Paris to Lisbon?

PORTUGAL.

How is Portugal bounded? What is its capital?

Portugal is a small and fertile kingdom, noted for its mild, pleasant and healthy climate, and for its variegated surface of plains, mountains, hills and valleys.

Agriculture, manufactures and commerce are in a backward state, and education is but little encouraged. The principal productions are vines, olives, oranges, lemons, figs and grain. The chief exports are wines, salt and wool.

The Portuguese were formerly the most enterprising and commercial nation on the globe. They led the way in the great discoveries of modern times. Their rulers were distinguished for their wise and liberal policy; their soldiers for valor, and their sailors for skill; but they have greatly degenerated from that enterprising spirit which made them so illustrious, and now rank among the most feeble and inefficient of European nations.

Character.—The Portuguese are friendly and hospitable, but generally ignorant and superstitious, and fond of music and dancing.

Cities.—LISBON is built on several hills, at the mouth of the Tagus. It is the most commercial city in Portugal, and has one of the best harbors in Europe. A great part of the city was destroyed by an earthquake in 1755, but has since been rebuilt. It has a great trade in wines and fruits, with England and the United States.

Oporto, the second city in the kingdom, is noted for its port-wine; St. Ubes for its salt-works, and Coimbra for its university.

In what direction from us is Portugal? What are its principal rivers? G. T. D. M. What mountains extend into the eastern part? What cape in the south-west part? What cities can you mention? Which is most populous? What is the extent of Portugal? Population? Government? Religion? State of society? Which is the largest, Portugal or this state? How will you go from Lisbon to Madrid?

SPAIN.

How is Spain bounded? What is its capital?

Spain is a large, warm and fertile country, and presents the most beautiful variety of mountains, valleys, streams and plains.

Few countries are more highly favored by nature, than Spain, and industry might soon render it the foremost nation of Europe. Its commerce however, is limited, its manufactures few, and its agriculture is in a very backward state.

The principal productions are wheat, Indian corn, barley, hemp, silk, olives, grapes, oranges, lemons, &c. The chief exports are wines, salt, wool, barilla and fruits. There are numerous mines of iron, copper, and lead. Great attention is given to the raising of merino sheep, so celebrated for the fineness of their wool. The number of sheep is estimated at 16 millions, attended by 15 thousand shepherds.

One of the most noted curiosities in Spain is Montserat, which stands in a large plain 20 miles N. W. of Barcelona. It rises in the form of a sugar loaf to the height of 3,300 feet, and is inhabited by numerous monks and hermits.

Spain was formerly, one of the most powerful and important kingdoms in Europe. She possessed immense territories in north and South America. But of all these possessions, she now retains only Cuba and Porto Rico. For a long time the nation has been distracted by civil dissensions and wars—education is neglected and industry paralized—and it is now in a degraded, weak and ignorant state.

The Balearic Islands.—Ivica, Majorca, Minorca, and some smaller isles belong to Spain. They are inhabited by a simple and peaceable people, and are noted for fruits and honey. Port Mahon in Minorca, has an excellent harbor and is much resorted to by our naval force in the Mediterranean.

Dancing is a favorite amusement, and in all large towns, bullfights are common and attended by thousands of all ranks and conditions of both sexes.

Character.—The Spaniards are tall, well proportioned, grave, polite, temperate and faithful to their word. The higher classes are distinguished for their noble and generous spirit, and high sense of honor. The peasants are ignorant, but courteous, polite, cheerful, and fond of music and dancing.

Cities.—MADRID, situated on the Manzanares, a small branch of the Tagus, is a magnificent city, distinguished for its squares and beautiful public walks. It has neither commerce nor manufactures, and derives its importance solely from being the seat of government. It is the most elevated capital in Europe, being about half a mile higher than the level of the sea.

Cadiz, situated on the island of Leon, is the first commercial city in Spain. It has an excellent harbor, and is the centre of trade for America and the West Indies.

Seville, in ancient times, the residence of the Gothic kings, and capital of Spain, is a large and handsome city, noted for its manufactures and commerce.

ROYAL PALACE, MADRID.

Barcelona is a large and strongly fortified city, distinguished for its commerce, manufactures and wealth.

Gibraltar is a celebrated promontory, at the southern extremity of Spain. It is about four miles in length, half a mile in width, and 1500 feet high. It was captured by the English in 1704, who have ever since retained possession of it. It has a remarkable fortress on it, so strengthened by nature and art as to be esteemed the most formidable in the world.

What do Spain and Portugal form? A. A great peninsula. What is the width of the isthmus that connects it to France? What mountains in Spain? What rivers? E. G. G. T. D. M. What is the population of Madrid? Barcelona? Malaga? Cadiz? In what direction from Madrid is Saragossa? Valencia? Santiago? Bilboa? Grenada, the ancient residence of the Moorish kings? What other cities can you mention? What remarkable fortress on the strait of Gibraltar? What can you say of Gibraltar? What islands in the Mediterranean belong to Spain? What are the names of the Balearic isles? For what is Spain noted? What is the extent of Spain? Population? Government? Religion? State of society? How will you sail from Cadiz to Naples?

ITALY.

How is Italy bounded? What are its capitals?

Italy is one of the most beautiful and interesting

countries in Europe. It is distinguished for the fertility of its soil, the mildness and serenity of its climate, and for the beauty, variety, and romantic character of its scenery.

Italy was the country of the ancient Romans, and under them, it became the garden of Europe, the parent of the arts and sciences, and mistress of the world. It is filled with monuments of ancient art and glory, and contains the most splendid specimens of painting, sculpture and architecture in the world.

Italy, although it abounds in the richest productions, grain, wine, oil, silk and various fruits, wears a melancholy aspect. Agriculture, manufactures and commerce are neglected, cities are thronged with beggars, the buildings are in a state of decay, and every thing shows that this beautiful country is degraded, depressed, and languishing under the bad influence of a despotic government.

Character.—The Italians are polite, cheerful, and graceful in their manners, and distinguished for their skill in music, sculpture and painting. They are naturally active, with strong passions and an ardent imagination, and among them have been some of the first poets, politicians and historians of Europe.

Italy was once the seat of a mighty empire, but it is now divided among several governments, of which the following are the principal, viz.

1. The kingdom of Naples, or the two Sicilies; Capital, Naples.
2. The Roman states, or States of the Church, " Rome.
3. The Grand Duchy of Tuscany, " Florence.
4. The kingdom of Sardinia, " Turin.
5. The kingdom of Lombardy and Venice, " Milan.

NAPLES, OR THE TWO SICILIES.

Naples comprises the southern part of Italy, the island of Sicily and the Lipari isles. The climate is warm, and the soil fertile, capable of producing the finest fruits, vegetables, wine, oil, sugar, cotton, &c. in abundance. But such is the oppressive character of the government, and the indolence and licentiousness of the people, that industry is neglected, and poverty and beggary are every where seen.

Mount Etna, on the island of Sicily, is the most celebrated volcano in the world. It is two miles high, and the sides of the mountain are fertile, and covered with vineyards, and the lower parts are occupied with towns and villages, liable at any moment to be overwhelmed by lava. For ages its eruptions have been frequent, often destroying whole cities and villages.

Mount Vesuvius, near Naples, is a remarkable volcano. It has had many tremendous eruptions. One, which happened in A. D. 79, overwhelmed Herculaneum and Pompeii, two ancient cities in the vicinity of Naples. These, after lying concealed under the lava

for nearly 1800 years, have been discovered, and whole streets have been laid open, and various works of art found in a remarkable state of preservation.

Stromboli is a volcano of the Lipari islands. It emits flames that may be seen at night more than 100 miles, and is termed "the light-house of the Mediterranean."

NAPLES AND MOUNT VESUVIUS.

Cities.—NAPLES is the most populous city in Italy, and is noted for the surpassing beauty of its bay, and the delightful scenery around it. It is generally well built, and remarkable for the number of its nobles and lazaroni. It has few manufactures, and but little commerce.

Palermo, the capital of Sicily, is a large and beautiful city, noted for the number of its churches, convents and chapels. Syracuse, so celebrated in ancient times, is now an inconsiderable place. Many remains of its ancient magnificence are still to be seen.

THE STATES OF THE CHURCH.

The states of the church occupy the central part of Italy. They are badly cultivated, and thinly peopled; but such is their natural fertility, that they produce almost spontaneously, dates, figs, almonds, olives, and other fruits, on which the indolent inhabitants principally subsist.

These states are ruled by the Pope, whose power formerly was more extensive than that of any king or emperor. His dominions are now greatly reduced, and his authority is principally in spiritual matters, and extends over the members of the Roman Catholic church in all countries.

ST. PETER'S CHURCH, ROME.

Cities.—Rome, once the capital of the Roman empire, and the proud metropolis of the civilized world, is situated on the Tiber, fifteen miles from its mouth. In the days of Augustus Cesar, its population was two millions, and its circumference fifty miles. Although greatly reduced, it is still one of the most magnificent and interesting cities in Europe, distinguished for the numerous remains of its ancient grandeur. It contains many splendid edifices, among which is St. Peter's church, one of the largest and noblest in the world.

Ferrara, Bologna, and Ancona, are places of importance.

San Marino. This little republic comprises a mountainous tract of about thirty square miles, within the states of the church. The inhabitants are a simple, industrious people. They have maintained their independence more than 1200 years. Population, 7,000.

THE GRAND DUCHY OF TUSCANY.

Tuscany is a small, fertile and populous state, and one of the most prosperous in Italy. The people are industrious and enterprising, and manufactures and commerce are flourishing.

Cities.—Florence, situated on the river Arno, in a delightful valley, is one of the handsomest cities in Europe. It is noted for its palaces, galleries and libraries, and distinguished as a seat of science and art.

Leghorn is a large and strongly fortified city, and one of the most commercial ports of Italy. It is noted for its straw hats. Pisa is a handsome but decayed city, famous for its university and leaning tower.

SARDINIA.

The kingdom of Sardinia comprises the north-western part of Italy,

and the island of Sardinia. The continental part has a mild climate, fertile soil, and abounds in the richest productions.

Cities.—TURIN* is one of the most regular and beautiful cities of Italy, noted for its manufactures of silk.

Genoa is the most commercial city of Italy. It was formerly the capital of a powerful republic, and noted for being the birth-place of Columbus. Cagliari is the principal town on the island of Sardinia and the residence of the viceroy.

MONACO. The principality of Monaco comprises 535 square miles. It is an independent state, under the protection of Sardinia. Population 6,500.

LOMBARDY AND VENICE.

The kingdom of Lombardy and Venice belongs to Austria, and is one of the most fertile and best cultivated portions of Italy, and is justly termed "the garden of Europe." The people are industrious; agriculture, trade, manufactures, science and arts, are in a flourishing state.

Cities.—MILAN is a large and magnificent city, noted for its cathedral, manufactures and trade. Venice, see Austria.

Mantua is an ancient and interesting city, and one of the most strongly fortified places in Europe. It is well built and is noted as the birth place of Virgil.

In what direction from us is Italy? What bodies of water border on Italy? What mountains in it? Rivers? How many cities can you mention? Which is most populous?—Into what states is Italy divided? What is the goverement?—Religion?—Extent and population of each? What can you say of Italy? Lombardy? Tuscany? How will you sail from Naples to Constantinople?

IONIAN REPUBLIC.

The Ionian Republic comprises the islands of Corfu, Cephalonia, Zante, St. Maura, Cerigo, Paxu and Theaki, in the Ionian Sea. The inhabitants amount to about 250,000. They are chiefly Greeks and Italians, and are a sagacious and enterprising people, and carry on considerable trade in wine, olive oil, and currants. The republic is under the protection of Great Britain.

CORFU, on the island of Corfu, is the capital. Population 16,000.

* Tu-reen'.

Zante, on the island of Zante, is the largest town. Population 20,000.

In what direction from us is the Ionian Republic? Which is the most northern of the Ionian isles? c. How many islands constitute this republic? Seven. What are their names? Under the protection of what government is this republic? Of what does the government consist? A. Of a lord high commissioner, appointed by the king of Great Britain, and a legislative assembly. In what direction from the Ionian isles is Malta? Candia? Corsica? England?

MALTA. Malta lies south of Sicily. It is a small and celebrated island, noted for the strength of its fortifications. Formerly the knights of St. John, a powerful military order, held possession of it, but it now belongs to Great Britain. It contains about 80,000 inhabitants, who are brave, active, industrious, but passionate, jealous, vindictive and superstitious. Valetta, the capital, is so strongly fortified as to merit the title of a second Gibraltar.

In what direction from us is Malta? What was it formerly called? A. Melita. [See Acts, chap. xxviii. 1—12.] To whom did it formerly belong? When and by whom was it captured? A. In 1798, by the French, under Bonaparte. In 1800, it was taken by the English. How will you sail from Malta to Constantinople?

THE TURKISH OR OTTOMAN EMPIRE.

In what direction from us is the Turkish Empire?

The Turkish empire was formerly of vast extent, and one of the most powerful on the globe. Though much reduced, it is still a large, populous and influential state. It comprises two great divisions, Turkey in Europe and Turkey in Asia.

The government is despotic. The sovereign, styled "the Grand Seignor," or "Sultan," unites in himself all the powers of the state, and disposes of the lives and property of his subjects at pleasure. His prime minister is called the Grand Vizier, and the government or court, "the Ottoman Porte," or "the Sublime Porte."

In religion, the Turks are Mahomedans. They came originally from Tartary in Asia, and in 1227 overthrew the empire of the Saracens, and in 1453, took Constantinople, and put an end to the eastern Roman empire.

Character.—The Turks are well formed, dignified, graceful and imposing in their appearance. They are honest, grave, courageous, and noted for their hospitality to strangers. They are ignorant, indolent, and in religion, intolerant. They shave their heads, instead of their beards, wear turbans instead of hats, loose robes instead of

coats, and sit on cushions instead of chairs, and in eating, use their fingers instead of knives and forks.

Is the Turkish empire increasing, or diminishing in power? What does it now comprise? Which is the largest division? What titles are given to the sovereign of Turkey? What is he sometimes called by the Turks? A. "The shadow of God," "Brother to the sun and moon," and "Refuge of the world." How do the Turks in their dress and customs differ from us?

TURKEY IN EUROPE.

VIEW IN CONSTANTINOPLE.

How is Turkey in Europe bounded? What is its capital?

Turkey in Europe is an extensive country, and is noted for its fine climate, fertile soil, and its favorable situation for commercial pursuits.

The northern part is level, consisting chiefly of immense plains, the southern, is mountainous, interspersed with beautiful and fertile valleys, and noted for its picturesque scenery. The soil, though poorly cultivated, produces wheat, rice, cotton, silk, wine, oil, fruits, &c. in abundance. Commerce and manufactures receive but little attention, and are chiefly in the hands of foreigners. The exports are carpets, muslins, camel's hair, swords, pistols, &c. &c.

Turkey possesses superior advantages for agriculture, manufactures and commerce. Its climate, soil, and situation are unequalled; but owing to its despotic government, there are no motives to exertion, and every thing languishes.

Cities.—CONSTANTINOPLE is delightfully situated on the Bosphorus, or strait of Constantinople, commanding a grand and extensive view of the coasts of Asia and the surrounding seas. It is strongly fortified, and has one of the best harbors in Europe. Its mosques, or Mahomedan temples, are numerous, and many of them are superb structures, particularly that of St. Sophia. The seraglio, or imperial palace, forms a little city by itself. It is three miles in circumference, and surrounded by a wall. It consists of dwellings, mosques, baths, kiosks, gardens and groves of cypress. It is occupied by the sultan, his court, and wives, of which he sometimes has 500. The part in which the women are kept is called "the Harem." The city contains 11 academies, 518 seminaries, 1300 schools for children, 13 public libraries, a mathematical and nautical school.

Adrianople is situated in ancient Thrace, on the river Maritza, in the midst of a fertile region. It is a large and populous city, and has considerable trade. It was taken by the Turks, in 1360, and from that time, it was the residence of the Turkish sultans until the conquest of Constantinople, in 1453. Belgrade is noted for its fortifications; Sophia for its warm baths; Salonica for its extensive commerce. Shumla is a strongly fortified town, and styled "the gates of Constantinople."

In what direction from us is Turkey? What is the principal river? Mountains? What countries border on Turkey? What bodies of water? Which is the most populous city? Describe Constantinople. In what direction from Constantinople is Adrianople? Salonica? Shumla? Larissa? Belgrade? Ibrali? Joanina? Jassy? What other cities can you mention? What is the extent of Turkey in Europe? Population? Form of government? Religion? State of society? Which has the greatest latitude, Constantinople or this place? For what is Turkey distinguished? What can you say of the Turks? What is their appearance? [See map of the world.] How will you go from Constantinople to Athens?

GREECE.

How is Greece bounded? What is its capital?

Greece is a small, new, and interesting kingdom, distinguished for its mild climate, fertile soil, and magnificent ruins.

Greece is finely diversified with hills, plains, rugged mountains, and beautiful and fertile vales. The chief productions are corn, oil, wine, cotton, wool, silk, rice and fruits. It possesses superior advantages for commercial pursuits. Its inlets and bays are numerous, and its coasts are studded with islands.

Greece is one of the most celebrated countries in the world. Three thousand years ago, it was the seat of one of the most polished nations of antiquity. Its heroes, orators, statesmen, philosophers, poets, painters and sculptors, surpassed all others of that age, and to them mankind are indebted for the first rudiments in most of the arts of civilized life.*

Character.—The Greeks are a brave, active, enterprising and industrious people, and distinguished for personal beauty. They are lovers of the arts, passionate in their feelings, and desirous of knowledge.

Cities.—ATHENS, formerly the capital of Attica, and birth place of the most distinguished orators, heroes and sages of antiquity, is now a small city, but is increasing in population, wealth and importance. It is distinguished for its ruins, some of which are magnificent remains of its ancient splendor.

Napoli, Patras, Corinth, Navarino, Tripolizza, are important towns. Syra, situated on an island of the same name, is the most commercial town in Greece. Hydra, on the island of Hydra, is noted for its commerce, and for the active part it took in the Greek revolution.

In what direction from us is Greece? What cape south of Greece? What cities can you mention? What large island east of Greece? What island east of Negropont, near the coast of Asia Minor, memorable for the dreadful massacre of its inhabitants by the Turks, in 1822? What island south-east of Scio, noted for being the birth

---

* Ancient Greece consisted of a number of independent States. These were subjected by Philip, king of Macedon, 338, B. C. Macedon and all the different states of Greece were subjugated by the Romans, B. C. 148, and formed into a Roman province. In A. D. 329, Constantine the great, emperor of the Romans, transferred the seat of empire from Rome to Byzantium, or Constantinople. This was then called the Byzantine, or Eastern Roman empire. In 1453, the Turks took Constantinople, and put an end to the Byzantine empire. After the conquest of the country, the Turks treated the Greeks with the greatest cruelty and oppression Their insolent masters looked upon them as an inferior race of beings, and only fit to perform the lowest offices of drudgery. The Greeks submitted to these oppressive acts, till 1821, when they revolted from the Turkish yoke, asserted their independence, and established a republican government. The Turks attempted to reduce them to subjection; a destructive war ensued, which lasted several years; at length the governments of Russia, France, and England interfered, and the Sultan of Turkey was compelled to consent to the independence of Greece. Since that time, the Greeks have succeeded in establishing an efficient government, and are at this time, comparatively speaking, in a prosperous and happy condition.

place of Pythagoras? What town on the gulf of Lepanto, north-west of Athens, noted for being the principal strong hold of the Greeks until 1826, and the death of Lord Byron in 1824? M. What is the extent of Greece? Population? Government? Religion? State of society? Which is largest, Greece or this state? Which extends farthest north? How will you sail from Athens to Washington?

ISLANDS.

CANDIA. The island of Candia, anciently called Crete, is 160 miles long, and from fourteen to fifty miles wide. It contains 4026 square miles, and about 300,000 inhabitants. In the centre of it, is the snowy ridge, called mount Ida, famous in mythology for being the birth place and residence of Jupiter. Its climate is fine, its soil remarkably fertile, and its productions numerous and valuable. The island was taken by the Turks in 1669, after a war of twenty-five years. It has recently been captured and now belongs to the Pacha* of Egypt. Candia, the chief town, is noted for its commerce.

CYPRUS. Cyprus is the most important island of the Levant.† It is about 170 miles long, 50 broad, and contains about 5000 square miles. In ancient times, it was the resort of the learned, gay and refined, and noted for its fertility and wine, and as the abode of pleasure. It belongs to the Pacha of Egypt.

RHODES. Rhodes is celebrated for its fine climate, fertile soil, and for its ancient commerce and naval power. It was formerly a rich and powerful republic. It has been frequently conquered, and now belongs to Turkey. Rhodes is the chief town and capital of the island. It has a good harbor, with a narrow entrance between two rocks, on which, it is said, stood the famous colossus, an enormous statue of bronze, 100 feet high, allowing the largest vessels of those times, to sail between its legs.

NEGROPONT. This island contains 1610 square miles, and about 60,000 inhabitants. It is separated from the continent by the strait of Euripus, over which is a bridge 200 feet long. It belongs to Greece, and abounds in corn, wine, oil and fruits.

Where is Candia? Which is the largest, Candia or this state? For what was it anciently celebrated? A. For the laws of Minos, its labyrinth, and its hundred cities. For what was mount Ida famous? To whom does it now belong?—Where is Cyprus? For what was it anciently noted? To whom does it belong?—Where is Rhodes? For what is it celebrated? What is its capital? What once stood across the entrance of the harbor? Do you imagine one of our ships could sail between its legs? What was the colossus at Rhodes considered? A. One of "The seven wonders of the world."

* Pa-shaw', a governor.

* Levant—the eastern part of the Mediterranean.

What were the seven wonders of the world? A. The Pyramids of Egypt, the Temple of Diana at Ephesus, the Mausoleum at Halicarnassus, the Statue of Jupiter at Olympia, the Walls of Babylon, the Colossus at Rhodes, and the Royal Palace of Cyrus.—Where is Negropont? What is its extent? What does it abound in?

Asia.

SCENE IN ASIA.

Asia is the largest, richest, and most populous division of the globe. It is remarkable for having been the scene of some of the most important events that the history of the world can furnish.

It was in Asia that our first parents were created, and there occurred the most noted transactions recorded in the scriptures. There lived the patriarchs and prophets; and there appeared the Saviour, and introduced his gospel, which is ultimately to bless all nations.

In Asia, likewise, successfully flourished some of the greatest and most powerful empires that the world has ever seen,—as the Assyrian, the Babylonian, the Median and Persian. This favored portion

of the globe was also foremost in civilization, arts, science and commerce. Indeed edifices were reared, cities built, and empires founded, while Europe, Africa and America were uninhabited and unexplored.

Asia is distinguished for its large and numerous rivers, its salt lakes, its vast elevated plains and deserts, and for the variety of its climate and its animal, vegetable and mineral productions.

Asia excels all other parts of the earth in the deliciousness of its fruits; the fragrancy of its plants, spices and gums; the salubrity of its drugs; the quantity, variety and beauty of its gems; the richness of its metals; and the fineness of its silks and cottons; and produces, also, an abundance of all the necessaries of life.

Nature has spread over Asia, all the treasures of the earth,—but most abundantly in India. Her bounties are distributed by imperceptible gradations through all its three zones. In the torrid zone—whose genial warmth converts the juices of plants to spices, balsam, sugar and coffee, with which Asia has enriched the West Indies—the sago, cocoa, date and umbrella palms reach a height of 200 feet, and the white elephant attains a size surpassing that of all other quadrupeds. From this region the silk-worm was brought to Europe, and hence to America.

This portion conceals in its bosom the most beautiful diamonds and richest metals, while its waves flow over the purest pearls and corals. The temperate zone has given to the other divisions of the globe, the melon, the vine, the orange and many of their most agreeable garden fruits, as well as the most productive kinds of grain, and the most charming flowers; and unites in its productions, symmetry with richness, particularly in its western regions. Here the oldest traditions place Paradise; here lie the enchanting Cashmere, and the Garden of Damascus; here blossoms the rose of Jericho near the cedars of Lebanon.

The eastern countries in the same latitude, possess the tea shrub and the genuine rhubarb. The camel, the Angora goat, the Thibetian sheep, the pheasant, and the horse, are natives of this zone. In the north blossoms a few Alpine flowers, and from the icy soil grows the dwarf-like Siberian cedar, till at 70° vegetation mostly ceases. Here live the smallest of quadrupeds. The shrew-mouse of the Yenisei, sables, ermines, foxes, otters, &c. afford the finest fur. The mineral kingdom furnishes rich ores, rare precious stones, and re-

markable fossil remains, especially those of the mammoth and elephant in high northern latitudes.*

The human mind for centuries, seems to have remained stationary in Asia. Ancient forms are preserved most rigidly, and no advances are, apparently, made in the arts and sciences. The internal commerce is still carried on by caravans† as in the most ancient times—before Abraham and Moses—when merchandise was transported from India through Bactria to Colchis, as at present to Cairo, Constantinople and Moscow. The foreign commerce is wholly in the hands of Europeans,—English, Dutch, French and Russians, and of Americans.

Questions.—For what is Asia remarkable? Which grand division of the globe was first peopled? Can you mention any events that occurred in Asia? What great empires flourished in Asia? Which division took the lead in civilization and arts, science and commerce? For what is Asia distinguished? In what respect does Asia excel other parts of the earth? Did you ever see any thing that was brought from Asia? If you could go to Asia, which part should you prefer to visit? Why? Do any of the nations of Asia speak the same language that we do? A. They do not; neither do they use the same characters in writing and printing that we do. The British own a large part of Hindostan, and of course speak the English language. In which country do you think you should prefer to live, the United States or Hindostan? Can we sail from the United States to Asia? Will you describe the voyage?

MAP OF ASIA.

How is Asia bounded?

Turkey?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Arabia?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Persia?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Beloochistan?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Afghanistan?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Hindostan?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Birman Empire?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Chinese Empire?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?

---

* Fossil remains here mean those parts of animals dug out of the earth, as teeth, bones, tusks, &c.

† A caravan consists of a number of merchants or pilgrims, who travel on camels. Their number often amounts to several thousands. They are provided with arms to defend themselves from the attacks of the wandering Arabs, and other tribes of robbers.

I. Tartary?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Siberia?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?
Caucasus?	Capital?	Chief Towns?	Rivers?

RIVERS.

Where does the river Jordan rise, in what direction does it run, and where does it empty?* Euphrates? Tigris? Indus? Nerbuddah? Kistna? Godavery? Ganges? Sampoo, or Brahmaputra? Irawady? Salwein? Meinam? Mecon, or Cambodia? Si Kiang? Kiang Ku? Hoang Ho, or Yellow river? Amour, or Saghalien? Anadir? Lena? Olensk? Anabara? Toongouski? Yenisei? Obi? Irtish? Ural? Sihon? Jihon?

SEAS.

Where is the Red Sea?
Where is the Sea of Arabia?
Where is the China Sea?
Where is the Yellow Sea?
Where is the Japan Sea?
Where is the Sea of Okhotsk?
Where is the Sea of Kamtchatka?
Where is the Sea of Kara?
Where is the Sea of Celebes?
Where is the Caspian Sea?
Where is the Aral Sea?
Where is the Dead Sea?

BAYS.

Where is the Bay of Bengal?
Where is Borghni Bay?

LAKES.

Where is Lake Baikal?
Where is Lake Balkan?
Where is Issyk?
Where is Lake Lob?
Where is Lake Durrah?
Where is Lake Van?
Where is Lake Orbsa?
Where is Lake Palte?
Where is Lake Kinka?

* The Jordan rises in mount Hermon, in Syria, and runs a southerl course, passing through the sea of Tiberias, or sea o Galilee, and empties intothe Dead Sea. Its length is about 160 miles

GULFS.

Where is the Persian Gulf?
Where is the Gulf of Oman?
Where is the Gulf of Cutch?
Where is the Gulf of Cambay?
Where is the Gulf of Siam?
Where is the Gulf of Tonquin?
Where is the Gulf of Tartary?

PENINSULAS.

Where is the Peninsula of Kamtchatka?
Where is the Peninsula of Corea?
Where is the Peninsula of Malay?

STRAITS.

Where is Behring's Strait?
Where is the Strait of Sangar?
Where is the Strait of Corea?
Where is the Strait of Macassar?
Where is the Strait of Malacca?
Where is the Strait of Babelmandel?

CAPES.

Where is North East Cape?
Where is Cape Chelagskoy?
Where is East Cape?
Where is Cape Navarin?
Where is Cape Lopatka?
Where is Cape Romania?
Where is Cape Comorin?
Where is Cape Fartak?

MOUNTAINS.

Where are the Altay Mountains?
Whereare the Stannovoi Mountains?
Where are the Ural Mountains?
Where are the Caucasian Mountains?
Where are the Belur Tag Mountains?
Where are the Himalaya Mountains?
Where are the Gaut Mountains?
Where are the Ramleah Mountains?
Where is Mount Sinai?
Where is Mount Taurus?
Where is Mount Ararat?
What is the length of the Altay Mountains? Himalaya? Ural?

DESERTS.

Where is the Great Desert of Cobi or Shamo?
Where is the Sandy Desert?
Where is the Great Salt Desert?
Where is the Arabian Desert?
Where is the Syrian Desert?
Where is the Desert of Khiva?

ISLANDS.

Where is the island of Socotra? Lacadives? Maldives? Ceylon? Andaman? Nicobar? Sunda Isles, viz. Sumatra, Java, Banca and Timor? [See map of the World.] Borneo? Celebes? Gilolo? Bouro? Ceram? New Guinea? St. Andrews? Pelew Isles? Philippine Islands, viz. Luzon, Mindanao, Samar, Leyte and Negros?—Palawan? Hainan? Bashee Isles? Formosa? Loochoo, or Leo Keo? Sulphur Isles? Benin Isles? Japan islands, viz. Niphon, Sikofk and Kiusof? Jesso?—Saghalien? Kurile islands? Behring's? New Siberia? Nova Zembla?

TURKEY IN ASIA.

How is Turkey bounded? What is its capital?

Turkey comprises some of the finest and fairest regions of Asia. Within its limits, have transpired some of the most astonishing events recorded in history. It was once the seat of the renowned empires and kingdoms of Assyria, Babylonia, Armenia, Lydia, Syria, and Judea; and here once stood the celebrated and flourishing cities of Babylon, Nineveh, Troy, Balbec, Palmyra, Antioch and Tyre. But ignorance, superstition and barbarism, now cover the land, and few traces remain of its former civilization except ruins.

Turkey is agreeably diversified with hills, plains, mountains and valleys. The climate is delightful, and the soil remarkable for its fertility. It is famous for its wines, wheat, barley, silk and fruits, and for its manufactures of carpets and leather.

The population consists of Turks, Greeks, Arabs, Jews, Curds, Armenians, Druses and Turkomans. The Turks are the ruling people, and resemble those of Turkey in Europe.

Cities.—CONSTANTINOPLE is the capital of the Turkish empire,

RUINS OF PALMYRA.

noted for its beautiful situation on the west side of the Bosphorus, or strait of Constantinople. [See Turkey in Europe.]

Bagdad, once the renowned seat of the Saracen Caliphs, and one of the most magnificennt cities in the world, is situated on the Tigris, 300 miles N. W. of Bassora. It is the resort of caravans from India, Persia and Arabia, but retains little of its ancient splendor.

Smyrna is a large and populous city, and is the chief emporium of Asiatic Turkey. It is the common rendezvous of merchants from all parts of the world, and carries on an extensive trade with the United States. Bassora is a noted city, celebrated for its extensive commerce with India, Persia and Arabia.

SYRIA.

Syria is an interesting country. It has been celebrated in all ages for its fine climate, fertile soil, valuable productions, and its populous cities. It abounds in mountains, plains, hills, and fertile valleys. Mount Lebanon, as in ancient times, rears its snow-crowned summit, and its sides are covered with majestic cedars.

Syria has ever been famous in the history of war. On its plains, the Assyrians, Jews, Greeks, Parthians, Romans, Crusaders, Turks, French and Egyptians, have, at different periods, struggled for possession. At present, it is under the control of the pacha of Egypt.

Cities.—ALEPPO, was formerly a large and populous city. It was nearly destroyed by an earthquake in 1822, but is fast recovering. It is a place of great trade, and celebrated for its manufactures of silk and cotton, and for its numerous caravans.

Damascus is delightfully situated in the midst of a fertile plain. It is one of the oldest places in the world, and noted for its manufactures of silk and cotton goods. It has an extensive commerce, by means of caravans, and is one of the best built cities of western Asia. The chief seaports are Tripoli, Beirut and Saida.

PALESTINE.

Palestine, or the Holy Land, is one of the most celebrated countries in the world. It was the residence of the ancient Jews, and the scene of most of the events recorded in the Scriptures. Instead of being that happy, fruitful and prosperous state, it once was, it now forms a part of Syria, and but few traces of its ancient splendor remain.

Cities.—Jerusalem, the ancient capital of Judea, is situated about forty miles from the Mediterranean. It was once the metropolis of the powerful kingdom of David and Solomon, and had its temple built of the cedar of Lebanon, and ornamented with the gold of Ophir. It retains but little of its former splendor, and is distinguished for being the resort of pilgrims from various parts of the Christian world.

Bethlehem is noted for being the birth-place of our Saviour; Nazareth as the place of his residence, and Cana for his turning water into wine. Jaffa, Gaza, and Acre are the chief towns on the coast.

In what direction from us is Turkey in Asia? What are the two principal rivers? E. T. What bodies of water border on Turkey? What lake in the eastern part? V. What cities can you mention? What is the population of Smyrna? Bagdad? Bassora? Amasia? Trebisond? What is the extent of Turkey? Population? Government? Religion? State of society? What does Turkey comprise? What noted mountain in the northeastern part? A. What mountains in the southern part of Asia Minor?—In what part of Turkey is Syria? For what is Syria celebrated? What cities can you mention? What can you say of Aleppo? Damascus? To what empire did Syria formerly belong? A. The Turkish empire. To what government does it now belong? The ruins of what two ancient splendid cities are in Syria? A. Balbec and Palmyra.—In what part of Syria is Palestine? What can you say of Palestine? Into what four divisions was it divided in the time of our Saviour? [See map of Palestine.] How many cities can you mention? Describe Jerusalem. What noted river? Where is the Dead Sea? What country south of Palestine?

ARABIA.

How is Arabia bounded? What is its capital?

Arabia consists chiefly of immense deserts, interspersed with fertile spots like islands. It has no large rivers or lakes, and in many places it is destitute of water.

It is divided into three parts, viz. *Arabia Petræa*, in the north-western part; *Arabia Deserta*, embracing the interior and north-eastern part; and *Arabia Felix*, in the southern part.

The climate is excessively warm on the plains, and subject to a destructive wind called the Samiel or Simoom, but mild and healthy on the mountains.

The principal productions of Arabia are *coffee*, *gum-ar-a-bic*, *frankincense*, *myrrh* and *aloes*.

The most useful animal in Arabia is the *camel, and next to this, the horse, which is celebrated for beauty, swiftness, hardiness and docility.

Character.—The Arabs are an ignorant, savage and barbarous people. Those on the coast are *pirates;* those in the interior are *robbers.* During the middle ages they were called Saracens, and were distinguished for learning and science, but at present they are so illiterate, that but few can be found who are able either to read or write.

Cities.—Mecca is situated in a narrow valley, 40 miles from the Red Sea. It is a well built city, and is celebrated as the birth place of Mahomet. It is supported by pilgrims who resort thither from all parts of the Mahometan world.

Medina, 180 miles north of Mecca, is celebrated for containing the sepulchre of Mahomet. Mocha is the principal seaport of Arabia, and is celebrated for its excellent coffee. Aden, once a noted city, but now much decayed, belongs to the British East India Company, who have made it a naval station and are strongly fortifying it.

In what direction from us is Arabia? What bodies of water border on Arabia? What mountains in the northern part? R. What mountain in the north-west part near the gulf of Suez? S.

* The camel is the only animal that can endure the toil of traversing the vast deserts. It can travel six or eight days without water, and carry 700 or 800 pounds upon its back.

How is Arabia divided? What towns can you mention? Which is most populous? For what is Mecca celebrated? Medina? Mocha? Of what is Muscat the capital? o. What can you say of Oman? A. It is an independent state under the control of an Imam, or chief, who has a considerable navy, and carries on an extensive commerce. Muscat is the general depot for the merchandize of India and Persia. What is said of the Arabian horse? What is the extent of Arabia? Population? Government? Religion? State of society? In what direction from Mecca is Teheran?

PERSIA.

ISPAHAN.

How is Persia bounded? What is its capital?

Persia, one of the most celebrated and powerful kingdoms of antiquity, at present exhibits scarcely a vestige of its former greatness.

It consists principally of immense plains and barren mountains, interspersed with numerous salt lakes and marshes. It is generally destitute of trees nd rivers.

Some of the valleys and plains are fertile, and produce *grain*, *wine*, *silk*, *tobacco*, *fruits* and *drugs* in abundance.

The Persians are distinguished for the extent and

variety of their manufactures, which consist of the most beautiful *carpets, brocade, silk, shawls, porcelain,* &c.

On the western part of the coast of the Caspian Sea, are fountains of *naptha* or *pure rock oil.* The earth around them, when dug to the depth of two or three inches, readily takes fire on applying to it a live coal. Here still reside the Persees or fire worshippers.

Character.—The Persians are polite, gay, polished and hospitable, and are among the most learned, active and industrious of the Eastern nations.

Cities.—TEHERAN is a strong city situated 60 miles south of Caspian Sea and 300 north of Ispahan. Its situation is low, and appearance mean.

Ispahan, the ancient capital of Persia, and formerly one of the most splendid cities of the east, is situated on the Zenderoud, about midway between the Caspian Sea and Persian gulf. Though much reduced, it is still a large city, noted for its manufactures and trade.

Bushire is the principal seaport.

In what direction from us is Persia? What bodies of water border on Persia? What are the principal rivers? K. K. What cities can you mention? Which is most populous? What seaport on the strait of Ormus? G. What ruins south of Ispahan? P. What desert in the interior? What is the extent? Population? Government? Religion? State of society? For what are the Persians distinguished?

AFGHANISTAN.

How is Afghanistan bounded? What is its capital?

Afghanistan is a modern kingdom of Asia, and like Persia, is greatly diversified with mountains, valleys, hills and deserts.

It has almost every variety of climate and soil. The principal productions are *wheat, barley* and various kinds of *fruit.*

Character.—The Afghans are a brave, fierce and warlike people, and are distinguished for hospitality, not only to strangers, but to their most implacable enemies.

Chief Town.—CABUL is situated on the river Cabul, a branch of the Indus, and has a considerable trade with India, Persia and Tartary.

ORIENTAL SCENERY.

In what direction from us is Afghanistan? What lake in the western part? D. What river empties into lake Durrah? H. What towns can you mention? Which is most populous? What city in the north west part, capital of a small independent state? H. For what is Herat noted? A. For its manufactures and commerce. What is the extent of Afghanistan? Population? Government? Religion? State of society? What is the character of the Afghans?

BELOOCHISTAN.

How is Beloochistan bounded? Its capital?

Beloochistan has seldom been traversed by Europeans, and therefore but little is known respecting it. As far as it has been explored, it is generally mountainous and barren.

Inhabitants.—Beloochistan is inhabited by two tribes; the Beloochees who subsist by plunder and robbery; and the Brahooes, a peaceable and industrious people, who inhabit the mountainous districts, and subsist principally on their flocks and herds.

Town.—KELAT is situated on the Maskid river. It is generally well built, and contains about 20,000 inhabitants.

In what direction from us is Beloochistan? What towns can you mention? Which is most populous? What is the extent of Beloochistan? Population? Government? Religion? State of society?

INDIA.

In what direction from us is India?

India comprises two great peninsulas, and has, in every age, been celebrated for its immense population, civilization, and for its profusion of magnificent and valuable products.

The western peninsula is called Hindostan, and the eastern, Farther India, or Chin-India. Each of these is remarkable for its majestic rivers, the heat of its climate, and great fertility.

India, in its vegetable and mineral productions, is one of the richest countries on the globe. It abounds in animals of almost every kind. Elephants, tigers, lions, &c. are numerous,—the country swarms with serpents, and the forests are filled with birds of the most beautiful plumage and song.

Between what sea and bay is Hindostan? Farther India? Which is the largest peninsula? What cape south of Hindostan? South of Farther India? Did you ever see an animal that was brought from India?

HINDOSTAN.

PROCESSION OF THE GOVERNOR GENERAL.

How is Hindostan bounded? Its capital?

Hindostan is the most beautiful country in Asia,

and has been famous in all ages for its civilization, valuable productions, and for its wealth and extensive manufactures.

Hindostan is mostly a level country, and is distinguished for its numerous rivers and the general fertility of its soil, which produces two crops in a year.

The climate in the northern part is mild and healthy; in the south it is warm, and the heat is often oppressive.

Almost every variety of production is found here; the most important are *rice*, *cotton*, *wheat*, *sugar*, *indigo*, *opium*, *tobacco*, *millet* and various kinds of *fruit*.

The *Banian Tree* is the most singular and beautiful production of India. The branches extend to the earth, and take root, and thus form new trunks, so that each tree is a grove. One of these trees, on an island in the Nerbuddah river, has 3000 trunks, and 7000 persons may repose under its shade.

Hindostan has long been celebrated for its *diamonds*, which are found principally at Golconda.

The British possessions in India consist of Bengal, Bahar and Benares, on the banks of the Ganges, of which Calcutta is the capital; of other places on the coast of Coromandel, of which Madras is the capital; of the island of Bombay, Surat, and several districts on the Malabar coast, of which Bombay is the capital.

CEYLON.

Ceylon belongs to Great Britain. It is a rich, healthy, and fertile island, and is distinguished for the variety and value of its productions, the most important of which are *cinnamon*, *ginger*, *pepper*, *sugar*, *cotton*, &c. It has valuable *pearl fisheries*, and is rich in precious stones and gems.

Columbo, the capital, is a handsome and well fortified place, but has a poor harbor.

Inhabitants.—The Hindoos are indolent, spiritless, and superstitious. They are mild and servile to superiors, but haughty and cruel to their inferiors. They are the most ingenious manufacturers of muslins, silks, shawls, &c.

The Hindoos are divided into four classes or castes: 1. The Bramins, or priests; 2. The soldiers; 3. The merchants and agricultur-

THE FOUR CASTES.

ists; 4. The sudras or laborers. These castes are kept entirely distinct, and are never allowed to intermarry, or even to eat and drink with each other.

Towns.—CALCUTTA, the metropolis of the British power in India, is situated on the Hoogly, an outlet of the Ganges, about 100 miles from its mouth. It has an extensive commerce, and is one of the most splendid cities in Asia.

Benares, the ancient seat of Braminical learning, is situated on the Ganges, 460 miles N. W. of Calcutta. It has an extensive trade in diamonds, gems, &c. and is a place of great wealth.

Delhi, formerly the capital of Hindostan, and seat of the Mogul empire, is situated on the Jumna, a branch of the Ganges.

In what direction from us is Hindostan? What mountains separate it from the Chinese empire? What mountains near the Malabar coast? What are the principal rivers? I. N. T. K. G. M. G. E. Where is Great Sandy Desert? What gulfs? C. C. M. What cities can you mention? Which is most populous? In what direction from Calcutta is Bombay, the capital of Western British India? Madras, the capital of Southern British India? Delhi, the former capital and seat of the Mogul empire? Lucknow, capital of the province or kingdom of Oude? Hydrabad, capital of Golconda? What is the extent of Hindostan? Population? Government? Religion? State of society? What noted tree in Hindostan? How many degrees east of London is Dacca? When it is noon at London, what time is it at Dacca?—What important island south of Hindostan?—To what government does Ceylon belong? What towns

on it? What gulf between Ceylon and Hindostan? What two clusters of islands south-west of Hindostan?

FARTHER INDIA.

In what direction from us is Farther India?

Farther India or Chin India is a large, populous and fertile region, noted for the richness of its minerals, and the value of its vegetable productions. It comprises the Birman empire, the empire of Anam, the kingdom of Siam, the British possessions in the western part, and the Malay peninsula.

The governments of Farther India are highly despotic. The inhabitants generally profess the religion of Buddha, or Gaudama, and pay great attention to the building of costly temples, which are gaudily ornamented with gilding, painting and varnishing.

FARTHER INDIA.—TIGER HUNT.

Farther India abounds in wild animals; among which the most noted are the tiger, rhinoceros, leopard, and ourang-outang. It is also famous for its elephants, which are used as beasts of burden.

In what direction is Farther India longest? In what part is the Birman empire? Empire of Anam? Siam? Malay peninsula? British territories? Which extends farthest south, Farther India or Hindostan?

BIRMAN EMPIRE.

In what direction from us is the Birman empire?

The Birman empire is of recent origin, and is one of the most important and powerful divisions of Farther India.

The Birmans are a brave, warlike people, noted for activity, enterprise and intelligence.

Ava, situated on the Irawady, about 500 miles from the sea, is noted for its magnificent temples and palaces.

Rangoon, the grand emporium of the empire, is situated on one of the branches of the Irawady. Its chief ornament is the great temple of Shoe Dagon.

In what direction is the Birman empire longest? What rivers in it? Cities? What is its extent? Population? Government? Religion? State of society?

EMPIRE OF ANAM.

In what direction from us is the Empire of Anam?

The empire of Anam embraces the countries east of the Birman empire and Siam, and is noted for its fine climate, valuable productions, and numerous animals.

The people are active, industrious, and the late emperor has organized his army and navy, and constructed fortresses after the European manner.

Hue, is a large and strongly fortified place, and is one of the most complete and remarkably military structures in Asia.

Saigon, formerly the capital of Cambodia, is noted for its strong citadel, and the beauty of the surrounding scenery.

What is the principal river in Anam? What cities can you mention? What is the extent of Anam? Population? Government? Religion? State of society?

SIAM.

In what direction from us is Siam?

Siam is a populous, fertile, and highly cultivated kingdom. It has mines of gold, silver and copper,

and is celebrated for the beauty and docility of its elephants.

The Siamese are of an orange color, generally mild, courteous, but disingenuous, vain, and avaricious. They are fond of boat fights, combats of elephants, processions and illuminations.

Bankok, situated on the river Meinam, may be regarded almost as a city floating on the water. The houses are little more than large wooden boxes, extending in rows eight or ten feet from the bank, to which they are fastened by long bamboos.

What cities in Siam? What river? A. The Meinam. What gulf south of Siam? What is the extent? Population? Government? Religion? State of society?

BRITISH POSSESSIONS.

The British Possessions include two long, narrow strips of territory, in the western part.—one south of the Brahmaputra, and the other south of the river Salwein.

The principal towns are Arracan and Amherst.

Of how many portions do the British possessions consist? Which is largest? What name is given to the part north of the Birman empire?

MALAY.

In what direction from us is Malay?

The Malay peninsula is mostly occupied by small independent tribes. It is noted for its extensive forests, numerous rivers, and excellent fruits.

The inhabitants are noted for the ferocity of their character. Their chief occupation is piracy and robbery.

The orang outang is found in Malay, and elephants, tigers, crocodiles, &c. abound.

Malacca is the principal place, and is possessed by the British. Singapore, on an island of the same name, is a city of great commercial importance, and also belongs to the British.

What strait separates Malay from Sumatra? What towns? What is the government? Religion? State of society?—What name is often applied to Hindostan Farther India. and the islands on the csast? A. East Indies. Where are the West Indies?

CHINESE EMPIRE.

How is the Chinese Empire bounded? Its capital?

The Chinese Empire comprises China, Thibet, Corea, and Chinese Tartary and is one of the most extensive and populous empires on the globe.

CHINA.

How is China bounded? Its capital?

China is celebrated for the great antiquity of its government; for its immense population; for the variety of its manufactures and peculiar productions; for the excellence of its inland navigation, and for its reserve and jealous policy towards all other nations.

China has a mild, healthy climate, and a rich, fertile soil, which is under the highest state of cultivation.

The productions are numerous; the most celebrated among them is *tea*, which is the leaf of a shrub, that grows from 8 to 12 feet high.

THE TEA TRADE.

The principal exports are *teas*, *silks* and *porcelain*, or *China ware*.

THE CHINESE WALL.

One of the greatest curiosities of China, is the Chinese wall. It is 1,500 miles in length, from 20 to 30 feet in height, and sufficiently wide for six horsemen to ride abreast. It is said to have been finished 214 years before the Christian era. It was built as a defence against the Tartars.

Character.—The Chinese are mild, intelligent, courteous, and extremely industrious; but generally vain, timid, artful, and jealous of strangers.

Towns.—PEKIN, the capital of the Chinese Empire, is situated in a fertile plain about 50 miles from the great wall. It is 14 miles in circumference, and is surrounded by a wall 30 feet high. It is one of the most populous cities on the globe.

Nankin was formerly one of the most splendid cities in China, but is now much decayed. It is distinguished for the extent of its manufactures, particularly *silks*, *crapes*, and *nankeens*. It is famous for its Porcelain Tower, which is 200 feet high.

Canton, situated on Canton river, is the first commercial city in China, and the only one to which Europeans and Americans are permitted to trade. The chief article of export is tea.

In what direction from us is China? What are the principal rivers of China? K. K. H. What bodies of water border on China? What stupendous work of antiquity bounds China on the north? Describe the Chinese wall. What canal extends from Hang-choo-foo to Pekin? A. The Imperial Canal. What cities can you mention? What is the population of Pekin? Nankin? Canton?

What is the extent of China? Population? Government? Religion? State of society? In what is the chief beauty of a Chinese lady thought to consist? A. In the smallness of her feet. These are bound up from infancy to prevent their growing to the natural size. What article in common use among us is produced only in China? What is tea? How much tea is annually exported to the United States and Great Britain? A. About sixty million pounds. At what port are foreigners permitted to trade? For what is China celebrated?

THIBET.

In what direction from us is Thibet?

This is one of the most elevated divisions of Asia. The Himalaya mountains, in the southern part, are the highest range on the globe; Dawalageri, the principal summit, is five miles high.

It is a cold and barren country, but abounds in a variety of animals; the most noted among them is a species of goat, from the hair of which the Cashmere shawls are manufactured.

The religion of Thibet consists in worshipping the Grand Lama, who is regarded by his worshippers as the vicegerent of God.

Lassa, the capital, is distinguished as the residence of the Grand Lama, and is generally thronged with people from various parts of Asia, who come to worship his sacred majesty.

Of what empire does Thibet form a part? What mountains separate Thibet from Hindostan? What great desert extends into Thibet? What large rivers rise in Thibet? C. O. B. I. What cities in Thibet? What noted character resides at Lassa? At Teeshoo Loomboo resides an inferior Lama. What kingdom south of Thibet, subject to the Grand Lama? A. Bhotan. Where is Little Thibet?

CHINESE TARTARY.

In what direction from us is Chinese Tartary?

Chinese Tartary is an extensive country, consisting of an elevated plain, bounded by lofty mountains.

It comprises Mantchooria, Mongolia, Soongaria and Little Bokhara. Most of the tribes lead a wandering, pastoral life, and are worshippers of the Grand Lama. Horses are the wealth and strength of Tartary. Horse-flesh is a standing dish from one end of the country to the other. Among the Kalmuks, or Songars, marriage is cele-

brated on horse-back. On the day appointed for their nuptials, the bride mounts a fleet horse, and rides off at full speed. Her lover pursues her, and if he overtakes her, she becomes his wife without further ceremony. But if she dislike him, she is sure not to be overtaken by him.

Of what empire does Chinese Tartary form a part? What rivers can you mention in it? Towns? What mountains separate it from Siberia? What lakes in it? In what part is Little Bokhara? Little Thibet? Mongolia?

COREA.

In what direction from us is Corea?

Corea is a large peninsula and but little known. It is said to be a healthy, fertile, and populous country.

The capital is King-ki-ta'-o.

Which has the highest latitude, Corea or this state? What is the capital? E. Between what two seas does Corea lie? What is the government? Religion? State of society? What strait between Corea and the Japan islands?

EMPIRE OF JAPAN.

In what direction from us is Japan?

The empire of Japan consists of the islands of Niphon, Kiusof, Sikofk, and several smaller ones adjacent.

It is a rich, populous, and remarkable empire, holding no intercourse with any nation, except the Dutch and Chinese.

The climate is mild and healthy, and the soil productive. Agriculture is held in high estimation, and no portion of the soil, except the most barren wastes, is left uncultivated.

The chief productions are *rice*, *millet*, *wheat*, *barley*, &c. It has valuable mines of *gold*, *silver*, *iron* and *copper*; and most of the islands abound in coal.

Inhabitants.—The Japanese are the most civilized people in Eastern Asia, and are remarkable for their industry and ingenuity. They excel most nations in the manufacture of silk and cotton goods, and in Japan and porcelain ware. Great attention is paid to education; and they have several schools for the higher branches, as Rhetoric, Astronomy, Mathematics, &c.

SEDAN CHAIR.

Towns.—JEDDO is a large, populous, and commercial city, in the eastern part of the island of Niphon. It is the seat of flourishing manufactures, and contains many splendid edifices.

Miaco, the ecclesiastical and literary capital of the empire, is situated in the interior, 160 miles S. W. of Jeddo. It has an extensive commerce, and is distinguished for the extent and value of its manufactures.

Nagasaki, on the island of Kiusof, is a large and commercial seaport, and the only place where the Dutch are permitted to trade.

What does the empire of Japan comprise? What strait separates Niphon from Jesso? What cities in Japan? Which is the capital? 1. Which is the religious capital? Miaco. What is the extent? Population? Government? Religion? State of society? Which extends farthest north, Niphon or this state? What can you say of the inhabitants of Japan? At what port are the Dutch permitted to trade? Why will they not allow any other European nation to trade with them? In what kind of carriage do the ladies ride?

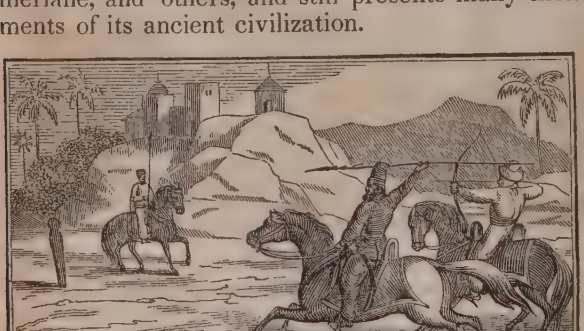
INDEPENDENT TARTARY.

How is independent Tartary bounded? Its capital?

Independent Tartary is inhabited by several tribes of Tartars; the two principal of which are the Usbecks in the south, and the Kirgees in the north.

The climate in most parts is mild, and the soil generally fertile. Agriculture and manufactures receive but little attention.

This country was formerly the seat of the most powerful empire in Asia, under Ghengis-Khan, Tamerlane, and others, and still presents many monuments of its ancient civilization.



TARTARS EXERCISING WITH THE BOW AND LANCE.

Character.—The Tartars are a wandering people, and rove from place to place, with their flocks and herds. Their employment consists in tending their flocks, hunting and exercising with the bow and lance. They are ignorant and superstitious, but brave, and remarkable for their hospitality to strangers and travellers.

Chief Towns.—BOKHARA, the capital of Great Bokhara, is 100 miles west of Samarcand, on the Sogd. It contains many colleges for instruction in the Mahometan law.

Samarcand is situated on the Sogd, a branch of the Jihon or Orus river. It was once the capital of the empire of Tamerlane, and was a celebrated seat of science, but retains little of its former magnificence.

In what direction from us is Independent Tartary? What sea west of Independent Tartary? What sea in it? Lake? What rivers empty into them? What outlets have they? If they have no outlets, what becomes of the water? What desert in the south-

west part? What name is given to the southern part? What tribes can you mention? What are the two principal tribes? What range of mountains in the eastern part? What is the population? Government? Religion? State of society? What can you say of the Tartars? What is a favorite amusement? Which extends farthest south, Independent Tartary or this state?

SIBERIA.

How is Siberia bounded? Its capital?

Siberia is a cold, extensive and dreary region, inhabited by a number of barbarous tribes, who are subject to Russia.

It is mostly a level country, consisting of vast plains, called *steppes*, many of which are entirely destitute of vegetation.

Siberia has rich mines of *gold*, *silver*, *copper*, *lead* and *iron*; and abounds in wild animals, many of which are highly valuable on account of their furs; particularly the *martin*, *sable*, *beaver*, and *ermine*. Besides these, there are *elks*, *wolves*, *bears*, *reindeer*,

TRAVELLING IN KAMTCHATKA.

foxes, *hares*, &c. In Kamtchatka, *dogs* are used for drawing carriages.

Siberia serves the Russian government as a place of banishment for convicts and prisoners of state. Men of superior talents and exalted virtues, have been sent to spend the remainder of their days in these cold and desolate regions, only for their adherence to liberal principles and just laws.

Character.—The original inhabitants are ignorant, filthy, and barbarous, and subsist by hunting and fishing.

Towns.—Tobolsk, the capital of Siberia, is noted as a place of banishment for criminals sent from Russia, and is the centre of the Russian fur trade.

Irkoutsk, the chief town of Eastern Siberia, is the principal mart of commerce between Russia and China. It is the most splendid and prosperous city in Siberia.

In what direction from us is Siberia? What bodies of water border on Siberia? What peninsula in the eastern part? What capes can you mention? Rivers? Lake? Towns? What tribes can you mention? What is the mode of travelling in Kamtchatka? What mountains separate Siberia from Russia in Europe? From Chinese Empire? What town south of lake Baikal, noted for its trade with the Chinese? A. Kiatka. Of what empire does Siberia form a part? What is its form of government? Should you like to live in Siberia? Why not?

CAUCASUS.

How is Caucasus bounded? Its capital?

Caucasus comprises the country between the Caspian and Black Seas, and lies partly in Europe and partly in Asia, and is inhabited by a number of nations, who are subject to Russia.

It is a rough, broken, and mountainous country, entirely destitute of plains; the climate in the valleys is mild and healthy, and the soil fertile.

The Circassians and Georgians are the two principal nations in this division. The Circassians inhabit the northern declivity of the Caucasian mountains, and are a ferocious and barbarous people.

The Georgians possess the country south of the Caucasian mountains, and are friendly and hospitable, and said to be the handsomest people in the world.

These nations are celebrated for the beauty of their females; numbers of whom are sold by their parents as slaves to the Turks and Persians.

Tiflis, the capital of Georgia, is situated on the river Kur. It is

SELLING A CIRCASSIAN FEMALE.

strongly fortified, and contains a number of churches, and is the residence of the Russian governor.

In what direction from us is Caucasus? What three seas border on it? Does it lie wholly in Europe or Asia? What part of it lies in Europe? A. The part north of the Caucasian mountains. In what part is Georgia? What separates the Circassians from the Georgians? What is said of the Georgians? How do parents dispose of their daughters? What is the government? Religion? State of society?

Africa.

Africa is one of the largest grand divisions of the globe, and is remarkable for the heat of its climate, its immense sandy deserts, and for the ignorance and barbarism of its inhabitants.

Africa is, and ever has been the land of mystery. Although it is separated from Europe but by a narrow sea; and notwithstanding its coasts have been sailed round for centuries, and even surveyed; still we know but little more of the interior than did the ancients, three thousand years ago.

In ancient times, Africa contained many kingdoms and states eminent for their wealth, civilization and power. Among these, Ethiopia was much celebrated,—Egypt, the cradle of the arts and sciences, brought to Europe the first germs of civilization,—and Carthage extended her commerce over every part of the then known world. But these once flourishing regions have been frequently conquered, and every spark of science has for ages been extinguished. Though the second in size, it is at the present time the least known, least civilized, and the least important of the five grand divisions of the globe.

The surface of Africa presents strange contrasts. In some parts, it is excessively parched; in others, marshy or flooded; and by reference to the map, it will be seen that it is penetrated by no inland seas like those of Europe and Asia, and is overspread by no extensive lakes, as North America. It contains but few navigable rivers, and these of short extent, and no bays, gulfs or inlets, like the other grand divisions, which open a way into its immense internal regions, and which might thus promote commerce and civilization throughout the interior. But in addition to these disadvantages, we find its various parts separated from each other, by arid deserts of formidable extent, which cannot be traversed without the most imminent danger, and the severest suffering. Hence we see the reason why Africa has remained so long unexplored, and the progress of civilization so much slower than in any other quarter of the globe.*

The most remarkable of the African deserts is the Sahara. This is a vast plain, but little elevated above the level of the ocean, and covered with sand and gravel, with a mixture of sea shells, and appears like the basin of an evaporated sea. Amid the desert there are springs of water, which burst forth and create verdant spots, called Oases. There are thirty-two of these, which contain fountains, and date and palm trees; twenty of them are inhabited. They serve as

---

* Living in abundance, but separated from one another by deserts; surrounded by copious and excellent food of spontaneous growth, but encountering obstacles in all their attempts at artificial culture; enjoying a climate which required no clothing to protect them from cold, nor dwelling to shelter them from rain, the Negro, or Ethiopian, and probably also the Caffre or Troglodyte, never felt that stimulus of necessity which creates industry and reflection. Enjoying a wild happiness of condition, they satisfied the demands of sense, and scarcely possessed any notion of an intellectual world. But they felt the presence of an invisible power. They looked for its residence in the tree which gave them food—in the rock which shaded them—in the serpent which they dreaded—and even in the monkeys and parrots which flitted around them. Some believed that a piece of wood, or polished stone, was the seat of supernatural power. They were delighted to think that their deities could be carried along with them in all their motions. This system, which is called FETICHISM, and which is the rudest form of Pantheism, seems common to every climate and to every race; but it prevailed, to the exclusion of every other, in Africa, and especially among the Negroes.

stopping places for the caravans, and often contain villages. Were it not for these, no human being could cross this waste of burning sand. So violent, sometimes, is the burning wind, that the scorching heat dries up the water of these springs, and then frequently, the most disastrous consequences follow. In 1805, a caravan, consisting of 2000 persons, and 1800 camels, not finding water at the usual resting place, died of thirst, both men and animals. Storms of wind are more terrible and destructive on this desert than on the ocean. Vast surges and clouds of red sand are raised and rolled forward, burying every thing in their way, and it is said that whole tribes have thus been swallowed up.

In no part of the earth, do the empire of fertility and that of barrenness come into closer contact than in Africa. Wherever moisture and heat are united, vegetation displays great vigor and magnificence. The inhabitants find abundant food at a trifling amount of labor. The corn stalks bend under their load,—the vine attains a gigantic size—melons and pumpkins acquire enormous bulk—millet and holcus, a species of grain which is common over three fourths of Africa, though badly cultivated, yield a crop of two hundred fold; and the date tree, which furnishes an important article of food, is able to withstand the fiery winds of the neighboring deserts. The forests of mount Atlas are equal to the finest of Italy and Spain. The soil, when well watered, is luxuriant beyond what the inhabitants of more northern climates can well conceive, producing plants and fruits, at the same time the most nutritious, the most refreshing, and the most wholesome.

The animal kingdom presents still greater variety. Africa can enumerate five times as many species of quadrupeds as Asia, and three times as many as all America. Among these are some of the most vigorous, ferocious, and beautiful varieties. The African lion is the only one worthy of the name. The unwieldly hippopotamus, the majestic giraffe, and the largest of birds, the ostrich, are peculiar to this division. Among the other animals are the elephant, rhinoceros, zebra, panther, leopard, hyæna, jackal, wolf. But the most beneficent gift of nature to the African is the camel, the constitution of which is in every respect adapted to the country and climate. Africa abounds in serpents of monstrous size and deadly poison, and swarms with insects of the most troublesome and destructive kinds.

The inhabitants of Africa belong to two distinct races, viz. the European and African. The former includes the natives of the Barbary States, Egypt, Nubia and Abyssinia;—the latter embraces those of the central and southern parts, distinguished by the blackness of their complexion, the short, crisped, woolly nature of their hair, the thickness of their lips and the flatness of their noses. They are termed Negroes or Africans, and form the most numerous class of inhabitants.

By reference to the map, it will be seen that Africa is more favora-

bly situated for commerce than any other division of the globe. Placed almost in the centre of the world, it enjoys an easy communication with Europe, Asia, and America. It abounds in all the necessaries and luxuries of life, and its inhabitants need only to be enlightened, and directed by the generous spirit of the gospel, to render them the most happy of mankind.

Questions.—How does Africa compare with North America in size? What is its probable population? How many square miles does it contain? For what is it remarkable? Have civilized nations ever known much about the geography of Africa? What celebrated nations once flourished in Africa? What has become of them, do you suppose? What do you imagine will be the situation of this nation three thousand years hence? Did you ever see any animals that were brought from Africa?

MAP OF AFRICA.

How is Africa bounded?

Morocco?	Capital?	Principal Towns?
Algiers?	Capital?	Principal Towns?
Tunis?	Capital?	Principal Towns?
Tripoli?	Capital?	Principal Towns?
Barca?	Capital?	Principal Towns?
Egypt?	Capital?	Principal Towns?
Nubia?	Capital?	Principal Towns?
Abyssinia?	Capital?	Principal Towns?

Where is Fezzan? What is its capital?
Where is Sene Gambia? Its chief towns?
Where is Sierra Leone? What is its chief town?
Where is Liberia? What is its chief town?
Where is Guinea? What are its principal kingdoms?
Where is Loango? What are its chief towns?
Where is Congo? What is its capital?
Where is Benguela? Its principal towns?
Where is Cimbebas? What cape has it?
Where is Cape Colony? Its chief town?
Where is Caffraria? Its chief town?
Where is Mozambique? Its chief town?
Where is Zanguebar? Its chief towns?
Where are Ajan and Somauli?
Where is Ethiopia? What towns in it?
Where is Soudan? Its principal towns?
Where is Darfur? What is its capital?

RIVERS.

Where does the Nile rise, in what direction does it run, and where does it empty? Niger? Senegal? Gambia? Grand? Gaboon? Zaire, or Congo? Coanza? Orange? Zambezi? Haines?

ISLANDS.

Where are the Azores?
Where are the Madeira Isles?
Where are the Ca-na'-ry Isles?
Where are the Cape de Verde Isles?
Where are Fernando Po, Princes, St. Thomas and Annobon Isles?
Where is Ascension Isle? St. Helena?
Where is Madagascar? What towns on it?
Where is Mauritius? Bourbon Isle?
Where are the Comoro Isles?
Where are the Aldabra Isles?
Where are Seychelles and Almirante Isles?
Where is the island of Socotra?

CAPES.

Where is cape Bon?
Where is cape Guardafui?
Where is cape of Good Hope?
Where is cape Verde?
Where is cape Spartel? Cantin and Nun? Barbas and Blanco? Roxo? Palmas? Three Points and Coast Castle? Frio and Agulhas? Recif? Delgado? Bassa? Ambro and St. Mary?

DESERTS.

Where is Sahara, or Great Desert?
Where is the Lybian Desert?

MOUNTAINS.

Where are the Atlas mountains?
Where are the mountains of the Moon?
Where are the mountains of Kong?
Where are the Snow mountains?

LAKES.

Where is lake Tchad?
Where is lake Demba?
Where is lake Maravi?

GULFS.

Where is the gulf of Cabes?
Where is the gulf of Sidra?
Where is the gulf of Guinea?

STRAITS.

Where is the strait of Babelmandel?
Where is the strait of Gibraltar?
Where is the channel of Mozambique?

EGYPT.

MOSQUE OF THE SULTAN HASSAN.

How is Egypt bounded? What is its capital?

Egypt is celebrated for its great antiquity; for the early civilization of its inhabitants, and for being the parent of the arts and sciences. But like most seats of early renown, it has lost its former greatness, and is now distinguished only for the magnificence of its ruins.

Egypt is divided into two parts, Upper and Lower. Upper Egypt extends from Nubia to Cairo; and Lower Egypt from Cairo to the Mediterranean.

The cultivated part of Egypt consists principally of a fertile vale, 15 or 20 miles in breadth, on both sides of the river Nile. The remainder of the country is mountainous and barren.

The climate in summer is extremely warm; in winter it is mild and agreeable.

The chief productions are *maize, rice, wheat, barley*, &c. and most of the *fruits* of the torrid and temperate zones.

Rain is very uncommon in Egypt, but owing to the annual flood of the Nile, and the heavy dews, the soil seldom suffers for want of moisture. The Nile annually overflows its banks, and spreads over the country like a sea. The rise of the Nile commences about the middle of June, and begins to subside about the first of September. The lands thus overflowed are extremely fertile and easily cultivated. Manufactures are in a low state.

Inhabitants.—The inhabitants consist of Copts, Arabs, Turks and Jews. The Copts are the most numerous class, and are the descendants of the ancient Egyptians. They are active, ingenious, and well skilled in business.

Cities.—CAIRO, the capital of Egypt, is one of the largest and most interesting cities in the world. It is about ten miles in circuit, and is remarkable for the great number of gardens it contains, and for the beautiful plantations and groves around it. The houses are built of stone and brick, with terraces and flat roofs, and the windows are often glazed with colored glass. There are 80 public baths, 300 magnificent mosques adorned with lofty minarets, 2 Greek, 12 Coptish, 1 Arminian church, and 36 synagogues; also numerous manufactories of silk, camblet, tapestry, gunpowder, leather, linen, cotton, &c. It contains likewise a Mahomedan high school, a printing office, and a library of about 25,000 volumes. It is the centre of trade between Europe, Asia and the interior of Africa, and the resort of travellers from various parts of the world. Although a large city, yet its present appearance can scarcely be compared with the idea of its ancient glory, when it was the metropolis of Africa, the second capital of the east, the scene of the wonders of Arabian romance, and of the real incidents of Arabian history, scarcely more credible than those of oriental fiction.

Alexandria was built by Alexander the Great, 331 years B. C., and for a long time was the seat of learning, commerce, and magnificence, and remarkable for its palaces and temples, and for its large library, consisting of 700,000 manuscript volumes. It is *now* greatly decayed, and abounds in the ruins of its ancient grandeur; among which are Pompey's Pillar, 75 feet high, two obelisks, and the catacombs. In the height of its splendor, it is said to have contained 600,000 inhabitants.

Antiquities.—Egypt abounds in the most stupendous monuments of antiquity, as pyramids, temples, obelisks, catacombs, &c. The pyramids have been the wonder of all ages of the world. The largest of them is that of Cheops, near Cairo. It is 500 feet high, and covers more than 11 acres. When, by whom, and for what purpose they were erected, is entirely unknown. Near one of the pyramids, is the

celebrated Sphynx, a statue of a huge monster, cut out of the solid rock. It has the face of a virgin, the body of a lion, and is 125 feet in length.

In what direction from us is Egypt? What river in Egypt? What cities? What city at the head of the gulf of Suez? s. What is the width of the isthmus of Suez? What desert extends into the western part of Egypt? What is the extent? Population? Government? Religion? What does Egypt abound in? In what part are the ruins of Thebes?

BARBARY STATES.

Which are the Barbary States? M. A. T. T. B.

The northern part of Africa, now included in the Barbary States, once contained several kingdoms and states, eminent for power, wealth, and commerce. But they have been repeatedly conquered, and scarcely exhibit a vestige of their former greatness.

The inhabitants of the Barbary States are divided into four classes, viz. Moors, Jews, Arabs and Berbers. The former are ignorant, rapacious and cruel, and have long been noted for their piracies and political debasement.

Between the Atlas mountains and the Mediterranean, the climate is mild and pleasant, and the soil is fertile, but miserably cultivated.

The chief productions are *oil*, *wine*, *fruit*, *sugar*, *cotton*, and most kinds of *grain*.

Between the Atlas mountains and the Desert, the country produces little except dates, but these grow in such abundance, that it is called *Biledulgerid*, or *the land of dates*.

These states are distinguished for the number of noxious animals which infest the mountains and desert tracts; the most noted and ferocious among them are lions, panthers and hyenas.

Serpents of an enormous size are also common. The most noted is the *boa constrictor*, or *serpent of the desert*, which moves with such incredible swiftness that no animal can escape from it.

Among the great variety of insects in these states, the most formidable is the *locust*, which often comes from the desert in such immense swarms as to devour every species of vegetation.

BARCA.

How is Barca bounded? What is its capital?

Barca, the ancient Libya, is nominally dependent on Tripoli, though it seems to be the property of no government or people. The interior is mostly a desert, and once contained the temple of Jupiter Ammon.

The coast of Barca, once famed for its threefold crops, is still fertile, but badly cultivated.

The sovereignty is divided between two Beys, one of whom resides at Derne; the other at Bengazi.

DERNE is situated about half a mile from the Mediterranean. It was taken in 1805, by Gen. Eaton, a native of Brimfield, Mass.*

In what direction from us is Barca? What gulf west of Barca? What towns in Barca? What desert south of Barca? What country in Europe opposite to Barca? What is the government? Religion?

TRIPOLI.

How is Tripoli bounded? What is its capital?

Tripoli, the ancient Tripolis, is the most civilized, but the weakest of the Barbary States, and abounds in the remains of antiquity.

TRIPOLI, the capital, is a regular, well built and fortified city, and has an excellent harbor.

In what direction from us is Tripoli? What two gulfs north of Tripoli? What towns? What division south of Tripoli? What is the government? Religion?

TUNIS.

How is Tunis bounded? Its capital?

Tunis, the ancient *Africa Propria*, and the seat

* See Olney's History of the United States, page 198.

of the Carthaginian power, is one of the most powerful states of Barbary.

Tunis, the capital, is situated about six miles from the gulf of Tunis, and is one of the first cities in Africa. It has considerable trade, and valuable manufactures.

About 12 miles N. E. of Tunis are the ruins of ancient Carthage, which was founded by Dido, 869 years before Christ. For a long time, Carthage was the emporium of northern Africa, the empress of the sea, and the formidable rival of Rome. It was destroyed by the Romans under Scipio Africanus, at the close of the third *Punic* war, 146 years B. C.

In what direction from us is Tunis? What gulf east of Tunis? What noted cape north of it? What towns in it? What large island between Tunis and Italy? What small island east of Tunis? What ancient city once stood near the northern part? What is the government? Religion? Population?

ALGIERS.

How is Algiers bounded? What is its capital?

Algiers, the ancient Numidia, is the most fertile and healthy of the Barbary states, and is noted for the valuable coral fishery on its coast. It was conquered in 1830 by France, and is now held as a colonial territory.

Algiers, the capital, is a large and strongly fortified town. It has a good harbor, and considerable commerce.

Constantina is a large city of the interior, and occupies the site of ancient Cirta. It is 160 miles east of Algiers, and is said to contain many elegant buildings.

In what direction from us is Algiers? What mountains extend into Algiers? What towns can you mention? In the possession of what government is Algiers? What is the population? Government? Religion? What country in the southern part of Algiers? What country in Europe opposite to Algiers?

MOROCCO.

How is Morocco bounded? What is its capital?

The empire of Morocco, the ancient Mauritania,

embraces the kingdoms of *Fez*, *Morocco*, *Tafilet*, and *Tarudant*, and is noted for the fertility of its soil, and its abundance of *fruits*, *grain*, *olives*, &c.

Morocco, the capital, is situated in the midst of a fertile plain, about 120 miles from the Atlantic. It is surrounded by a high wall, and contains many splendid temples and mosques, but is much decayed.

Fez, the capital of the ancient kingdom of Fez, is the most splendid city in the Barbary States. It is situated in a beautiful valley, and was once famous for its institutions of learning.

In what direction from us is Morocco? What bodies of water border on Morocco? What towns can you mention? What mountains? How long are the Atlas mountains? How high is mount Miltsin? What tribes in the southern part? What islands north-west of Morocco? A. West? M. South-west? C. What naval action took place near the Canaries, and when? Which is the most northern town? What noted fortress in Spain opposite? What is the width of the straits of Gibraltar?

SENE GAMBIA.

Sene Gambia embraces a number of small populous states, and in general, is a well watered and fertile country. The climate is intensely warm, and at most seasons of the year, extremely unhealthy to foreigners.

Respecting the various tribes of *Negroes*, that inhabit this coast, little is known with certainty. The most numerous tribes are the *Foulahs*, *Jalloops*, *Felops* and *Mandingoes*. They are ignorant, superstitious and indolent, and are acquainted with but few of the arts of civilized life: but their natural dispositions are mild and benevolent. The English, French, and Portuguese have settlements on the coast for the purpose of trading with the natives.

The principal articles of export are *gum*, *gold*, *ivory* and SLAVES.

Sene Gambia abounds in almost every species of wild animals. Elephants are extremely numerous, and furnish almost all the ivory of commerce. This region is much infested by venomous *insects*, disgusting *reptiles*, and clouds of *locusts*.

Timboo is the capital of Foota Jallo, and is represented as one of the largest cities in this part of Africa.

The Foolahs, or inhabitants of Foota Jallo, are scattered over great part of Africa. The great body of the nation live about the sources of the Gambia and Rio Grande. Besides these, there are tribes of them south of Fezzan, and on the confines of Bornou; like-

AFRICAN ANIMALS.

wise on the Niger and Senegal. They are said to be *mild*, *humane*, *polite*, *industrious* and *hospitable*.

In what direction from us is Sene Gambia? What three rivers in Sene Gambia? What towns? What two capes on the coast? What small island between Cape Verde and Cape Roxo, once the greatest military station of the French in Africa? A. Goree Isle. What town situated on an island at the mouth of the Senegal, capital of all the French possessions in Western Africa? St.-L. What cluster of islands west of Sene Gambia?

SIERRA LEONE.

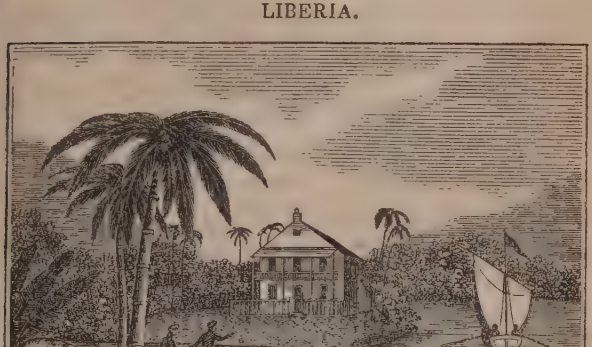
The English settlement of Sierra Leone was formed in 1787, for the purpose of civilizing the Africans, and of facilitating the abolition of the slave trade. The colony contains about 17,000 inhabitants, composed chiefly of liberated negroes, taken from captured slave ships.

Here are a number of missionaries, actively engaged in the benevolent employment of instructing the Africans in the elements of learning and religion, and in the arts of civilized life; and their labors thus far have been attended with encouraging success.

Freetown, the capital of Sierra Leone, is situated near the mouth of Sierra Leone river, and has an excellent harbor and about 13,000 inhabitants.

In what direction from *us* is Sierra Leone? Where is Sierra Leone? What island on the coast? S. What is the principal town in Sierra Leone? F.

LIBERIA.



VIEW IN LIBERIA.

Liberia is an American colony, founded by the American Colonization Society, in 1820. The object of the settlement, was to furnish a place for the free negroes and emancipated slaves of the United States.

Liberia extends from Cape Mount to Cape Palmas, and is about 300 miles in length. The colony is in a flourishing condition, and is exerting a happy influence on the neighboring tribes. It contains several populous towns and villages. The inhabitants are industrious and actively engaged in agriculture and trade. Monrovia is the chief town.

MAP OF LIBERIA. In what direction from us is Liberia? What rivers in Liberia? What capes? What towns? What colonies? L. M. M. What tribes of Africans?

UPPER GUINEA.

Upper Guinea comprises a number of small king-

doms, the principal of which are Ashantee, Dahomey, and Benin.

Ashantee is the most powerful, civilized, and commercial kingdom in the western part of Africa. The capital is Coomassie.

Dahomey is a populous and fertile kingdom, inhabited by a savage, ferocious and warlike people. The capital is Abomey, which is merely a large collection of huts.

Benin is scarcely known to Europeans, but it is represented as a fertile and well watered country, and said to be inhabited by an industrious and humane people. The capital is *Benin*.

The coast of Guinea is divided into the Grain, the Ivory and Gold coast; each portion being named from its principal article of commerce. There are a number of European settlements or factories on the Gold coast, established for the purpose of trading with the natives for gold dust. Cape Coast Castle belongs to the British—Elmina to the Dutch—and Christiansburg to the Danes.

In what direction from us is Upper Guinea? What mountains separate Upper Guinea from Soudan? What rivers? Towns? Gulfs? What is the government of these tribes? State of society?

LOWER GUINEA.

METHOD OF CARRYING THE NOBILITY IN LOWER GUINEA.

Lower Guinea comprises Biafra, Loango, Congo, Angola and Benguela. It is an extensive, fertile and populous country. The natives are rude and bar-

barous, and extremely stupid. It abounds in wild animals, venomous serpents, &c.

St. Salvador, the capital of the kingdom of Congo, is situated in the interior on the top of a high mountain. Its position is extolled as one of the most healthy in the world. The Portuguese have several settlements in Congo, for the purpose of carrying on the slave trade, the capital of which, and of all their settlements in this part of Africa, is Loanda.

Biafra borders on the gulf of Biafra, and is almost wholly unknown. Its capital is *Biafra*.

In what direction from us is Lower Guinea? How is Lower Guinea divided? What rivers? Towns? What is the government of these tribes?

CIMBEBAS.

The country between Lower Guinea and South Africa has been called Cimbebas, from the name of a powerful tribe which is said to inhabit the interior. The inhabitants are said to be extremely ignorant and filthy, and have no other clothing than the skins of animals.

South Africa.

South Africa comprises the country south of the tropic of Capricorn, and is divided into the Cape Colony, Caffraria and the country of the Hottentots.

Cape Colony belongs to Great Britain, and is the most important possession of that government in Africa.

The inhabitants consist of Dutch, English, and Hottentots. The soil is fertile, and produces grain, wine, fruits, and good pasturage. The farmers are called boors, and occupy extensive tracts of land. Near Cape Town is Table Mountain, so called from its singular shape.

Cape Town is regularly and handsomely built, and is an important station, being the only place where vessels stop for refreshment, to and from the East Indies.

In what direction from *us* is Cape Colony? What river in Cape Colony? Towns? Mountains? When was the Cape of Good Hope discovered? When doubled? To what government does Cape Colony belong? What is the government? Religion? State of society?

The Hottentots are divided into various tribes; the principal of which are the Bechuana, Namaquas, Bushmen, Batclapees, and

Zoulahs. They are, in general, an ignorant, stupid, and filthy people. They build their houses in a circular form, with the doors opening towards the centre, and thus form a kind of court, into which their cattle are collected at night to preserve them from the beasts of prey.

HOTTENTOT VILLAGE.

CAFFRARIA is little known. The inhabitants generally resemble the other tribes of Hottentots in their manners, but are more hardy and enterprising.

Eastern Africa.

The eastern coast of Africa extending from Caffraria to Abyssinia, contains a number of separate kingdoms, of which we have but little knowledge.

MOZAMBIQUE embraces a large extent of country, and is nominally subject to the Portuguese.

The city of Mozambique is the capital of all the Portuguese possessions in this part of Africa. Population, 3.000.

ZANGUEBAR is said to be an unhealthy country, and to abound in wild animals, serpents, crocodiles, &c.

MELINDA is the capital of a kingdom of the same name, which is partially dependent on the Portuguese.

AJAN is a Mahometan state, and has a considerable trade in gold, ivory, and ambergris. Many parts of it are barren and desolate.

SOMAULI is a fertile and populous kingdom, and is noted for its frankincense and myrrh.

In what direction from us is Eastern Africa? How is the eastern coast of Africa divided? What river in Mozambique? Zanguebar? What small kingdoms or states in Zanguebar? What towns? What town in Somauli, noted for its frankincense, gum Arabic and myrrh? What is the government of Eastern Africa? State of society?

ABYSSINIA.

Abyssinia, the ancient Ethiopia, is a mountainous country, and has a fine, healthy climate, and a rich, fertile soil.

The principal productions are *wheat*, and a small grain called *teff*, *balsam*, *myrrh*, &c.

Among the other vegetable productions is the *papyrus*, so celebrated among the ancients, as the original material of paper.

Inhabitants.—The Abyssinians are in the lowest state of civilization; and in many of their customs, they are extremely barbarous and brutal. They scarcely regard human life, and are fond of eating raw flesh, cut from the living animal, in its warm, palpitating state. They profess Christianity, but it is more in name than in reality.

GONDAR is situated on a hill, surrounded by a deep valley. It has a mean appearance, its houses being built of clay, and only of one story.

Axum, the former capital, is distinguished for its extensive ruins.

In what direction from us is Abyssinia? What river in Abyssinia? Lake? Towns? What mountains extend into Abyssinia? What separates Abyssinia from Arabia? How wide is the strait of Babelmandel? What is the government of Abyssinia? Relgioin?

NUBIA.

Nubia contains several kingdoms; the two principal of which are Sennaar and Dongola.

Nubia is mostly an extensive tract of sandy and rocky deserts, and but thinly inhabited.

The wind here moves the sand like the waves of the sea; and so rapidly that nothing can escape it. The *Simoom*, or *poisonous blast* from the desert blows here, which if received into the lungs, causes instant death.

The climate is extremely warm, but generally dry

and healthy. The soil on the banks of the Nile is rich and fertile.

The principal articles of commerce are *gold dust*, *ivory* and *slaves*.

Nubia is celebrated for its magnificent remains of antiquity.

The most noted among them is the temple of Isambul, which is cut out of a solid rock, and is 86 feet high, and 117 wide. It is in a complete state of preservation, although it is supposed to have been built more than 2,000 years.

Inhabitants.—The inhabitants consist of numerous tribes of Arabs, most of whom are noted for their treachery, intemperance and ferocity.

Towns.—Dongola, the capital of the kingdom of Dongola, is situated on the Nile, 280 miles south of Syene. It is a meanly built town, and is in a state of decay. It is now in the possession of the Mamelukes, who have been expelled from Egypt.

Sennaar, the capital of the kingdom of Sennaar, is situated on a branch of the Nile. It is a large, populous, and meanly built town, and has considerable commerce.

In what direction from us is Nubia? What celebrated river passes through Nubia? What desert in the northern part? What towns? What cataracts in the Nile? What is the religion of Nubia? For what is Nubia celebrated? Describe the temple of Ipstambul. What poisonous wind in Nubia?

Central Africa.

The interior of Africa is very little known. It is divided by the Gebel el Kumri, or Mountains of the Moon, into Soudan on the north, and Ethiopia on the south.

Ethiopia has never been visited by white men, and consequently its geography is *entirely unknown.*

Soudan, is divided into a great number of small kingdoms, most of which have never been explored by Europeans. Those parts which have been explored are well watered and extremely fertile producing all the luxuries of the vegetable kingdom, and abound in almost every species of wild animals.

The inhabitants consist of Negroes, who are said to be more mild and humane than those living on the coast.

The *Niger* is the principal river in Soudan, and has excited an

THE LION ATTACKING A COW.

extraordinary degree of interest, by reason of the various and contradictory accounts, relative to its source and termination. But it is now ascertained that it empties into the gulf of Guinea. In 1830, Richard and John Lander, two enterprising English travellers, set out for the purpose of tracing the course of the river to its mouth. They reached it a short distance from Sackatoo, and then descended it to its termination in the gulf of Guinea. Its course is through a rich and populous country, the inhabitants of which have made considerable progress in civilization.

The principal kingdoms of Soudan, known to Europeans, are *Darfur*, *Dar Zaleh*, *Begharmi*, *Bornou*, *Houssa*, *Borgou*, *Timbuctoo*, *Bambarra*, *Kanem*, *Kuar*, and *Fezzan*.

Darfur is a considerable kingdom, and is inhabited by an industrious people, who are principally engaged in agriculture. Cobbe is the capital.

Dar Zaleh is an extensive kingdom, but little known. Wara is its capital.

Begharmi is a small kingdom dependent on Bornou. The capital is Babalia.

Bornou embraces an extensive, fertile tract, and is the most powerful and flourishing kingdom in Soudan. Kouka is the capital, and is said to be a large city.

Houssa is a large kingdom, and is inhabited by an intelligent people, who have considerable skill in agriculture and manufactures. The chief town and great emporium of the kingdom of Houssa, is Kano.

*The Felatah empire is of modern date. It is represented as a powerful empire, and is said to hold several kingdoms in subjection. The capital is Sackatoo. It was built in 1805, and is said to be a large, populous town.

Borgou is subject to the Felatah empire. Boussa is the capital.

Timbuctoo is a large, fertile, and powerful kingdom, and one of the most civilized in Soudan. Timbuctoo, the capital of the kingdom, is situated about 10 miles from the Niger. It is the centre of commerce for Soudan, and is the resort of caravans from Egypt, Nubia, Barbary and Abyssinia.

Bambarra is a large, fertile, and powerful kingdom. Sego, the capital, is situated on both sides of the Niger, and contains about 30,000 inhabitants.

Kanem is a powerful kingdom, lying north of Bornou. The capital is Koriah, and is a place of extensive trade.

Kuar is an extensive tract, lying west of Dongola, consisting mostly of deserts, interspersed with a few fertile spots like islands. It is inhabited by the Tibbous, who are a wandering tribe, and possess all the regions south and S. E. of Fezzan.

Fezzan is a large kingdom tributary to Tripoli. It consists of an extensive oasis, or fertile spot, in the northern part of the Desert, surrounded on all sides, except the west, by mountains. It is chiefly important as the centre of trade for the caravans which traverse the interior. The chief productions are *dates*. The capital is Mourzouk, and is the grand depot for the commerce carried on between the Barbary States and central Africa.

In what direction from us is Central Africa? What lake in Soudan? What rivers? What are some of the principal kingdoms? What towns? What is the population of Fezzan? Mourzouk? What wells south of Fezzan? What are some of the routes of caravans across the desert? What resting places in the desert?

African Islands.

The Azores, or Western Isles, are nine in number, and belong to Portugal. They have a fine climate and fertile soil, producing *wheat, maize, barley, vines, oranges*, &c. They are subject to earthquakes, by which they have often been laid waste. Angra, on the island of Terceira, is the capital.

The Madeira Islands consist of Madeira, Porto Santo, and the Desert Isles. Madeira, the principal island, is distinguished for its *wines*, which are exported to various parts of the world. The capital is Funchal. These islands belong to Portugal.

The Canary Islands are thirteen in number, and belong to Spain.

---

* Clapperton's Travels in Africa.

They are distinguished for their *wines*, *fruits*, and *Canary birds*. Teneriffe is celebrated for its lofty peak, which rises about two and a half miles above the level of the sea.

The CAPE DE VERDE ISLANDS are fourteen in number, and belong to Portugal. They have an unhealthy climate, and generally a barren, rocky soil. The principal exports of these islands are *salt* and *goat skins*.

ST. HELENA is a lofty and rocky island, and belongs to the English, There is only one harbor, which is of difficult access and easy defence. This island is remarkable for the imprisonment and death of Napoleon Bonaparte.

SERPENT, ANTELOPE AND CROCODILE.

MADAGASCAR is one of the largest islands on the globe. It has a healthy climate and a fertile soil, and is said to be rich in minerals. The crocodile grows to a great size in this island, and infests all the principal rivers, and has frequently been known to carry away an ox.

It is inhabited by a number of petty tribes of different races—Arabians, Malays and Africans—most of whom are in a savage state, and but little acquainted with the arts of civilized life.

The chief productions are *rice*, *sugar cane*, *cocoa nut*, *banana*, and the common productions of tropical climates.

MAURITIUS, or ISLE OF FRANCE, belongs to the English. It is a rugged and mountainous island, producing tropical *fruits;* likewise *ebony*, and other valuable kinds of wood.

Bourbon belongs to France. It is composed of two mountains; one of which is a volcano, and is in constant action, and serves as a light-house to mariners.

Where are the Azores? To what nation do they belong? Population? Where are the Madeira Isles? Canaries? Cape Verd Isles? St. Helena? Madagascar? Mauritius? Bourbon? Which are the most valuable Islands?

Oceanica.

Oceanica comprises the numerous isles of the Pacific, lying south east of Asia. They are divided into Malaysia, or the East India isles, Australasia and Polynesia.

Most of the islands of Oceanica lie in the torrid zone, and are noted for their rare productions and delightful climate.

The inhabitants consist of two classes, the Malay race, and the Papuans or Melanzian negroes. The *former* are intelligent and active in their disposition, and are in all stages of civilization; the *latter* are among the most savage and degraded of mankind.

MALAYSIA, OR EAST INDIA ISLANDS.

The Malaysia or East India Islands, are those which lie between Asia and Australia or New Holland, and consist principally of five groups, viz.: 1. The Sunda isles. 2. The Molucca or Spice Islands. 3. Celebes. 4. Borneo, and a number of small islands adjacent. 5. The Manillas, or Philippine islands.

The soil in most of these islands is remarkably fertile, and produces in abundance the richest fruits of the torrid zone, and the finest spices and gums.

These islands are rich in minerals, and abound in wild animals, among which are the rhinoceros, tiger, orang-outang and crocodile.

The climate is extremely warm, and generally unhealthy, especially to foreigners.

A TABULAR VIEW OF THE PRINCIPAL EAST INDIA ISLANDS.

Sunda Isles.

Names.	*Possessed by*	*Sq. miles.*	*Population.*	*Chief Towns.*
Sumatra.	Natives,	180,000	4,500,000	Bencoolen.
Java,	Dutch,	52,000	4,230,000	Batavia.
Banca,	Dutch,	5,600	80,000	
Timor,	Dutch & Por.	6,000	100,000	Lifas.

Moluccas, or Spice Islands.

Amboyna,	Dutch,	450	45,000	Amboyna.
Ceram,	Dutch,	4,000	120,000	———
Gilolo,	Dutch,	12,000	———	Santanag.
Banda Is'ls	Dutch,	———	———	———

Borneo.

Borneo	Natives,	300,000	3,000,000	Borneo,

Celebes.

Celebes,	Dutch,	90,000	3,000,000	Macassar.

Manilla, or Philippine Islands.

Luzon,	Spaniards,	70,000	1,200,000	Manilla.
Mindinao,	Spaniards,	30,000	900,000	Mindinao.
Samar,	Spaniards,	800	84,000	———
Negros,	Spaniards,	500	75,000	———

Which is the most eastern of the Sunda isles? T. Where is Banca? A. South of cape Romania. For what is it distinguished? A. For its extensive mines of tin. Where are the Moluccas or Spice islands? For what are they celebrated? A. For the richest spices. What sea north of Celebes? C. What strait between Celebes and Borneo? M. What island north of Borneo? P. Which is the largest of the Philippine isles? L. What cape north of Luzon? E. What large island north of Luzon and Formosa? F. What small islands between Luzon and Formosa? B. Which is the largest of the East India islands? B. What is its chief town? B.

AUSTRALASIA.

Australasia embraces Australia, Van Diemen's Land, New Guinea, New Britain, New Ireland, Solomon's Island, New Hebrides, New Zealand, and numerous smaller islands surrounding them.

AUSTRALIA, OR NEW HOLLAND.

Australia is the largest island on the globe. It is noted for its mild climate, fertile soil, and valuable productions.

It was discovered in 1606, by the Dutch; but is now claimed by Great Britain, and has two colonies—Botany Bay Colony, and Swan River Colony. Botany Bay Colony was founded in 1787, and

great numbers of criminals have been banished to it from Great Britain. Sidney is the capital and chief town of the colony. It has a good harbor and considerable commerce. The natives of Australia are small, and in features and complexion resemble the negro. They are said to be remarkably ignorant, but mild, harmless and kind.

The most noted animals of Australia are the kangaroo, duck-bill, flying opossum, and a species of dog that never barks. Of the birds, the emu, a kind of ostrich, the black swan, white eagle, the spotted grosbeak, and a great variety of parrots.

VAN DIEMEN'S LAND.

Van Diemen's Land is a healthy, fertile island, 170 miles in length, and about 158 in breadth. An English colony was established here in 1803, and in 1818 it contained about 6000 inhabitants, about one half of whom were convicts from Great Britain and New South Wales.

The natives resemble those of Australia or New Holland. Hobart Town is the capital of the colony. It was laid out in 1804, and now contains a number of elegant buildings.

NEW GUINEA.

Little is known respecting New Guinea or the adjacent islands. They are said to be populous and fertile, producing most of the fruits of the torrid zone. The inhabitants are negroes, and generally resemble the people of Australia or New Holland.

NEW ZEALAND.

New Zealand consists of two large islands, separated by Cook's strait. These islands are mountainous, and have a mild, healthy climate.

The natives are tall, well formed, and possess uncommon sagacity and strength of mind. They are cannibals, and when provoked, are extremely ferocious. An English settlement has been established here for introducing the blessings of civilization and Christianity.

The natives manifest a strong desire for improvement, and have made considerable progress in the arts of civilized life.

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE WORLD.

In what direction from us is Australia? By whom is it claimed? What colonies in it? Towns? Capes? What animals? What strait separates it from New Guinea? Van Diemen's Land? What is the extent of Australia? What strait separates the islands of New Zealand? If you were at Cape Otou, to-day at 12 o'clock, in what direction would your shadow fall?

POLYNESIA.*

A VIEW IN OTAHEITE.

Polynesia embraces the numerous islands of the Pacific lying east of the Asiatic islands and Australasia.

The principal groups are the Pelew islands, and the Ladrones, Carolinas, Sandwich islands, and Radick's isles, lying north of the equator; and the Marquesas, Society isles, Friendly isles, and Navigator's isles, south of the equator.

These islands have generally a fertile soil, and a mild, healthy climate. The most important productions are the *bread fruit, cocoa nuts, bananas, oranges,* &c.

* Derived from two Greek words, signifying *many islands.*

The inhabitants are tall, well formed, and generally of amiable dispositions. They were formerly Pagans, and were accustomed to sacrifice human victims to their gods. But in the Sandwich and Society islands, they have destroyed their idols, and have received christian missionaries. Many have been taught to read and write; and numbers have been converted to christianity.

Hawaii,*—formerly called Owhyhee, the largest of the Sandwich Islands, is remarkable for the lofty summit of Mouna Roa, 16,000 feet high, and also for Kirauea, the greatest and most terrific volcano on the globe. Honolulu, on the island of Oahu, is the capital of the Sandwich Islands. It contains about 7,000 inhabitants, several hundred of whom are American and European. It has a good harbor, and is visited for refreshments by the numerous whale ships of the Northern Pacific.

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF THE WORLD.

In what direction from Mindanao are the Pelew isles? Where are the Ladrones? Where are the Caroline islands? What cluster of islands in the Pacific about midway between Asia and America? s. When, and by whom were the Sandwich islands first discovered? A. In 1778, by Capt. Cook and Capt. King. Which is the most noted of the Sandwich islands? o. In what direction from the Sandwich islands are Radick's isles? What islands north of Radick's isles? What considerable island south of Radick's isles? c. Where are the Marquesas and Washington isles? Where are the Society isles? What cluster of isles S. W. of the Society isles? F. What group of isles N. W. of the Friendly isles? F. What islands N. W. of Navigator's isles? What group of islands on both sides of the equator, near the coast of South America? G. Where is the Low Archipelago? Where is Victoria, and when discovered? Where is the Antarctic continent? When, and by whom discovered?

MEN AND ANIMALS.

Map of the World.—Where are the North American Indians found? Araucanians? Negroes? Hottentots? The Camel? Elephant? Giraffe? Hippopotamus? Reindeer? Bison? Lion? Tiger? White bear? Walrus? Kangaroo? Ourang outang? The Condor? &c.

---

* Hawaii, pronounced Ha-wi'-e.

PART THIRD

LATITUDES AND LONGITUDES.

N. B.—In answering the following questions, if the division does not lie *wholly* between the degrees mentioned, the scholar will specify what part is included, whether the *northern*, *middle* or *southern* part.

DIVISIONS.

What divisions lie between the equator and 10 N. lat ?
What divisions between 10° and 20° N. lat. ?
What divisions between 20° and 30° N. lat. ?
What divisions between 30° and 40° N. lat.?
What divisions between 40° and 50° N. lat. ?
What divisions between 50° and 60° N. lat. ?
What divisions between the equator and 10° S. lat. ?
What divisions between 10° and 20° S. lat. ?
What divisions between 20° and 30° S. lat. ?

CAPITALS.

What capitals between the equator and 10° N. lat ?
What capitals between 10° and 20° N. lat. ?
What capitals between 20° and 30° N. lat. ?
What capitals between 30° and 40° N. lat. ?
What capitals between 40° and 50° N. lat. ?
What capitals between 50° and 60° N. lat. ?
What capitals between the equator and 10° S. lat. ?
What capitals between 10° and 20° S. lat. ?
What capitals between 20° and 30° S. lat. ?

ISLANDS.

What islands between the equator and 10° N. lat. ?
What islands between 10° and 20° N. lat. ?
What islands between 20° and 30° N. lat. ?
What islands between 30° and 40° N. lat. ?
What islands between 40° and 50° N. lat. ?
What islands between 50° and 60° N. lat. ?
What islands between 60° and 70° N. lat. ?
What islands between the equator and 10° S. lat. ?
What islands between 10° and 20° S. lat. ?
What islands between 20° and 30° S. lat. ?
What islands between 30° and 40° S. lat. ?

DIVISIONS.

What divisions are intersected by the equator ?
What divisions are intersected by the Tropic of Cancer ?

What divisions are intersected by the Tropic of Capricorn?
What divisions are intersected by the 10° N. lat.?
What divisions are intersected by the 20° N. lat.?
What divisions are intersected by the 30° N. lat.?
What divisions are intersected by the 40° N. lat.?
What divisions are intersected by the 50° N. lat.?
What divisions are intersected by the 60° N. lat.?
What divisions are intersected by the 10° S. lat.?
What divisions are intersected by the 20° S. lat.?
What divisions are intersected by the 30° S. lat.?

ISLANDS.

Through what islands does the equator pass?
Through what islands does the Tropic of Cancer pass?
Through what islands does the Tropic of Capricorn pass?

DIVISIONS.

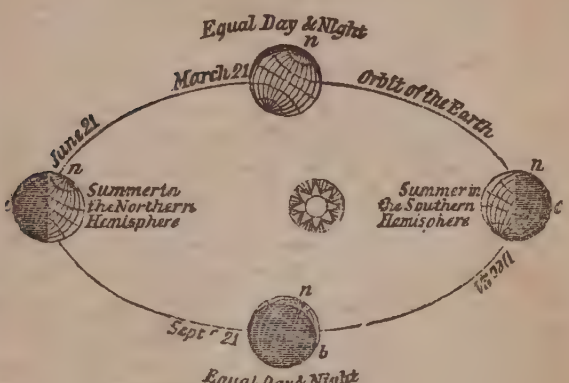
What divisions are intersected by 10° E. longitude?
What divisions are intersected by 20°? 30° E. long.
What divisions are intersected by 40°? 50° E. long.
What divisions are intersected by 60°? 70°? 80° E. long.
What divisions are intersected by 40° W. longitude?
What divisions are intersected by 50°? 60° W. longitude?
What divisions are intersected by 70°? 80° W. longitude?

CITIES.

What city in 41° N. latitude, and 29° E. longtiude? C.
What city in 55° N. latitude, and 12° E. longitude? C.
What city in 49° N. latitude, and 2° E. longitude? P.
What city in 40° N. latitude, and 75° W. longitude? P.
What city in 40° N. latitude, and 116° E. longitude? P.
What city in 30° N. latitude, and 90° W. longitude? N. O.
What city in 40½° N. latitude, and 74° W. longitude? N. Y.
What city in 42 ° N. latitude, and 70½ W. longitude? B.
What city in 39° N. latitude, and 78° W. longitude? W.
What city in 34½ S. latitude, and 58½ W. longitude? B.
What city in 12° S. latitude, and 76° W. longitude? L.
What city in 60° N. latitude, and 30° E. longitude? ST. P.
What city in 22½° N. latitude, and 88½° E. longitude? C.
What city in 23° S. latitude, and 43° W. longitude? R. J.
What city in 47° N. latitude, and 70° W. longitude? Q.
What city in 19½° N. latitude, and 100° W. longitude? M.
What cape in 34° S. latitude, and 18° E. longitude? G. H.
What cape in 56° S, latitude, and 67° W. longitude? H.
What cape in 8° N. latitude, and 78° E. longitude? C.
What cape in 36½° N. latitude, and 22° E. longitude? M.
What cape in 59½° N. latitude, and 43° W. longitude? F.
What island in 16° S. latitude, and 6° W. longitude? ST. H.

PART FOURTH.

Introduction to Astronomy.



THE SEASONS.

Astronomy is the science which teaches the motions and the magnitudes of the heavenly bodies.

The Solar System consists of the sun, planets, asteroids and comets.

It is called the *Solar System*, because the sun is supposed to be placed in the centre, having all the planets revolving round it, at different distances and in different periods of time.

The Sun is an immense spherical body, placed in the centre of the system, and gives light and heat to the planets, moons, asteroids and comets. It revolves on its axis once in 25 days and 10 hours.

This revolution is determined from the motion of the spots on its surface.

A planet is an opake body which appears to us like a star, and shines only by reflecting the light of the sun.

There are two kinds of planets, viz.: *primary* and *secondary*, to which may be added the *asteroids*. The primary planets are those which revolve round the sun and regard him only as their centre. The secondary planets, called also *moons*, or *satellites*, are smaller planets, which revolve round the primaries, and serve to give them light.

There are seven primary planets: 1. Mercury; 2. Venus; 3. Earth; 4. Mars; 5. Jupiter; 6. Saturn; 7. Herschel.

There are eighteen secondary planets. The earth has 1; Jupiter 4 Saturn 7; Herschel 6.

The asteroids are four very small planets, situated between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter, called Ceres, Pallas, Juno and Vesta.

SUN AND PLANETS.

	Diameter in miles.	*Day, or revolution on the axis.* D. H. M.	*Year or revolution round the sun.* Y. D. H. M.	*Distance from the Sun in miles.*	*Bulk, the Earth being* 1
Sun	883246	25 10 0			1380000
Mercury	3224	unknown	0 87 23 14	36000000	$\frac{1}{15}$
Venus	7687	0 23 22	0 224 16 41	68000000	$\frac{3}{5}$
Earth	7928	0 23 56	1 00 0 00	96000000	1
Mars	4189	1 00 39	1 321 18 23	144000000	$\frac{7}{24}$
Jupiter	89170	0 9 56	11 315 14 39	491000000	1400
Saturn	79042	0 10 16	29 164 7 19	901000000	1000
Herschel	35112	unknown	83 294 8 39	1800000000	90

COMETS.*

Comets are large, solid, opake or dark bodies, which revolve round the sun in very elliptical orbits.

The number of *comets* belonging to our system is supposed to be 540. The *figure of comets* is very different. Some of them emit luminous matter on all sides, resembling hair;* others have a long, luminous, transparent tail, projecting from that part which is opposite to the sun.

Their apparent magnitudes are also very different. Some appear no larger than the fixed stars; others as large as Venus; and others much larger.

The velocity of a comet is greater than that of a planet, and increases as it approaches the sun. That of 1680, when nearest the sun, moved with the amazing velocity of 880,000 miles an hour.

FIXED STARS.

The fixed stars are those luminous bodies which appear in the heavens, far beyond the planets, from which they are distinguished by their *twinkling*.

They are called *fixed stars*, because they always keep the same situation in relation to each other, and appear to have one proper motion of their own. The distances of the fixed stars from the earth, is almost inconceivable: light, which flies 164,000 miles in a second, would be more than three years in passing from one of them to the earth.

These stars being at such an immense distance, cannot receive their light from the sun as the planets, but must shine by their *own* light; and hence they are supposed to be suns to other systems, and to have *worlds* revolving round them, inhabited, perhaps, by intelligent and immortal beings.

The number of the fixed stars is unknown. With the naked eye we can see about 2,000, but by the help of telescopes many millions can be discovered.

THE EARTH.

The Earth has two motions; one round its axis, the other round the sun. It revolves on its axis once in 24 hours, and causes continual succession of day and night, and an apparent motion of the heavenly bodies from east to west.

* The word *comet*, is derived from *coma*, or cometa, a Greek word signifying hairy.

It completes its revolution round the sun once in a year, and occasions the difference in the length of the days and nights, and the agreeable variety of the seasons.

The earth is not a perfect sphere, but an oblate spheroid, elevated at the equator, and depressed at the poles; the equatorial diameter being 34 miles longer than the polar.

The earth is surrounded by a thin, invisible, elastic fluid, called *air*, which extends to a considerable height above it. The air, together with the clouds and vapors that float in it, is called the *atmosphere*. The height to which the atmosphere extends, has never been fully ascertained, but it is supposed to be about 45 miles.

THE MOON.

The Moon is an opake, or dark body, like the earth, and shines entirely by light received from the sun. Its diameter is 2,180 miles, and its distance from the centre of the earth 240,000 miles. Its bulk to that of the earth is as 1 to 49.

The moon revolves round the earth, from change to change, in 29 days, 12 hours, 44 minutes.

The surface of the moon is greatly diversified with inequalities, which through a telescope have the appearance of hills and valleys.

When the moon is in conjunction, or in the same part of the heavens with the sun, it is called the *new moon;* when it is in opposition, or 180 degrees distant, it is called the *full moon.*

The moon revolves on its axis but once in its revolution round the earth, and consequently its day is a little longer than 29 1-2 of our days.

ECLIPSES.

An eclipse is a partial, or total privation of the light of the sun or moon.

An eclipse of the sun is caused by the interposition of the moon between the earth and the sun, and consequently must happen when the moon is in conjunction with the sun, or at the *new moon.*

An eclipse of the moon is caused by an interposition of the earth between the sun and moon, and therefore must happen at the full moon, or when the moon is 180 degrees distant from the sun.

The diameter of the sun and moon is supposed to be divided into 12 parts, called *digits;* and an eclipse is said to be so many digits, according to the number of those parts which are involved at the greatest darkness.

THE SEASONS.

The different seasons are occasioned by the axis of the earth, being inclined to the level of its orbit always in one direction, in its circuit round the sun; so that one end of the axis is directed *towards* the sun at one season of the year, and *from* the sun at another. This also occasions the variation of climate, and the different lengths of day and night.

From the 20th of March to the 22d of September, the north pole inclines to the sun, and it is *summer* in the *northern* hemisphere and *winter* in the *southern;* from the 22d of September to the 20th of March, the north pole declines *from* the sun, and it is *winter* in the *northern* hemisphere and *summer* in the *southern.*

In the same manner it will be seen that during one half of the year the north pole is continually illuminated by the sun, while the south pole is in darkness: and consequently the days in the *northern* hemisphere will be more than 12 hours long, and those in the *southern* hemisphere, less than 12 hours; and during the other half of the year, the south pole is constantly in the light, and the north pole in darkness, and consequently the days in the southern hemisphere will be more than 12 hours long and those in the northern less than 12 hours; thus causing the different lengths of day and night.

At the equator the days and nights are always equal being 12 hours each; but as you proceed from the equator, they vary in length according to the latitude and season.

In latitude 16° 44′, the day is 13 hours long; in 41° 24′ i is 15 hours in length; in 61° 18′, it is 19 hours; in 66° 32′, it is 24 hours; in 67° 18′, the longest day is one month; in 69° 38′, it is two months; in 77° 40′, it is four months: and at the poles, six months.

[See the scale on the map of the world, representing the longest days and nights, also the zones and climates.]

Questions.—What is the length of the days and nights at the equator? What is the length of the longest day in 8° 34′? What is the length of the longest day in 16° 44′? In 24° 12′? In 30° 48′? In 36° 31′? In 41° 24′? In 45° 3′? In 49° 2′? In 54° 30′? What is the length of the longest day in 67° 18′? In 69° 33′? In 73° 5′? What is the length of the longest day at the poles? What is the length of the longest night? How many days and nights are there at the poles in a year?

CLIMATES.

Climate is a portion of the earth's surface contained between two small circles parallel to the equator, and of such a breadth that the longest day in the parallel nearest the equator is half an hour shorter than in the next more remote, in the torrid and temperate zones—and one month in the frigid zones.

All places in the *same* latitude, are in the *same* climate—but it must not be inferred from thence that they have the same atmospherical temperature, as this depends on various causes. Mountains, lakes, deserts, plains, &c. have great effect on the atmosphere; as high mountains under the equator are covered with perpetual snow, and deserts are parched with constant heat.

Questions.—How many climates between the equator and each polar circle? A. 24. How many climates between each polar circle and its pole? A. 6. In what latitude does the first climate end? [See the scale on the Map of the World.] A. In 8° 44′. In what latitude does the second climate end? A. In about 16½°. In what latitude does the third climate end? Fourth climate? Fifth? Sixth? Seventh? Eighth climate? &c. &c.

Note.—It will be seen that the climates are placed in regular order on the scale as far as 49° 2′, increasing in length half an hour as you proceed from the equator; after which they are not laid down regularly till you come to the polar circle. Here you will perceive by the scale that the days in each climate, instead of being only half an hour longer than in the one nearer the equator, are one month longer as you approach the pole.

WINDS.

Wind is air put in motion, occasioned chiefly by means of heat.

When any part of the air is heated by the sun or otherwise, it expands and ascends towards the higher parts of the atmosphere, and the neighboring air rushes in to supply its place; and there will therefore be a stream or current of air from all parts towards the region in which the heat predominates. This pressure of the air is what is called wind.

The velocity of wind is various. A gentle breeze moves about 4 miles an hour; a common brisk wind about 15 miles; a high wind 30; a storm 60; a violent hurricane 100 miles an hour.

There are three kinds of tropical winds, viz.: The general *trade winds*; the *monsoons*; the *land* and *sea breezes*.

1. The general trade winds blow from east to west, extending to nearly 30° of latitude on each side of the equator, nearly round the globe.

2. The monsoons are periodical winds, which prevail in the Indian Ocean, and blow six months in one direction, and during the other six months in an opposite direction. Their change at the vernal and autumnal equinox is accompanied with terrible storms of rain, lightning and thunder.

3. The land and sea breezes are periodical winds, which blow from the land during the night, and from the sea during the day.

Winds are affected by the countries over which they pass, being rendered pestilential by the heat of deserts, and the putrid exhalations of lakes and marshes.

In Africa and Arabia, a wind blows from the deserts called the *Samiel* or *Simoom*, which frequently produces instant death.

On the western coast of Africa is a similar wind, called *Harmattan*, producing a dryness and heat almost insupportable.

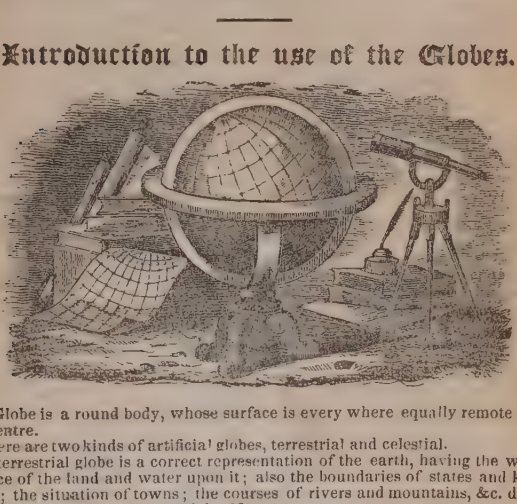
A warm, unpleasant wind from Africa, prevails in the southern part of Europe, called the *Sirocco*, producing great uneasiness and debility in the system,

TIDES.

The Tide is the regular elevation and depression of the ocean, which happens twice every 24 hours, caused by the attraction of the moon and of the sun.

At the *new* and *full* moon, the tides are greatest, and are called *spring tides;* at the first and last quarters, they are least, and are called *neap tides;* and the highest are near the time of the equinoxes.

Introduction to the use of the Globes.



A Globe is a round body, whose surface is every where equally remote from the centre.

There are two kinds of artificial globes, terrestrial and celestial.

A terrestrial globe is a correct representation of the earth, having the whole surface of the land and water upon it; also the boundaries of states and kingdoms; the situation of towns; the courses of rivers and mountains, &c. delineated as they are upon the earth itself.

A celestial globe is an artificial representation of the heavens, on which the stars are laid down in their natural situations.

The axis of the earth is an imaginary line passing through the centre of it, upon which it is supposed to turn.

The poles of the earth are the two extremities of the axis, where it is supposed to cut the surface of the earth.

The brazen meridian is the circle in which the globe turns, and is divided into 360 equal parts, called degrees.

The quadrant of altitude is a thin slip of brass, divided into 90°, and is generally used to determine the distance of one place from another.

The hour circle is a small circle of brass, with an index or pointer fixed to the north pole.

The horizon is a great circle which separates the visible half of the heavens from the invisible. The horizon is represented on the artificial globe by the wooden circular frame on which the globe stands.

The ecliptic is the great circle which the earth describes annually in its revolution round the sun.

The ecliptic is divided into twelve equal parts of 30 degrees each, called *signs*

The names and characters of the signs, with the months in which the sun enters them, are as follows:

Northern Signs.		*Southern Signs.*	
♈ Aries,	March 21st	♎ Libra,	Sept. 23d
♉ Taurus,	April 19th	♏ Scorpio,	Oct. 23d
♊ Gemini,	May 20th	♐ Sagittarius,	Nov. 22d
♋ Cancer,	June 21st	♑ Capricornus,	Dec. 21st
♌ Leo,	July 22d	♒ Aquarius,	Jan. 20th
♍ Virgo,	Aug. 22d	♓ Pisces,	Feb. 19th

The first six are called *Northern* signs, because they are north of the equator; the last six are called *Southern* signs, because they are south of the equator.

The zodiac is a broad belt in the heavens, 16° wide, in the middle of which is the ecliptic. It comprehends the orbits of all the planets.

QUESTIONS ON THE TERRESTRIAL GLOBE.*

Which Grand Division extends farthest north?

At what place does Asia extend farthest north?

At what place does Europe? North America?

Suppose the Arctic ocean was navigable, in what direction must you sail in going from North Cape, in a direct line, to East Cape?

What place is there on the globe, *from* which you can travel only in one direction?

What cape in Asia opposite to Baffin's Bay?

Towards what two points of the compass must you steer in sailing from Spitzbergen to Bhering's Strait, across the north pole?

Through what countries will you pass, and what waters will you cross in travelling on the Arctic Circle round the globe, commencing at Bhering's Strait?

Travel in the same manner, on the tropic of Cancer, beginning at cape St. Lucas.

The equator, commencing at Quito.

The tropic of Capricorn, beginning at Rio Janeiro.

The parallel of 40° N. lat. beginning at Philadelphia.

There are two routes from New York to Canton; describe each.

In what direction from Philadelphia is Cairo? Pekin? London? Rio Janeiro? Calcutta? St. Petersburg? Rome? Morocco? Quito?

Does Asia or North America extend farther south? South America or Australia?

One of the tropics passes near the centre of one of the continents; which tropic, and what continent?

What places are directly south of the north pole?

What waters will you cross in sailing from Boston to Okhotsk? From Okhotsk to Buenos Ayres? From Buenos Ayres to Cincinnati?

Describe the limits of each zone.

Which grand division of the globe lies mostly in the torrid zone?

In what zone is North cape? Cape Horn? Cape Comorin? Cape Farewell? Cape Verd?

* These questions can be answered from the two Maps of the World.

Which way must a ship steer in sailing from New York to the cape of Good Hope?
From the cape of Good Hope to Batavia?
From Batavia to cape Horn?
From cape Horn to London?
From London to New York?
Is there more land or water on the surface of the earth?
How much of the earth's surface is covered with water?
What land do you find in the south frigid zone?
What places are north of 90° of S. latitude?
What sea in the western hemisphere, nearly in the latitude of the China sea?
What four seas are intersected by the parallel of 40° N. latitude?
Does Europe or Africa extend farther west?
What places have no latitude?
There are twenty-two seas on the globe; what are their names and where are they?
Which grand division of the globe has the greatest number of seas in and around it?
On which side of the equator is there most land?
What places are south of 90° of N. latitude?
There are two routes by which you can sail from Boston to Calcutta: mention each.
Which is the most northern island on the globe?
Which is the most southern island?
What is longitude?
From which meridian is longitude generally reckoned?
What is the greatest longitude a place can have?
Why can a place have no more than 180° of longitude?
In what direction from Iceland is Cape Verd?
In what direction from the island of Hainan is Owhyhee?
In what direction from Spitzbergen is the cape of Good Hope?
Is the eastern coast of Greenland, or the western coast of Africa farther east?
What places have noon, or mid-day, at the same time?
Suppose the southern ocean was navigable, towards what two points of the compass must a ship steer, in sailing from the island of New Zealand to St. Helena over the south pole?
Which extends farthest east, Asia or Australia?
What are meridians?
How many meridians are drawn on the globe you are using?
What length of time does it require for the sun to pass from one meridian to another?
What is the difference of time between Quito and Rome?
Is the time at Rome faster or slower than at Quito? Why?
What is the difference of time between London and Pekin?
Supposing it 6 o'clock in the morning at Philadelphia, what time is it at London? Rome? Constantinople?
What is the difference of time between Cape Verd and the gulf of Darien?
When it is noon at Washington, what time is it at Irkuutsk? Rome? Quito? Behring's Straits? New Holland?
Does South America or Greenland extend farthest east?
Which extends farthest east, Europe or Africa?
Which is farthest north, lake Baikal or lake Winnepeg?
What places have the same seasons of the year? A. Those in the same lat.
When it is summer in the United States, what season is it in China? Chili? France? Australia? Spain? Patagonia?
When it is winter at the cape of Good Hope, what season is it in England? In this place? Why?
Why should not the ecliptic be drawn parallel to the equator?

Problems.

PROBLEM I.

To find the Latitude of any place.

RULE.—Bring the given place to the brass meridian, and the degree above the place is the latitude.

What is the latitude of Philadelphia? A. 40° N. Of Boston? A $42\frac{1}{2}$° N. Cape Horn? London? Pekin? Cape of Good Hope? Paris? Calcutta?

What places have no latitude?

PROBLEM II.

To find the Longitude of any place.

RULE.—Bring the place to the brass meridian, and the degree on the equator under the meridian is the longitude.

What is the longitude of Philadelphia? 75° W. Boston? New York? Pekin? Lima?

What places have the same longitude as New York? Stockholm? London?

When it is 12 o'clock at Stockholm, what inhabitants of the earth have the same hour?

PROBLEM III.

To find any place whose Latitude and Longitude are given.

RULE.—Find the longitude on the equator, and bring it to the brass meridian; then find the latitude on the meridian, and under it is the place sought.

What place has $77\frac{1}{2}$° W. longitude and 39° N. latitude? A. Washington

What places have the following latitudes and longitudes?

Latitude.	*Longitude.*
$52\frac{1}{2}$° north,	$13\frac{1}{2}$° east.
32° north,	$81\frac{1}{2}$° west.
23° south,	$42\frac{1}{2}$° west.
$22\frac{1}{2}$° north,	$88\frac{1}{2}$° east.

PROBLEM IV.

To find the distance between any two places.

RULE.—Lay the quadrant of altitude over both places, and the degrees between them multiplied by $69\frac{1}{2}$ will give the English miles.

What is the distance between the Island of Bermuda and St. Helena?

A. $73\frac{1}{2} \times 69\frac{1}{2} = 5109\frac{1}{4}$ miles.

PROBLEM V.

To rectify the Globe for the latitude of a place.

RULE.—Elevate the pole till the horizon cuts the meridian in the latitude of the place. Rectify the Globe for the latitude of London.

PROBLEM VI.

The hour at one place being given, to find what hour it is at any other place.

RULE.—Bring the place where the hour is given to the meridian, and set the index of the hour circle to that hour; then turn the Globe till the place where the hour is required comes under the meridian, and the index will point to the hour at that place.

When it is 10 o'clock in the morning at London, what hour is it at St. Petersburg? A. The difference of time is two hours—12.

When it is noon at Hartford, what hour is it in London? Constantinople?

PROBLEM VII.

To find the Sun's declination.

RULE.—Find the sun's place in the ecliptic, and bring it to the brass meridian and the degree over it is the sun's declination.

What is the sun's declination on the 15th of April? A 10° N. Jan. 21? June 21? Sept. 21? Nov. 21?

PROBLEM VIII.

To find the time of the Sun's rising and setting at any place.

RULE.—Find the sun's declination and elevate the north or south pole, according as the declination is north or south so many degrees above the horizon, as are equal to the sun's declination; bring the given place to the brass meridian, and set the index of the hour circle to 12. Turn the globe eastward till the given place comes to the horizon, and the index will shew the time of the sun's rising. Turn the globe to the west verge of the horizon, and the index will shew the time of his setting.

At what time does the sun rise and set at Hartford on the 5th of February?

A. The sun rises at 7, and sets at 5.

PROBLEM IX.

To find the length of the day and night at any time in the year.

RULE.—Double the time of the sun's rising and it gives the length of the night. Double the time of his setting and it gives the length of the day.

What is the length of the shortest day at Hartford? A. 8 h. 56 min.

What is the length of the longest day and shortest night at Edinburgh?

PROBLEM X.

To find the Antæci, Periæci, and Antipodes of any place.

EXPLANATION.

The Antæcians are those who have the same longitude as ours, but have the same latitude south as we have north. Their summer is our winter.

RULE.—Bring the given place to the brass meridian, and count as many degrees on the meridian south of the Equator as the given place is north; and you will find the Antæci.

The Periæcians are those which lie under the same degree of latitude, but have 180° difference of longitude. They have contrary hours; noon when we have midnight.

RULE.—Bring the given place to the brass meridian, set the index to 12, turn the globe till the index points to the other 12, then under the latitude of the given place you will find the Periæci.

The Antipodes are those who have the same latitude south that we have north, and differ 180° of longitude. Their hours, days, and seasons differ from ours.

RULE.—Bring the given place to the brass meridian, turn the globe half round, then count as many degrees south of the Equator as the given place is north, and you will have the Antipodes.

Required the Antæci, Periæci and Antipodes of Hartford.

A. Antæci are in the northern part of the island of Chiloe. The Periæci are in the Desert of Shamo in the Chinese Empire. The Antipodes are in the Southern Ocean south east of the island of St. Paul.

PROBLEM XI.

To find how many miles make a degree of longitude in any given parallel of latitude.

RULE.—Lay the quadrant of altitude parallel to the equator between any two meridians in the given latitude, which differ in longitude 15 degrees: the number of degrees intercepted between them multiplied by 4, will give the length of a degree in geographical miles. The geographical miles may be brought into English miles, by multiplying by 116, and cutting off two figures from the right hand of the product.

EXAMPLE.—How many geographical an English miles make a degree in the latitude of Pekin?

QUESTIONS,

EXERCISING THE PROBLEMS ON THE TERRESTRIAL GLOBE.

1. What inhabitants of the earth have the same length of days as those of Philadelphia?

2. What inhabitants of the earth have the same seasons of the year as those of London?

3. When it is 10 o'clock in the evening at Stockholm, what inhabitants have the same hour?

4. What is the nearest distance between New York and the Cape of Good Hope?

5. When it is noon at Philadelphia, what inhabitants of the earth have midnight?

6. When it is 10 o'clock in the morning at London, where is it 10 o'clock in the evening?

7. What is the sun's longitude (commonly called the sun's place in the ecliptic) on the 15th of April?

8. What day of the year is of the same length as the 15th of April?

9. How much longer is the 5th of May at New York than at Quito?

10. When it is noon at London, at what place is the sun rising and setting, and where is it midnight?

11. Are the clocks at Philadelphia faster or slower than those at London, and how much?

12. What is the difference of latitude between Cape North and Cape Matapan?

13. What is the difference of longitude between Philadelphia and Constantinople?

14. What is the distance between New York and London in English miles?

15 What hour is it at London when it is 4 in the evening at Calcutta?

16. At what time does the sun rise and set at Archangel on the 15th of March, and what is the length of the day and night?

17. If the sun set at 7 o'clock, at what time does it rise, and what is the length of the day and night?

18. How many English miles must I travel westward from London that my watch may be six hours too fast?

19. What place upon the globe has the greatest longitude, the least longitude, no longitude, and every longitude?

20. What inhabitants of the earth in the course of 12 hours will be in the same situation as their Antipodes?

21. At what places on the globe can two ships sail directly from each other, and still sail the same point of the compass?

22. How many English miles must I travel eastward from Philadelphia, that my watch may be 7 hours too slow?

23. Suppose a person could start from Philadelphia precisely at noon on Monday, and keep pace with the sun round the globe, at what place would he first be told it was Tuesday noon?

24. There is a town in Norway where the longest day is five times the length of the shortest night, what is its name?

25. When the sun is setting to the inhabitants of Hartford on the 4th of April, where is it rising, and where midnight?

26. As the sun never goes north of the tropic of Cancer,—or but 23½ degrees north of the equator,—how can you account for its rising, in our latitude, during the summer months, nearly in the north-east, and setting nearly in the north-west?

Ancient Geography.

EXERCISES ON THE MAP OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE

What countries in Europe bordered on the Mediterranean? H G. I. G.
What countries in Asia? A. M. and S.
What countries in Africa? E. L. A. M.
What country northeast of Gallia? G.
What country south of Germania? I.
What country east of Illyricum? D.
What country northeast of Dacia? S.

What sea between Italia and Illyricum? A.
What seas between Greece and Asia Minor? Æ. and P.
What sea north of Asia Minor? E.
What sea or lake northeast of the Euxine? M.
What sea east of the Euxine? C.
What sea east of Egypt? A.
What sea between Sicilia and Africa? A.
What sea west of Gallia? A.
What sea between Britannia and Hibernia? V.
What sea north of Germania?
What ocean between Germania and Britannia? G.

What large island northwest of Gallia? B.
What large island west of Britannia? H.
What large islands west of Italia? C. and S
What large island south of Italia? S.
What islands north of Sicilia? Æ.
What island south of Sicilia? M.
What island south of the Ægean sea? C.
What island near the east end of the Mediterranean? C.
What islands on the coast of Hispania? B.

Why were these islands called Baleares? A. They were so called by the Greeks because the inhabitants were expert archers and slingers, besides great pirates. They distinguished themselves in the Punic wars, under Hannibal. It is said that the mothers never gave their children breakfast before they had struck with an arrow a certain mark on a tree.

What mountains between Hispania and Gallia? P.
What mountains between Gallia and Italia? Alpes.
What mountain in Italia? Apenninus.
What mountain in the northeastern part of Greece? H.
What mountain in Dacia? C.
What mountains in Gallia? C. J. V.
What mountains in Asia Minor? T.
What mountains between the Euxine and Caspian seas? C.
What mountains south of Mauritania? A.
What mountain between the two northern branches or gulfs of the Arabian sea? S.

What strait* at the entrance of the Mediterranean?
What strait between Gallia and Britannia? G.
What strait between the Mæotis Palus and the Euxine sea?
What strait between the Euxine and Propontis? Bosphorus.

The one connecting the Mæotis Palus was called the Cimmerian Bosphorus, and the other connecting the Euxine and Propontis was called the Thracian Bosphorus. The latter is sixteen miles long, and one and a half broad. The strait between the Propontis and Ægean seas, was called the Hellespont,—now the Dardanelles. It is 33 miles long, and from half a mile to a mile and a half in width. Its shores are lined with pleasant hills, towns and villages. The strait is celebrated for the love and death of Leander, a youth of Abydos, who swam nightly across it to see his beloved Hero, a priestess of Venus, at Sestos. On one occasion his strength failed him and he was drowned, and Hero in despair, threw herself into the sea and perished. Xerxes built a bridge of boats across this strait when he invaded Greece. In 1810, Lord Byron swam across it, in one hour and five minutes.

Where do the following rivers rise,—in what direction do they flow,—and where do they empty?

Ancient names.	*Modern names.*
I-be'-rus?	Ebro?
Bæ-tis?	Guadalquiver?
A-nas?	Guadiana?
Ta-gus?	Tagus, or Tajo?
Du-ri-us?	Douro?
Ga-rum-na?	Garonne?
Li-go-ris?	Loire?
Se-qua'-na?	Seine?
Rhod-a-nus?	Rhone?
Rhe-nus?	Rhine?
Am-i-si-a?	Ems?
Vi-sur-gis?	Weser?
Al-bis?	Elbe?
Pa-dus?	Po?
Ti-be-ris?	Tiber?
Is-ter?	Danube?
Ty-ras?	Dniester?
Bo-rys-the-nes?	Dnieper?

Which of these rivers is longest? Which was anciently most noted? Which is the principal river of Egypt? Does the Nile annually overflow its banks now, as in ancient times? When does the Nile begin to rise? A. About the middle of June, and continues to rise until about the first of September?

---

*The following Latin words used on ancient maps, are thus translated, viz.

Fretum, a strait.	Chersonesus, a peninsula.
Flumen, a river.	Insula, an island.
Mons, a mountain.	Mare, or pontus, a sea.
Montes, mountains.	Sin, or sinus, a bay.

Where was Peloponesus, now Morea?
Where was Taurica, now Crimea?
Where was Cimbri, now Jutland?

Into what three provinces did the Romans divide Hispania? T. L. D.
Which of these provinces was most northern?
Into what four provinces did the Romans divide Gallia? B. L. A. N.
Which of these was most southern?
How was Germania divided? C. S. V. F. F. C. S. L. B. C. Q. A.
Which of these tribes or nations inhabited the most northern part?
Which the most southern?
How was Illyricum divided? R. N. P.
How was Dacia divided? G. G. M. S.
How was Greece divided? T. M. P.
Into what provinces was Asia Minor divided? M. B. G. C. L. P. C. L. C.
Where was Colchis, celebrated in fable for the expedition of the Argonauts from Greece, under Jason, in search of the golden fleece?
Phasis was the capital of Colchis, at the mouth of the river Phasis.
What two countries east of Colchis?
What large country south of Colchis, Iberia and Albania?
What noted rivers rise in Armenia? E. T.
What country south of Armenia?
What is the meaning of the word Mesopotamia?
A. Between two rivers.
Between what two rivers was Mesopotamia situated?
In what part of Syria was Phœnicia? Palestine?
Where was Arabia Petræ?
Where was Chaldæa? Babylonia? Assyria? Persia? Media?
Where was Sarmatia? What can you say of it?
It was an extensive country in the eastern part of Europe and northern part of Asia. It was inhabited by a number of uncivilized, warlike nations, who were famous for painting their bodies to appear more terrible in the field of battle. In the third and fourth centuries of the Christian era, under the barbarous names of Huns, Vandals, Goths, Alans, &c. they invaded and laid waste the Roman empire.

Where was Rome, and how situated?
In what direction from Rome was Capua? where the army of Hannibal, after the battle of Cannæ, became enervated by the pleasures and luxuries which prevailed in that voluptuous city.
Where was Cannæ? Near the Adriatic, east of Capua.
In what direction from Capua is Neapolis, now Naples?
Where was Rhegium, now Reggio? settled by the Messenians B. C. 723, remarkable for its fertility and delightful scenery.
In what direction from Rome is Tarentum, noted in the wars of Greece and Rome?
Where was Brundusium, noted for its good harbor?
Where was Sipontum, founded by Diomedes, after his return from the Trojan war?
Where was Corfinium, the chief city of the Peligni, and once styled the capital of Italy? It was taken by Cesar shortly after he passed the Rubicon.

Where was Spoletium, that withstood the attack of Hannibal and his army after the battle of Trasymene?

Where was Picenum, a country and city of the Sabines? It was taken by the Romans U. C.* 484.

Where was Ancona, built by the Sicilians, and noted for its excellent harbor? Near this place is the famous chapel of Loretto, supposed by monkish historians to have been brought through the air by angels, August 10, A. D. 1291, from Judea, where it was a cottage inhabited by the Virgin Mary.

Where was Arminium, noted as a strong military post, and as the gate into Italy on that side? Near it, the river Rubicon entered the Adriatic, which Cesar crossed.

Where was Ravenna, an important city of Cisalpine Gaul? From this city, Cesar set forward on that march which brought him to the Rubicon, and involved his country and the world in civil war.

What and where was the Rubicon? It was a small river which separated Italy from Cisalpine Gaul. It rose in the Appenine mountains and fell into the Adriatic sea. "To identify this celebrated stream is a question which has long puzzled writers on comparative Geography, and is not even now perfectly settled." It is supposed to have entered the Adriatic near Armenium, and to be known at present by the name of Rugone.

In what direction from Ravenna was Bononia, now Bologna? Cremona, noted for being the first place where the Romans established themselves in Gaul? Verona, founded by Brennus, the leader of the Gauls, and noted for being the birth-place of Catullus, C. Nepos, and Pliny the elder?

In what direction from Rome was Aquileia? This city was built by a party of Gauls B. C. 187, and soon after fell into the hands of the Romans. In the time of Cesar, it was one of the most important military posts, and was considered "the bulwark of Italy on the northeastern frontier." All the trade and intercourse between Italy and the Illyrians, Panonians and other nations in that quarter, was carried on through this place. It was taken by Attilla, and sacked by the barbarian hordes under him.

In what direction was Forum Julii from Aquileia? Mediolanum, now Milan?

Where was Parma, noted for its great antiquity?

Where was Taurina, now Turin? The inhabitants opposed Hannibal soon after his descent from the Alps; but the city was taken by him and plundered, after a siege of three days.

Where was LUTETIA, now Paris, situated? The Parisii, a Gallic tribe built this city on a swampy island in the Seine, before the Christian era. The name "*Lutetia*," or "*city of mire*," is said to have been given to it, on account of its muddy character. It was taken by the Romans, and fortified by Julius Cesar, and greatly embellished by Julian, the Roman emperor, A. D. 360, who resided there some time.

In what direction from Lutetia was Lugdunum, now Lyons, the place to which Herod the tetrarch, Herodias his wife, and Salome, it is said,

---

* U. C. means from the Building of the city of Rome, A. U. C. The year from the building of the city of Rome. Anno Urbis Conditæ.

were banished? Vienna, a few miles south, on the same river, is the place to which it is said, Pontius Pilate was banished.

Where was Massilia, now Marseilles situated? This city was founded B. C. 600, by a colony of Asiatic Greeks, and formed at an early period, a flourishing republic, celebrated for the wisdom of its institutions, and as a seat of science and literature.

Where was Tolosa, now Toulouse? This is an ancient city. In the sixth century it became the capital of the Visigoths.* In 1814, it was taken by the English.

Where was Pictones? A few miles south of this place, near the present city of Poitiers, was fought the decisive battle between the Gauls, under Charles Martel, and the Saracens, under Abderaman, in October, A. D. 732.

Where was Corduba, now Cordova, anciently the capital of the Turduli, and famous during the middle ages as the seat of the Moorish empire in Spain?

Where was Saguntum, famous for a siege by the Carthaginians, under Hannibal, B C. 219, which was the cause of the second Punic war?

Where was Numantia, remarkable for a desperate resistance against the Romans during a siege of fourteen years?

Where was Gades, now Cadiz, the great emporium of Spanish commerce? This city was founded by a colony from Tyre, and was one of the most noted of antiquity. The inhabitants were a commercial people, and their ships were seen on every sea, which the navigation of their times had been able to compass. The Greeks named it Gadira, and it was also called Cotynusa.

Where was Carteia or Calpe? Near this place, on the most southern point of Hispania, was Mount Calpe, now the Rock of Gibraltar, which was opposite to Mount Abyla, on the African side of the Fretum Herculeum, now the strait of Gibraltar. According to tradition, these two mountainous rocks were once united, and Hercules, in order to open a communication between the Mediterranean and the Atlantic, rent them asunder. Hence they are called the Pillars of Hercules.

Where was LONDINIUM or LONDINUM? This city, now called LONDON, was built, it is supposed, about the commencement of the Christian era.

In what direction from Londinium was Durovernum, now Dover? Eboracum, now York? Alata, now Edinburgh? Eblana, now Dublin?

Where was ATHENÆ, now Athens?

In what direction from Athenæ was Thebæ? Sparta? Olympia? Delphi? Delphi was built at the foot of mount Parnassus. The great celebrity of this place arose from the oracle of Apollo, who there declared the fates, and from the council of Amphictyons, which held there its alternate session.

Where is Actium? This place is noted on account of the memorable battle near it, at the entrance of the Ambracian gulf, between the fleets of Anthony and Octavius, September 2d, B. C. 31. Octavius gained the victory, and thus became master of the world, or the Roman empire.

---

* Visigoths, means Western Goths, and Ostrogoths, Eastern Goths.

Where was Ilium or Troy? What can you say respecting it? Where was Ephesus? What happened there when Paul preached in that place? Why did Demetrius and the other silversmiths oppose Paul? See Acts xix. 24–29.

Where is Damascus? This is one of the oldest cities in the world. See Genesis xiv. 15. It is a magnificent city at the present time, and has ever been distinguished for its splendor and opulence.

Where was Hierosolyma, now Jerusalem? Tyrus? Babylon? Ninus, called in Scripture Nineveh? Selucia, the great rival to Babylon? Palmyra, the Tadmor of Solomon, and the residence of the immortal Zenobia, and the elegant Longinus? The ruins of this city are among the most magnificent remains of antiquity.

Where was Thebæ, called also Hecatompylos, on account of its hundred gates, and Diospolis, as being sacred to Jupiter? Memphis, once the metropolis of all Egypt? Near this place are the Pyramids.

Where was Alexandria? Cyrene? Carthago? Cirta, the ancient capital of Numidia? Cæsarea? Volubilis, now Fez? Tingis, now Tangier? Abyla, now Ceuta?

What portions of the earth were known to the ancients? Those lying around the Mediterranean Sea, comprehending the southern and largest part of Europe, the southwestern part of Asia, and the northern part of Africa. Did the ancients know any thing of America?

Britannia was anciently called Albion, the white island, probably on account of its white chalky cliffs on the southeastern coast. The northern part was called Caledonia, now Scotland, and was inhabited by the Picti, or Picts, so called because they painted their bodies. Little is known of Britannia before its conquest by the Romans, about 55 B. C. Do you think the country has undergone many changes since its conquest by the Romans?

Gaul was an extensive country originally divided among three great nations,—the Belgæ, Celtæ and Aquitani. These were warlike, barbarous and superstitious.

Germania included the country between the Rhenus and Vistula and was noted for its vast forests. It was inhabited by many different nations, most of which lived a wandering, unsettled life. These were hardy, brave, warlike, fond of liberty, and distinguished for honesty and simplicity.

Hispania, the most western country in Europe, was called by the Greeks, Iberia, and Hesperia. The first inhabitants were probably the Celtæ. The Phœnicians afterwards possessed several places on the coast, and built Gades. The Carthaginians, attracted by the gold and silver mines, which abounded in the country, conquered the greater part of it. They, however, were expelled by the Romans, who kept possession of it, during the existence of their empire.

Italia was one of the most interesting countries of antiquity. The inhabitants were called Romans from their chief city and for ages, were distinguished for their warlike achievements, and for their eminence in literature and the arts. The Roman empire at its greatest extent was the most powerful that the world has ever witnessed.

Graecia took the lead among all the countries and nations of the world. She added to her military glory, that of carrying eloquence and the arts to a perfection which has served as a model to all succeeding ages.

te Due

WITHDRAWN

00-00016 14704

WITHDRAWN